CAMBRIDGE

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary reference and practice

Fourth Edition

Upper-intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell



Includes ebook with audio

Experience Better Learning

ENGLISH VOCABULARY IN USE

Vocabulary reference and practice

with answers and ebook

Fourth Edition

Upper-intermediate

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi – 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/elt

© Cambridge University Press 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1994
Fourth Edition 2017

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-131663174-4 Edition with answers and ebook
ISBN 978-131663175-1 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-131663177-5 ebook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks

Enhanced ebook

Introduction

Effective vocabulary learning

1 Learning vocabulary
2 Organising a vocabulary notebook
3 Using your dictionary
4 Guessing and explaining meaning

Topics

5 Countries, nationalities and languages
6 The weather
7 Describing people: appearance
8 Describing people: personality
9 Idioms describing people
10 Relationships
11 At home
12 Everyday minor problems
13 Global problems
14 Education
15 Higher education
16 Work
17 Business
18 Sport
19 Art and literature
20 Theatre and cinema
21 Music
22 Food
23 Physical geography
24 Environmental problems
25 Towns
26 The natural world
27 Clothes
28 Health and medicine
29 Medicine and technology
30 Health and lifestyle
31 Travel
32 Holidays
33 Science and technology
34 Computers
35 Communications and the Internet
36 Social media
37 The press and the media
38 Politics and public institutions
39 Crime
40 Money
41 Describing objects

Feelings and actions

42 Belief and opinion
43 Pleasant and unpleasant feelings
44 Like, dislike and desire
45 Speaking
46 The six senses
47 What your body does
48 Praising and criticising
49 Emotions and moods
50 Commenting on problematic situations

Basic concepts

51 Number, quantity, degree and intensity
52 Numbers and shapes
53 Time
54 Distances and dimensions
55 Obligation, need, possibility and probability
56 Sound and light
57 Possession and giving
58 Movement and speed
59 Texture, brightness, weight and density
60 Success, failure and difficulty

Connecting and linking words

61 Time: connecting words and expressions
62 Condition
63 Cause, reason, purpose and result
64 Concession and contrast
65 Addition
66 Referring words
67 Discourse markers in spoken English
68 Linking words in writing
69 Talking and communicating

Word formation

70 Suffixes
71 Prefixes
72 Roots
73 Abstract nouns
74 Compound adjectives
75 Compound nouns 1: noun + noun
76 Compound nouns 2: verb + preposition
77 Binomials
78 Abbreviations and acronyms
79 Multi-word expressions

Words and pronunciation

80 Words commonly mispronounced
81 Onomatopoeic words
82 Homophones and homographs

Counting people and things

83 Uncountable nouns
84 Words that only occur in the plural
85 Countable and uncountable nouns with different meanings
86 Making uncountable nouns countable
87 Collective nouns
88 Containers and contents

Phrasal verbs and verb-based expressions

89 Expressions with *do* and *make*
90 Expressions with *bring* and *take*
91 Expressions with *get*
92 Expressions with *set* and *put*
93 Expressions with *come* and *go*
94 Expressions with other common verbs

Varieties and styles

95 Formal and informal words 1
96 Formal and informal words 2
97 Similes
98 Proverbs
99 The language of signs and notices
100 Headline English
101 US English

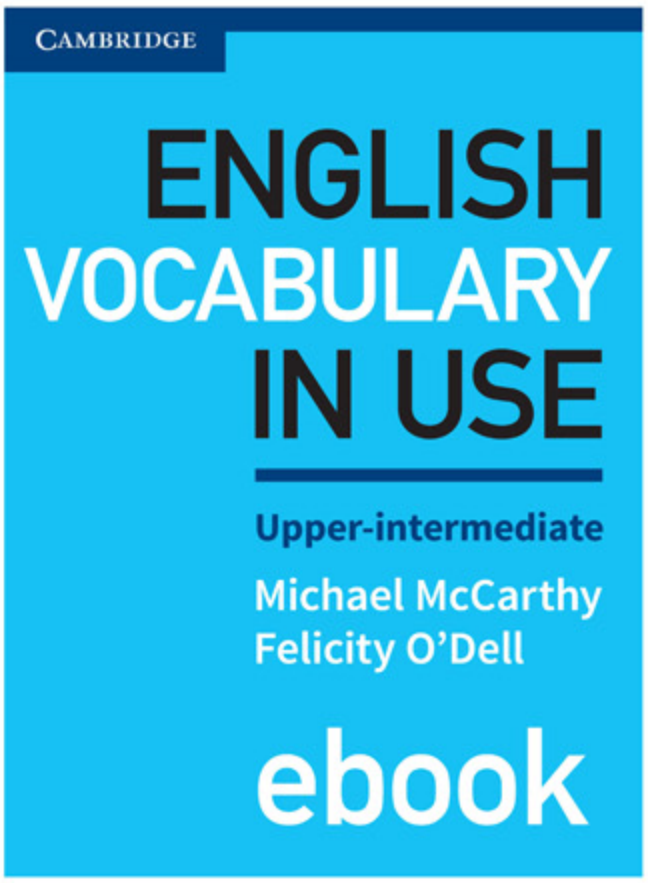
Answer key
Phonemic symbols
Index
Acknowledgements

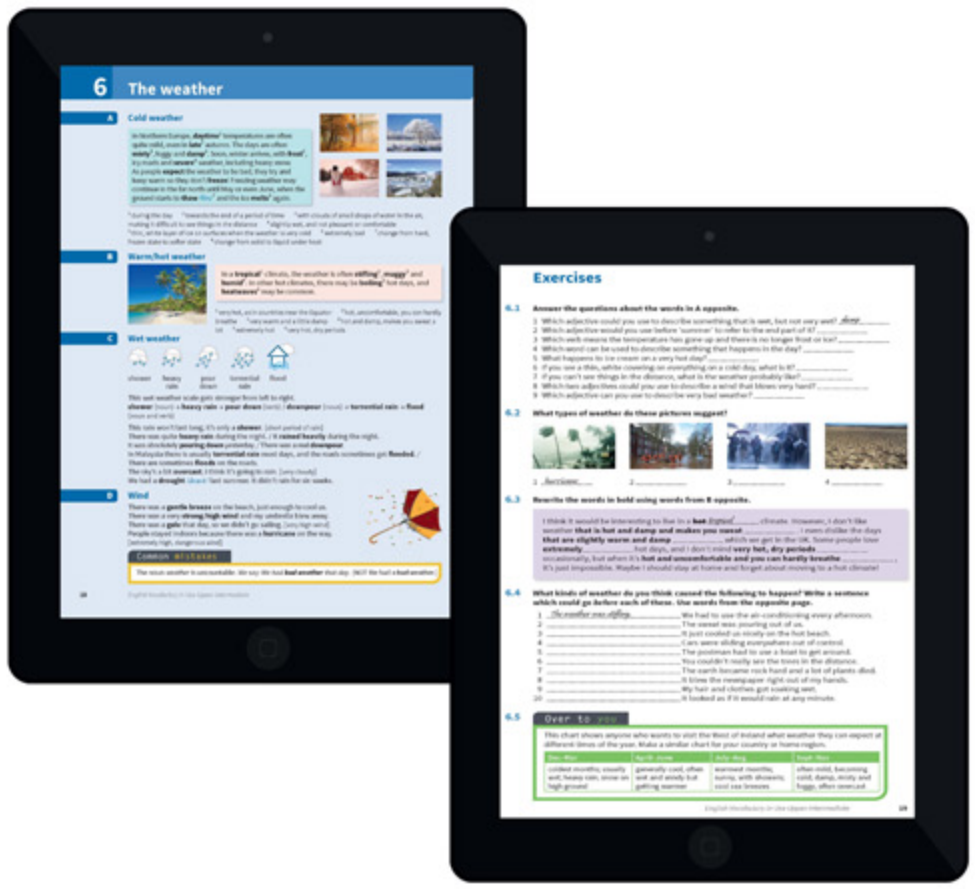
Thanks

Sabina Ostrowska wrote two new units for the Fourth Edition: Unit 15, *Higher Education*, and Unit 36, *Social Media*. The publishers would like to thank Sabina for her contribution to this new edition.

Enhanced ebook

You can buy this book with or without an ebook. The ebook has the same vocabulary explanations as the book.





Using the ebook

You can use your ebook on an iPad, Android tablet, PC or Mac.

You can listen to the text on the left-hand page to help you with your listening and pronunciation.

Using the ebook, you can:

- Listen to examples
- Make notes
- Highlight text
- Bookmark pages

How to get your ebook

Follow the instructions in the inside front cover of this book.

Introduction

To the student

This book has been written to help you learn new vocabulary. You already know a large number of English words, but to express yourself more fully and in a more sophisticated way at the upper-intermediate level, you will ideally need about 4,000 words, so increasing your vocabulary is very important for your general progress in English. In this book, there are over 2,500 new words and phrases for you to learn. You will find them on the left-hand page of each unit. Every new word or phrase is used in a sentence, or in a conversation, or is in a table, or has a picture with it, or has some explanation of what it means. On the right-hand page there are exercises and other activities to help you practise using the words and to help you to remember them. The book has been written so that you can use it yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like, but we believe it is a good idea if you do Units 1 to 4 first, as they will help you to work with the rest of the book in the best possible way.

The **Answer key** at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you do them. The Answer key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because often there is not just one correct way of saying something. Where you are asked to talk about yourself, in the **Over to you** exercises, we do not generally provide answers, since this is your opportunity to work completely independently and in a very personal way, so everyone's answers will be very different.

The **Index** at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a table of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 258.

You should also have a dictionary with you when you use the book. You can use a paper dictionary or an electronic one, or you can go to Cambridge Dictionaries Online at http://dictionary.cambridge.org. Access to a dictionary is useful because sometimes you may want to check the meaning of something, or find a word in your own language to help you remember the English word. Sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so.

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do two things:

1. Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers in the Answer key. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten.

2. Develop ways of your own to study and learn new words and phrases which are not in this book. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in a notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished it, you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced*. Along with this book, you can also use the more specialised titles: *English Idioms in Use*, *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* and *English Collocations in Use*, all of which are available at intermediate and advanced levels.

Find out more at http://www.cambridge.org/elt

To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended to take learners from a lower-intermediate level of vocabulary to an upper-intermediate level. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted the Cambridge International Corpus (now known as the Cambridge English Corpus), a written and spoken corpus of present-day English, including a huge learner corpus, to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included for students at B2 (CEFR) level. The new vocabulary (on average 25–30 items per unit) is presented with illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an Index with pronunciation for the target vocabulary. The Answer key at the end of the book is for students to check their answers to the exercises after they do them.

The book focuses not just on single words, but on useful phrases and collocations, and the vocabulary is illustrated in natural contexts. The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to basic concepts such as time, number and movement, linking words, word formation, multi-word expressions, pronunciation and varieties and style, as well as a set of initial units concerned with ways of learning vocabulary. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, based on information from the Cambridge Learner Corpus, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but we would advise doing the initial units (Units 1 to 4) first, as these lay the foundations for the rest of the book.

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, with some traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can easily be adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual way. The Answer key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises. This is because often there is not just one correct way of saying something. Where students are asked to talk about themselves, in the **Over to you** exercises, we do not generally provide answers, since these exercises give learners the opportunity to work completely independently and in a very personal way, so everyone's answers will be very different.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that learners need five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really begin to know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished all the units in this book, they will be ready to move on to the higher-level books in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced*, and the advanced levels of *English Idioms in Use*, *English Phrasal Verbs in Use* and *English Collocations in Use*, by the same authors as this book.

Find more resources for teachers at http://www.cambridge.org/elt

We hope you enjoy using the book.

Study unit 1

Learning vocabulary

A What do you need to learn?

Did you know that there are over half a million words in English but that the average native speaker only uses about 5,000 in everyday speech? You already know many of those 5,000 words. This book will help you to learn many of those that you do not yet know and it will help you to use them appropriately and accurately.

B What does knowing a new word mean?

It is not enough just to know the meaning of a word. You also need to know:

- which words it is usually used with;
- its grammatical characteristics;
- how it is pronounced;
- whether it is formal, informal or neutral.

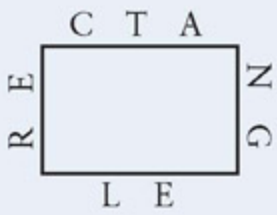
So when you learn a word you should make sure that you:

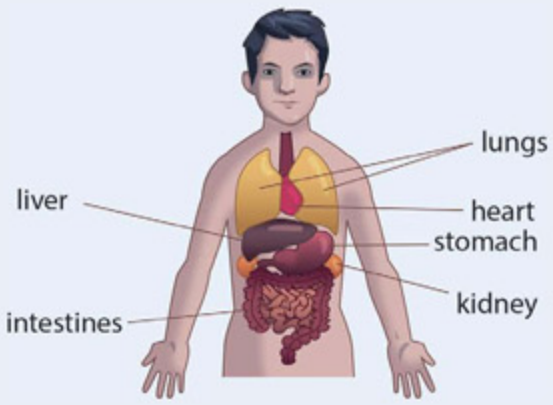
- Learn new words in phrases not in isolation.
- Notice how words commonly go together. These are called **collocations** and include:
  adjectives + nouns, e.g. *rich vocabulary, classical music, common sense*;
  verbs + nouns, e.g. *to express an opinion, to take sides*;
  nouns in phrases, e.g. *in touch with, a train set, a sense of humour*;
  words + prepositions, e.g. *at a loss for words, in particular.*
- Notice special grammatical characteristics of new words. For example, note irregular verbs, e.g. *undertake, undertook, undertaken*; uncountable nouns, e.g. *luggage*; or nouns that are only used in the plural, e.g. *scissors.*
- Notice any special pronunciation problems with new words.
- Check if the word is particularly formal or informal in character, in other words if it has a particular register.

C How can you help yourself to memorise words?

Research suggests that some students find it easier to learn words if they (a) learn them in groups and (b) make use of pictures, as shown here.

You can group words in any way you like – topic, grammatical feature, word root, and so on. The unit titles in this book might give you some ideas.





D How can you help yourself learn more words?

This book will help you to learn vocabulary in a systematic way. However, you can also help yourself to learn more words and expressions by reading and listening to as much English as possible. Here are some ideas about things you can read or listen to:

websites
audio books
magazines
TV
academic or professional literature
YouTube
reference material (dictionaries, encyclopedias)
recipes
radio, e.g. BBC World Service
newspapers
poetry
fiction
songs
conversations with native speakers
blogs
films
tweets
podcasts
sports reports

Exercises

1.1 **Here are some aspects of grammar to be aware of when learning new vocabulary. Give two examples of words that reflect this aspect of grammar.**

1 a noun only used in the plural *scissors* .....
2 an uncountable noun .....
3 an irregular verb .....
4 a noun with an irregular plural .....

1.2 **What aspect of pronunciation should you notice about the following words?**

1 subtle *the b is silent (not pronounced)*
2 catastrophe
3 chemistry
4 answer
5 a record / to record
6 photograph / photographer / photographic

1.3 **Read the text. Use words from the box to complete each 'collocations fork'.**

English has a remarkable range of words. Thanks to periods of contact with foreign languages and its readiness to coin new words out of old elements, English has a particularly large vocabulary. For example, as well as *kingly* (from Anglo- Saxon) we find *royal* (from French) and *regal* (from Latin). There are many such sets of words, which make it possible to express subtle shades of meaning.

~~coincidence~~	difference	family	~~likeness~~	palace	a phrase
~~range~~	shade	suggestion	a term	welcome	new words

1 a remarkable *range / likeness / coincidence* 2 to coin .... 3 a royal .... 4 a subtle ....

1.4 **Write *i* by the words that are informal and *f* by those that are formal.**

1 guys *i*
2 a minor .....
3 Awesome! .....
4 to alight (from a bus) .....
5 to feel gutted .....
6 a felon .....
7 to bug someone .....
8 to zone out .....

1.5 **A student learnt each of these sets of words as a group. What is the unifying factor for each group? Can you add one more word to each group?**

1 king, queen, prince, princess *royalty - duke*
2 sunshade, shady, shadow, shade, to shadow, shadowy .....
3 articulate, communicate, convey, express, put across .....
4 noun, verb, adjective, adverb .....
5 subtle, comb, lamb, crumb, debt, plumber .....

1.6 **Draw a picture to help you remember each of the following vocabulary items.**

1 circle 

2 to coin new words 3 screwdriver 4 to drip

1.7 **Over to you**

Look at the suggestions in D. Can you think of any other ideas to add to the list? Think about the ways of learning vocabulary that you use now, and think about ways you could use more in the future.

Study unit 2

Organising a vocabulary notebook

A Organising words by meaning

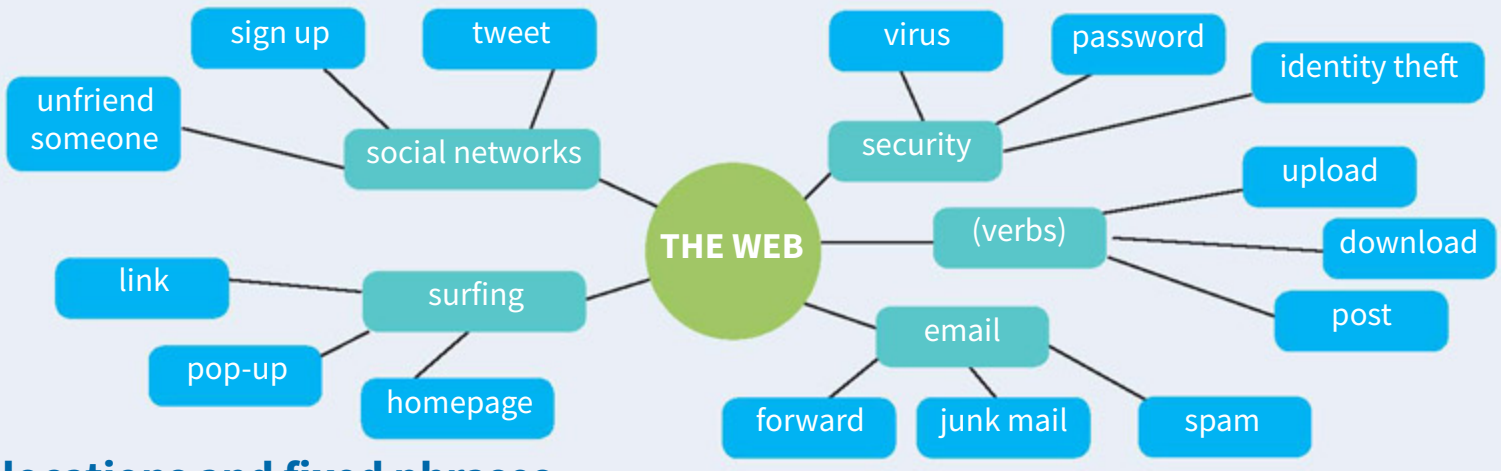
Try dividing your notebook into different broad sections, with sections for **words for feelings, words to describe places, words for movement, words for thinking**, etc.

Charts and tables of various kinds can help you organise your vocabulary. Here is an example for words connected with music:

Instruments	*Types of music*	*Verbs*	*Related words*
guitar *cello* *piano*	*classical (not classic)* *folk (not folkloric)* *world*	*play* *strum (a guitar)* *perform*	*practice (n) practise (vb)* *track* *release (an album)*

B Building networks of meaning

A network diagram is useful. It can grow in whatever direction you want it to.



C Collocations and fixed phrases

It is important to know how a word combines with other words (its collocations). Always record the common collocations of a word as you meet them, e.g.

win (prize, award, medal) *earn (money, a high salary)* *gain (time, an advantage)*

Where a word is often used in a fixed phrase, always record the whole phrase, e.g.

in a hurry *out of touch* *to and fro* *now and again*

D Synonyms and antonyms

When you find a synonym (same meaning) or an antonym (opposite meaning) of a word you already have in your book, enter it next to that word with a few notes, e.g.

urban ≠ rural *stop = cease (cease is very formal)*

E Organising by word class

Make a note of the word class of a new word (whether it is a noun, verb, adjective, etc.). Record words from the same word family together, e.g.

produce (verb or noun) *product (noun)* *productive (adjective)*

F Stress

Record where the stress falls on a multi-syllable word, especially if the stress changes between word classes, e.g. *pro<u>du</u>ce (verb)* *<u>pro</u>duce (noun)* *pro<u>duc</u>tive (adjective)*

Language help

Note any typical errors you make or which your teacher has mentioned.

Exercises

2.1 Organise the words into the topics below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

tabloid ~~stress~~ hang out with sb exhaustion podcast overwork
upload a video burnt out blogosphere journalist snowed under with work
casual acquaintance blog be close to sb count on sb be under pressure

topic	words
working too much / too hard	*stress*
friendship	
media	

2.2 Here is a list of words a learner of English made in a vocabulary notebook in class. Organise them in a more efficient way, using the chart.

rush oversleep ~~latecomer~~ alarm clock set a clock deep sleep fast asleep
out of breath heavy sleeper in a hurry breathless nightmare dash yawn
exhausted

nouns	verbs	adjectives	collocations	fixed phrases
latecomer				

2.3 Change the sentences using a synonym (S) or antonym (A) of the words in bold using words from the box.

~~glad~~ spicy deprive sb of sth shot dissatisfied chilly

1 I was **pleased** *glad* to hear you'd passed your exam. (S)
2 I got some excellent **photos** ..... of the Grand Canyon on my trip to the US. (S)
3 She was **happy** ..... with the conditions they offered her in the new job. (A)
4 The prisoners were **supplied with** ..... food and medical care. (A)
5 I don't like **mild** ..... curries. (A)
6 It's a **cold** ..... day today. (S)

2.4 Fill in the missing word forms. Then mark the word stress for each item.

noun	verb	adjective	person
perfection	perfect	perfect	perfectionist
information	inform		
politics			
economics		*	

* Give two adjectives.

2.5 Over to you

Think about your own learning style and which ways of organising vocabulary would work best for you.

Study unit 3

Using your dictionary

A What a good dictionary tells you: the basics

A good learners' dictionary (in book form or online) can tell you about:

- Pronunciation: this may mean learning some symbols which are different from the letters of the English alphabet.

	th in **th**ick	ð	th in **th**en	ʧ	ch in **ch**ur**ch**
	sh in **sh**e	ʤ	j in **j**am	ʒ	s in plea**s**ure
ŋ	ng in ri**ng**	æ	a in b**a**d	ɒ	o in t**o**p
	or in f**or**m	ʊ	u in p**u**t		a in **a**bout
ʌ	u in **u**p	ɜː	ir in b**ir**d		

- Word stress: often shown by a mark before the syllable to be stressed or by underlining or bold type, e.g. /əd'**ven**ʧə/, /**wes**tən/, **com**plicated.
- Usage: how a word is used and any special grammatical pattern that goes with it, e.g. **suggest** + clause (not an infinitive) **–** *I suggest* **you ring her** *right away***.**
  (NOT I suggest you ~~to ring her~~ right away.)

B Additional information

- Synonyms (words of similar meaning) and antonyms (opposites), e.g. **mislay** and **misplace** (synonyms), **friend** ≠ **enemy/foe** (antonyms).
- Collocations (how words go together), e.g. the adjective **firm** is often used in these collocations: **firm commitment**, **firm grip**, **firm believer**.
- Whether a verb is transitive or intransitive: *catch* is transitive and must have an object, e.g. *He* **caught the ball** and threw it back to me; laugh is intransitive and does not need an object, e.g. *She* **laughed** when I told her the news.
- Whether a word is used for people and/or things. In this entry for the adjective **hurtful** in the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* online, we can see that hurtful can be used about what someone says or about someone:

hurtful /'hɜːtfəl/ *adjective*

causing emotional pain:
That was a very hurtful remark!
How can you be so hurtful?

- Word class (often as abbreviations **n** noun, **adj** adjective, etc.), and whether a noun is countable or uncountable.
- Information about how words are related to one another through meaning. The *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* online allows you to see a visual display of the networks of meaning for a word, as in this display for the adjective **fascinating**. The **Visual Thesaurus** shows related adjectives.



The adjectives are grouped according to meaning. This can be very useful when you are writing. If you want to vary your use of adjectives, you can look up the related adjectives to see which one(s) most closely express(es) the meaning you need.

Exercises

3.1 Pronunciation. What English words are these?

1 /edjʊ'keɪʃən/ *education*
2 /'pɑːspɔːt/ .....
3 /'liːnɪŋ/ .....
4 /'lɪbəti/ .....
5 /rə'vɪʒən/ .....
6 /'brʌðə/ .....

3.2 Underline the stressed syllable of these words. Check your answers in your dictionary.

1 unique
2 elegant
3 urgently
4 eyebrow
5 record (verb)
6 thermometer
7 extract (noun)
8 lifestyle

3.3 Look at the grammar patterns which the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* gives for these words and then correct the sentences that follow.

1

supply /sə'plaɪ/ ▸ *verb* [T] to provide something that is wanted or needed, often in large quantities and over a long period of time: *Electrical power is supplied **by** underground cables.* O *Three people have been arrested for supplying arms **to** the terrorists.* O *The company has supplied the royal family (= provided them with something they need) for years.* O *At the beginning of term, students are supplied **with** a list of books that they are expected to read.*

Brazil supplies coffee at many countries. *Brazil supplies coffee to many countries.*

The officer supplied each soldier a map. .....

2

deny /dɪ'naɪ/ *verb* [T] NOT TRUE 1 to say that something is not true: *He will not confirm or deny the **allegations.*** O **[+ that]** *Neil denies **that** he broke the window, but I'm sure he did.* O [+ **-ing** verb] *Neil denies break**ing** the window.*

The Minister denied to have received any money from the oil company. (*two answers*)

.....

3.4 Put a tick (✓) if these adjectives can be used about a person, or a thing (which could be an event, an object, a fact, an idea, etc.) or both. Use your dictionary if necessary.

	person	thing		person	thing
sad	✓		damp		
lucky			awkward		
content			compulsory		

3.5 A typical dictionary abbreviation for a noun is (n) and for an adjective (adj). What do you think these abbreviations mean?

(adv) *adverb* (pron) ..... (conj) .....
(prep) ..... (UK) ..... noun [C] .....
verb [T] ..... noun [U] ..... verb [I or T] .....

3.6 Over to you

Go to Cambridge Dictionaries Online at http://dictionary.cambridge.org, select the Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary and look up the adjective *damp*. Click on the Visual Thesaurus. How many of the words do you know? Choose four words you don't know and look them up. Record them in your notebook.

Study unit 4

Guessing and explaining meaning

A Working out meaning from context

There are a number of clues you can use to help you understand the meaning of an unfamiliar word.

The context in which the word is used

- Visual clues: for example, a picture in a book or film footage in a TV news broadcast.
- Your own background knowledge about a situation: for example, if you already know that there has just been an earthquake in a big city, then you will find it easy to understand the word 'earthquake' when you hear a news broadcast about it.
- The words around the unfamiliar word: for example, 'Tara picked one tall yellow gladiolus to put in her new vase.' Even if you have never seen or heard the word 'gladiolus', it is clear from the context that it is a type of flower.
- Grammatical clues: for example, it is clear that 'superstitious' must be an adjective in the sentence 'Alejandro is very superstitious and would never walk under a ladder', or that 'gingerly' is an adverb in 'Mike came gingerly down the stairs, trying to avoid all the broken glass.'



Similarity to other words you already know in English

A large number of words in English are made up of combinations of other words. You may never have seen the word 'headscarf', for example, but it is easy to work out that it is a scarf worn on the head. Units 74–76 will help you improve your skills in understanding how English uses everyday words to build up new concepts.

Structure

A prefix or suffix may give you a clue: for example, Units 70–72 focus on different aspects of word formation in English and should help you use those clues to make sense of unfamiliar words.

Similarity to a word you know in your own (or some other) language

If your first language is of Latin or of Germanic origin, you will come across many words in English that resemble words in your own language. However, English has taken many words from many other languages too. So make use of any other languages you know.
But remember that some words are false friends – they sound as if they mean the same but in fact they have a different meaning. For example, *gift* in English means *a present* but in German *Gift* means *poison.*

B Explaining unknown words

The following expressions are useful when you are trying to explain what a word or expression means:
It's probably something (a bit) like (a chair) …
It's got to be something you use for (painting pictures / cleaning the kitchen floor) …
It's a kind of (bird / musical instrument / building) …
I think it must / could mean …

Exercises

4.1 **Look at the following text. Before you read it, see if you know what the underlined words mean.**

A tortoise is a shelled reptile famed for its slowness and longevity. The Giant Tortoise of the Galapagos may attain over 1.5 metres in length and have a lifespan of more than 150 years. Smaller tortoises from Southern Europe and North Africa make popular pets. They need to be tended carefully in cool climates and must have a warm place in which they can hibernate.



Which of the underlined words can you guess from the context or using any other clues? First make a guess and then check your guesses in the Answer key.

4.2 **Use the context to work out what the underlined words mean. Explain them using one or other of the expressions in B on the opposite page.**

1 Above the trees at the edge of the meadow, a buzzard hangs for a moment on the wind before soaring towards the hills. *I think a buzzard must be a kind of bird.*
2 According to some sources, the water vole is one of the most rapidly declining creatures in Britain and a new survey is now being carried out to determine how serious the threat of extinction really is.
3 Using a large chisel and a hammer, Jack managed to knock down the old garden wall.
4 Kate carried in a delicious chicken and noodle soup in a large tureen and we enjoyed several bowls each.
5 We often used to walk up to the cliff top where we would clamber over the farmer's gate and go right to the edge where the view was better.
6 Some people get really ratty when they haven't had enough sleep.

4.3 **Use your knowledge of other basic English words to help you work out the meanings of the underlined words and expressions. Rewrite them using simpler words or explanations for the underlined words and phrases.**

1 It says on the can that this drink is sugar-free. *this drink doesn't contain sugar*
2 I find Caitlin a very warm-hearted person.
3 I've been up to my eyes in work ever since I got back from holiday.
4 We walked down a tree-lined street towards the station.
5 The little boys were fascinated by the cement-mixer.
6 More and more shops now have their own special store cards and offer you a discount if you use one of them.

4.4 **Use your knowledge of prefixes and suffixes to suggest what these phrases mean.**

1 to redirect a letter *to send it to a different address*
2 uncontrollable anger .....
3 pre-dinner drinks .....
4 bi-monthly report .....
5 my ex-boss .....
6 anti-tourist feelings .....
7 to disconnect the telephone .....
8 undelivered letters .....

5 Countries, nationalities and languages

A Using 'the'

Most names of countries are used without 'the', but some countries and other names have 'the' before them, e.g. **the United States / the US(A), the United Kingdom / the UK, the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United Arab Emirates / the UAE, the European Union / the EU, the Commonwealth**.

B Adjectives referring to people, countries and languages

With **-ish**: British Irish Flemish Polish Danish Turkish Spanish
With **-(i) an**: Canadian Brazilian Latvian Korean Russian Australian
With **-ese**: Japanese Chinese Vietnamese Portuguese Maltese Taiwanese
With **-i**: Israeli Iraqi Kuwaiti Pakistani Yemeni Bangladeshi
With **-ic**: Icelandic Arabic Slavonic
Some adjectives are worth learning separately, e.g. **Swiss**, **Thai**, **Greek**, **Dutch**, **Cypriot**.

C Nationalities

Some nationalities and cultural identities have nouns for referring to people, e.g. **a Finn**, **a Swede**, **a Turk**, **a Spaniard**, **a Dane**, **a Briton**, **an Arab**, **a Pole**. For most nationalities we can use the adjective as a noun, e.g. **a German**, **an Italian**, **a Belgian**, **a Catalan**, **a Greek**, **an African**, **a European**. Some need woman/ man/ person added to them (you can't say 'a Dutch'), so if in doubt, use them, e.g. **a Dutch man**, **a French woman**, **an Irish person**, **an Icelandic man**.

D World regions



E Regional groups and ethnic groups

People belong to **ethnic groups** and **regional groups** such as **African-Caribbean**, **Asian**, Latin **American**, **North African**, **Scandinavian**, **Southern African**, **European**, **Arabic**. These can be used as countable nouns or as adjectives.

Many **Europeans** enjoy travelling to the Far East to experience **Asian** cultures.
Arabic culture extends across a vast region of North Africa and the Middle East.

People speak **dialects** as well as languages. Everyone has a **native language** or **first language** (sometimes called **mother tongue**); many have **second** and **third languages**. Some people are expert in more than one language and are **bilingual** or **multilingual**. People who only know one language are **monolingual**.

Exercises

5.1 Write the related adjectives in the correct columns.

~~Ireland~~ Iceland Thailand ~~Latvia~~ Israel Switzerland China Pakistan
Turkey Arabia Brazil the Netherlands Korea Denmark

-(i) an	-ic	-ish	-i	-ese	(other)
Latvian		*Irish*			

5.2 Match the countries with their world regions.

1 Sweden	*c*	a the Middle East
2 Cambodia		b Southern Africa
3 Nicaragua		c Scandinavia
4 Tunisia		d East Asia
5 Saudi Arabia		e Central America
6 Botswana		f North Africa

5.3 Correct the mistakes in these newspaper headlines.

1 **New James Bond to be played by a ~~Swedish~~!**

Swede

2 **BRITAIN'S HAVE HIGHEST TAX RATE IN EUROPE**

3 **MALTISH PRIME MINISTER VISITS WASHINGTON**

4 **Police arrest Danish on smuggling charge**

5 Iraqian delegation meets Pakistanian President

5.4 Famous names. Can you name a famous …

1 Argentinian sportsman or woman? *Lionel Messi*
2 Spanish actor?
3 South African political leader?
4 Australian singer?
5 Italian opera singer?
6 Irish rock-music band?
7 American golfer?

5.5 Over to you

Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 I am ..... . (nationality)

2 My first language is ..... .

3 I speak ..... (number) language(s) fluently, so I am ..... .

4 My ethnic/ regional group is ..... .

5 I have visited these countries: ..... .

6 I would like to travel to ..... .

7 One language I would like to learn is ..... .

8 I've never been to these two countries: ..... and ..... .

6 The weather

A Cold weather






In Northern Europe, **daytime**[1] temperatures are often quite mild, even in **late**[2] autumn. The days are often **misty**[3], foggy and **damp**[4]. Soon, winter arrives, with **frost**[5], icy roads and **severe**[6] weather, including heavy snow. As people **expect** the weather to be bad, they try and keep warm so they don't **freeze**! Freezing weather may continue in the far north until May or even June, when the ground starts to **thaw** /θɔː/[7] and the ice **melts**[8] again.

[1] during the day [2] towards the end of a period of time [3] with clouds of small drops of water in the air, making it difficult to see things in the distance [4] slightly wet, and not pleasant or comfortable [5] thin, white layer of ice on surfaces when the weather is very cold [6] extremely bad [7] change from hard, frozen state to softer state [8] change from solid to liquid under heat

B Warm/ hot weather



In a **tropical**[1] climate, the weather is often **stifling**[2], **muggy**[3] and **humid**[4]. In other hot climates, there may be **boiling**[5] hot days, and **heatwaves**[6] may be common.

[1] very hot, as in countries near the Equator [2] hot, uncomfortable, you can hardly breathe [3] very warm and a little damp [4] hot and damp, makes you sweat a lot [5] extremely hot [6] very hot, dry periods

C Wet weather



shower | heavy rain | pour down | torrential rain | flood

This wet weather scale gets stronger from left to right.
shower (noun) → **heavy rain** → **pour down** (verb) / **downpour** (noun) → **torrential rain** → **flood** (noun and verb)

This rain won't last long; it's only a **shower**. [short period of rain]
There was quite **heavy rain** during the night. / It **rained heavily** during the night.
It was absolutely **pouring down** yesterday. / There was a real **downpour**.
In Malaysia there is usually **torrential rain** most days, and the roads sometimes get **flooded**. / There are sometimes **floods** on the roads.
The sky's a bit **overcast**; I think it's going to rain. [very cloudy]
We had a **drought** /draʊt/ last summer. It didn't rain for six weeks.

D Wind



There was a **gentle breeze** on the beach, just enough to cool us.
There was a very **strong**/**high wind** and my umbrella blew away.
There was a **gale** that day, so we didn't go sailing. [very high wind]
People stayed indoors because there was a **hurricane** on the way. [extremely high, dangerous wind]

Common mistakes

The noun *weather* is uncountable. We say: *We had **bad weather** that day*. (NOT We had ~~a bad weather~~.)

Exercises

6.1 Answer the questions about the words in A opposite.

1 Which adjective could you use to describe something that is wet, but not very wet? *damp*
2 Which adjective would you use before 'summer' to refer to the end part of it? .....
3 Which verb means the temperature has gone up and there is no longer frost or ice? .....
4 Which word can be used to describe something that happens in the day? .....
5 What happens to ice cream on a very hot day? .....
6 If you see a thin, white covering on everything on a cold day, what is it? .....
7 If you can't see things in the distance, what is the weather probably like? .....
8 Which two adjectives could you use to describe a wind that blows very hard? .....
9 Which adjective can you use to describe very bad weather? .....

6.2 What types of weather do these pictures suggest?






1 *hurricane* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 .....

6.3 Rewrite the words in bold using words from B opposite.

I think it would be interesting to live in a ~~**hot**~~ *tropical* climate. However, I don't like weather **that is hot and damp and makes you sweat** ..... . I even dislike the days **that are slightly warm and damp** ..... which we get in the UK. Some people love **extremely** ..... hot days, and I don't mind **very hot, dry periods** ..... occasionally, but when it's **hot and uncomfortable and you can hardly breathe** ..... , it's just impossible. Maybe I should stay at home and forget about moving to a hot climate!

6.4 What kinds of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go *before* each of these. Use words from the opposite page.

1 *The weather was stifling.* We had to use the air-conditioning every afternoon.
2 ..... The sweat was pouring out of us.
3 ..... It just cooled us nicely on the hot beach.
4 ..... Cars were sliding everywhere out of control.
5 ..... The postman had to use a boat to get around.
6 ..... You couldn't really see the trees in the distance.
7 ..... The earth became rock hard and a lot of plants died.
8 ..... It blew the newspaper right out of my hands.
9 ..... My hair and clothes got soaking wet.
10 ..... It looked as if it would rain at any minute.

6.5 Over to you

This chart shows anyone who wants to visit the West of Ireland what weather they can expect at different times of the year. Make a similar chart for your country or home region.

Dec–Mar	April–June	July–Aug	Sept–Nov
coldest months; usually wet; heavy rain; snow on high ground	generally cool, often wet and windy but getting warmer	warmest months; sunny, with showers; cool sea breezes	often mild, becoming cold; damp, misty and foggy, often overcast

7 Describing people: appearance

A Hair, face, skin and complexion /kəmˈplekʃən/



She's got straight hair and she's **thin-faced**/ she's got a **thin face**.



She's got long, wavy hair and she's **round-faced**/ she's got a **round face**.



She's got curly hair and is **black**.



He's got a crew-cut. He's **white**.



He's bald /bɔːld/ and has freckles.



He's got a beard and **moustache** /mʊsˈtɑːʃ/ and has a **chubby** face.



He's got receding hair and a few **wrinkles** /ˈrɪŋkəlz/.



He used to have black hair but now it's gone **grey**, almost **white**.

What sort of person would you find attractive? **Blonde**, **fair**, **dark** or **ginger-haired** / **red-haired**?
She has such beautiful **auburn** hair. /ˈɔːbən/ [red-brown]

Fair and **dark** can be used for hair, complexion or skin. Some people like **getting a tan** in summer [exposing their skin to the sun so that it goes darker], although the risks of getting **sunburnt** are well known.

B Height and build

Fat may sound impolite. Instead we can say that someone is rather **plump** or **stout**, or **a bit overweight**. If someone is broad and solid, we can say they are **stocky**. A person with good muscles can be **well-built** or **muscular**. [generally said about men] Someone who is very fat can be described as **obese** /əʊˈbiːs/, especially when talking in a medical context.

Someone who is thin can be described as **slim** [positive] or **skinny** [negative]. If someone **has a nice figure**, they have an attractive shape. [generally said about women]

C General appearance

She's a very **smart** and **elegant** woman, always **well-dressed**; her husband is quite the opposite, very **scruffy** and **untidy-looking** / **messy-looking**.
Chloe looked **stunning** in her red dress. [very attractive]
He's very **good-looking**, but his friend's rather **unattractive**. [*opp* attractive]
Her eyes are her best **feature**. [the most attractive part of her face]
Do you think **beautiful** women are always attracted to **handsome** men? I don't. I think **personality** matters most**.**
First impressions are always important**.** [your first reaction to someone]

Language help

The suffix **-ish** is useful for describing people (see Unit 70). *She's **tallish**. He has **brownish** hair. He must be **thirtyish / in his thirties.***

Exercises

7.1 Choose a word from the opposite page to complete these sentences.

1 I wish I could get a *tan* like yours but my skin just goes red in the sun.
2 My cousin used to have a lovely ..... but she's put on weight in all the wrong places since she stopped taking much exercise.
3 Thomas's eyes are his best ..... – they're so large and sparkly and such a deep brown.
4 Jess is in her thirties but she still has the same lovely fresh ..... as her young daughter has.
5 Staff at the bank were told to dress smartly for work so they would always create a good ..... on customers.
6 I'd call her ..... rather than ginger-haired – her hair's dark brown with just a tinge of red in it.
7 George says that the ..... round his eyes just show that he has smiled a lot in his life.
8 Even in jeans Alina manages to look ..... .
9 Carla looks beautiful in old clothes and without any make-up but when she's dressed up for an evening out she's absolutely ..... .

7.2 Answer these remarks with the opposite description.

1 A: I thought you said he was the short, chubby one.
B: *No, no, no, not at all, he's the tall, thin-faced one.*
2 A: Was that his brother, the one with wavy hair?
B: No, completely the opposite, his brother's .....
3 A: She's always quite well-dressed, so I've heard.
B: What! Who told you that? Every time I see her, she's .....
4 A: So Charlene's that rather plump, fair-haired woman, is she?
B: No, you're looking at the wrong one. Charlene's .....
5 A: So, tell us about the new boss; good-looking?
B: No, I'm afraid not; rather .....
6 A: I don't know why, but I expected the tour guide to be fiftyish or rather plump.
B: No, apparently she's only .....

7.3 WANTED! MISSING! Complete the gaps in these police posters with your own ideas.

WANTED FOR MURDER



Ian Prowse
White, height 6ft,
..... -faced,
..... hair,
..... skin

WANTED FOR ARMED ROBBERY



Sandra King
White, height 5ft 4,
..... hair,
..... build,
..... -faced

MISSING



Jasmin Kaur, Age 7,
Asian, height 4ft,
thin-.....
..... ,
..... hair

WANTED DEAD OR ALIVE



Jack 'Dagger' Flagstone
White, height 6ft,
..... , with
..... and ..... ;
..... build.

7.4 Over to you

Write a description of each of these people, giving information about their hair and face, their height and build and general appearance:

1 you yourself

2 your best friend

3 a neighbour

4 your ideal of a handsome man / a beautiful woman

8 Describing people: personality

A Intellectual ability

lots of ability	**intelligent** **bright** **clever** **sharp** **shrewd** **able** **gifted** **talented** **brainy** (informal)
lacking ability	**stupid** **foolish** **simple** **silly** **brainless** **daft** **dumb** **dim** **thick** (the last five are predominantly informal words, and they can all be offensive)
clever, in a negative way, using brains to trick or deceive	**cunning** **crafty** **sly**

B Attitudes towards life

Amal is **pessimistic** while Nia is **optimistic** – he always expects the worst to happen while she looks on the bright side.

It is strange that one of the twins is so **extroverted** while the other is so **introverted** – Ben loves being the focus of attention while Jake prefers to be alone with his thoughts.

I feel very **tense** (or **wound up** / **stressed out****) after a very busy day at work but, after a hot bath, I'll soon feel **relaxed**.

Eva is very **sensible** – she'd never do anything stupid. In other words, she's very practical and **down-to-earth**.

Roberto is very **sensitive** – he gets very **upset** (or **worked-up**, more informal), if he feels people are criticising him.

C Attitude towards other people

Enjoying others' company: **sociable** **gregarious***

Disagreeing with others: **quarrelsome** **argumentative**

Taking pleasure in others' pain: **cruel** **sadistic**

Relaxed in attitude to self and others: **easy-going** **even-tempered** **laid-back****

Not polite to others: **impolite** **rude** **ill-mannered** **discourteous***

Telling the truth to others: **honest** **trustworthy** **reliable** **sincere**

Unhappy if others have what you do not have yourself: **jealous** **envious**

D One person's meat is another person's poison

Some characteristics can be either positive or negative depending on your point of view. The words in the right-hand column mean roughly the same as the words in the left-hand column except that they have negative rather than positive connotations.

positive associations	negative associations
determined	**obstinate** **stubborn** **pig-headed**
thrifty **economical**	**stingy** **mean** **tight-fisted** **miserly***
self-assured **confident**	**self-important** **arrogant** **full of yourself****
unconventional **original**	**eccentric** **odd** **peculiar** **weird****
frank **direct** **open**	**blunt** **abrupt** **brusque** **curt**
broad-minded	**unprincipled** **permissive**
enquiring*	**inquisitive** **nosy****
generous	**extravagant**
innocent	**naive**
ambitious	**pushy****
assertive	**aggressive** **bossy****

* These words are much more common in written than in spoken English.

** These words are much more common in spoken than in written English.

Exercises

8.1 **Match the words on the left with their opposites on the right.**

1 clever	*f*	a	introverted
2 extroverted		b	tight-fisted
3 rude		c	courteous
4 cruel		d	gregarious
5 generous		e	kind-hearted
6 unsociable		f	dim

8.2 **Do you think that the speaker likes or dislikes the people in these sentences? Reword each sentence to give the opposite impression (negative rather than positive or vice versa).**

1 Carmen's very thrifty. *Likes - Carmen's very stingy.*
2 Molly's usually frank.
3 Grace is quite broad-minded.
4 Sam can be aggressive.
5 Nico's quite bossy.
6 I find Marcus self-important.
7 Don't you think James is nosy?
8 Freya is very original.

8.3 **Pair the words that have similar meanings.**

brainless - silly

~~brainless~~	curt	gifted	rude	tense
brusque	direct	honest	sensible	tight-fisted
crafty	down-to-earth	impolite	~~silly~~	trustworthy
cunning	frank	miserly	talented	wound up

8.4 **Magazines often publish questionnaires which are supposed to analyse aspects of your personality. Look at the words below and match them to the corresponding question.**

pessimistic	argumentative	sensitive	sociable
extravagant	assertive	inquisitive	~~reliable~~

1 If you arrange to meet at 7 pm, do you arrive at 7 pm? *reliable* .....
2 When you have a problem, do you think the worst will happen? .....
3 Do you find it easy to tell your boss if you feel he or she has treated you badly? .....
4 Do you always look out of the window if you hear a car draw up? .....
5 Do you often buy your friends presents for no particular reason? .....
6 Do you frequently disagree with what other people say? .....
7 Do you lie awake at night if someone has said something unkind to you? .....
8 Do you prefer to be in the company of other people? .....

8.5 **What questions like those in 8.4 could you ask to find out if a person is the following?**

1 thrifty *Do you use up leftover food?*
2 blunt
3 sensible
4 intelligent
5 even-tempered
6 original
7 obstinate
8 stressed out

8.6

Over to you

Choose two people who are important in your life. Describe them using adjectives in this unit and give reasons why you chose each adjective.

EXAMPLE *My brother is sociable because he loves being with other people.*

9 Idioms describing people

A Positive and negative qualities

positive
She has **a heart of gold**. [very kind, generous]
He's **as good as gold**. [helpful, well-behaved; used generally for children]

negative
She's **as hard as nails**. [no sympathy for others]
He's **a nasty piece of work**. [unpleasant]

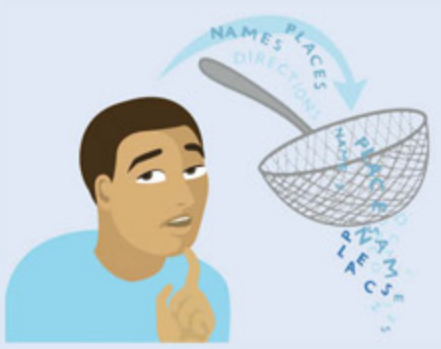
Note also:
Her **heart's in the right place**. [is a good and kind person even though they do not always seem so]
He's such **an awkward customer**. [difficult person to deal with]
She's **a pain in the neck**. Nobody likes her. [nuisance, difficult]
He **gets on everyone's nerves**. [irritates everybody]

B Idioms based on 'head'

You can learn idioms by associating them with a key word or words. Two of the idioms in A, for example, are based on *gold* and two on *heart*. Here is a set of idioms describing people based on the word *head.*

to have
- **your head screwed on** [be sensible, informal]
- **a head for heights** [not suffer from vertigo]
- **a head like a sieve** [bad memory]
- **a good head for figures** [be good at maths]
- **your head in the clouds** [unaware of reality]

to be head and shoulders above someone [much better than]
to bury your head in the sand [refuse to think about a difficult situation in the hope you won't have to deal with it]
to keep your head [stay calm in a difficult situation]






C How people relate to the social norm

She's a bit of **an odd-ball**. [peculiar, strange]
He's really **over the top**. [very exaggerated in behaviour]
He's (gone) **round the bend**, if you ask me. [absolutely crazy/mad]
My politics are very **middle- of- the- road.** [very normal; no radical ideas; neither left- nor right-wing]

D Who's who in the class? Idioms for people in the classroom

Sam's **teacher's pet**. [teacher's favourite] Laura's **top of the class**.
Harry is **a** real **know-all**. [thinks he knows everything]
Ali's a bit of **a big-head**. [has a high opinion of him/herself] Anna's a **lazy-bones**.

The last three idioms are used of people outside the **classroom situation** too.

Exercises

9.1 **Try to complete these idioms from memory if possible.**

1 She does a lot of voluntary work; she has a heart … *of gold.*
2 Don't expect any sympathy from the boss; she's as hard …
3 I'm sure Ahmed will help you; he's as good …
4 Although Florian sometimes seems a bit bad-tempered his heart is …
5 I don't think you'll like him; he's a nasty …
6 I try to avoid having much to do with Liam. He's rather an …

9.2 **What do we call …**

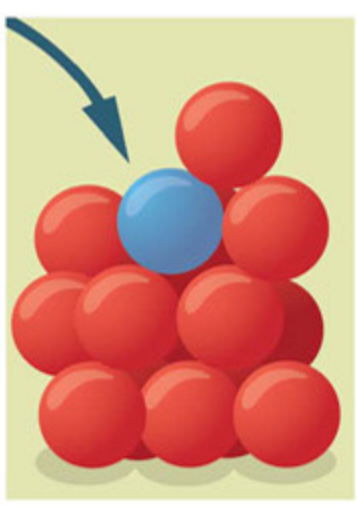
1 an irritating person who knows everything? *a know-all*
2 the person who is the teacher's favourite?
3 someone who thinks they are the best and says so?
4 the one who gets the best marks?
5 a person who is very lazy?

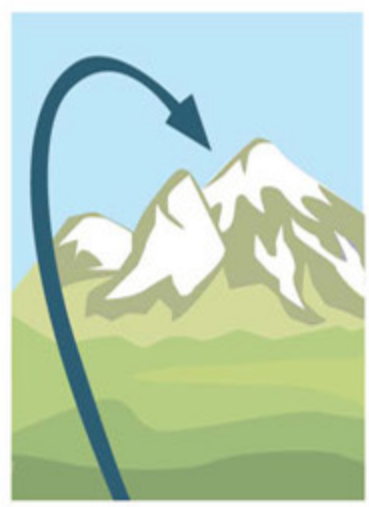
9.3 **Complete the sentences using an idiom from B.**

1 I'd better write it in my notebook. I have … *a head like a sieve.*
2 Ask Martha to check those sums. She has …
3 Don't ask me to go up that tower. I'm afraid I don't …
4 She's very sensible and knows what she's doing. She …
5 He's quite out of touch with reality. He really …
6 The problem won't go away so there's no point …
7 Max is top of the class, … everyone else.
8 Even when others around him are panicking Raul always …

9.4 **Which part of the body might a difficult person (a) get on (b) be a pain in?**

9.5 **Which of the idioms opposite do you think these pictures represent?**






1 *an odd-ball* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 .....

9.6

Over to you

Choose five idioms from this unit that you could use to describe people that you know.

10 Relationships

A Types of relationship

ANITA: Are you and Holly **best friends?**
LUCY: She's **a good friend** – she's not my best friend.
ANITA: But she's more than just a casual **acquaintance**[1], right?
LUCY: Oh, yes. We were **housemates**[2] at university.
ANITA: Really? So how did you first meet her?
LUCY: I met her through my **ex**[3], Kallum. She wasn't in a **steady**[4] relationship with anyone at the time, and she was looking for someone to share a room.
ANITA: Uh- huh. Is that Kallum who's now Olivia's **partner**[5?]
LUCY: Yeah, that's the one. They're not just partners, they're married and they're **colleagues** too. They're saving to buy a house now, so Kallum's living with his **parents-in-law**[6] at the moment.

[1] a person you have met but you don't know well [2] **mate** [friend; *infml*] is used in compound nouns to describe a person you share something with, e.g. classmate, roommate, workmate, flatmate, housemate. Workmate is common in non-professional or informal contexts; colleague is common among professional people, and sounds more formal. [3] ex-can be used without (informally) or with another word: ex-girlfriend, ex-husband, etc. [4] fixed and not changing suddenly [5] partner is used for someone you live with but are not married to, or for a business relationship where you share the ownership or running of a company [6] his wife's parents (his mother-in-law and father-in-law)

B Internet relationships

MyBook Home Profile Friends Inbox

If you join a social network, you can acquire **friends** (people you share personal information with) and build up your list of **contacts**. You can **invite** people to become your friends, and you can choose to **accept** new friends who invite you. You can **interact** with your friends by exchanging messages or posting **comments** on their page. You can also **share** photos and **tag** your friends (name them in photos that you post). If you want to fi nish a relationship, you can **unfriend/ defriend** that person.

C Liking and not liking someone

core verb	*positive (stronger)*	*negative*
like	love **adore** **idolise**	dislike can't stand **loathe** /ləʊð/
respect	**look up to** **admire**	**look down on** **despise**
attract **be attracted to**	fancy (*infml*)	leave someone cold

She doesn't just like Ben, she **idolises** him. I **can't stand** him.
I really **fancy** Charlotte, but her friend just **leaves me cold** / **doesn't do anything for me.**

D Phrases and idioms for relationships and dating

Lily and I **get on well** (**with each other**). [have a good relationship]
Jack and Amelia **don't see eye to eye**. [often argue/disagree]
I've **fallen out with** my parents again. [had arguments]
Carl is **having an affair** with his boss. [a sexual relationship, usually secret]
Let's try and **make it up**. [be friends again after a row/quarrel]
He's dating a Spanish girl. They've been **seeing each other** for a couple of months. [meeting and spending time together]
They met at a party and **got together** soon after. [started a romantic relationship]

Common mistakes

We say: People make friends. (NOT ~~get friends~~ or ~~find friends~~)

*It's often difficult to **make** new **friends** when you move to another city.* (NOT It's often difficult to ~~get~~ friends ...)

Exercises

10.1 **Use words with the suffix *-mate* to rewrite these sentences.**

1 This is Jack. He and I share a flat. *This is Jack. He and I are flatmates.*
2 Mike was the person I shared a room with at university. .....
3 We were in the same class together in 2006, weren't we? .....
4 She's not really a friend; she's just someone I work with. .....
5 Abbie is always arguing with the people she shares a house with. .....

10.2 **How many sentences can you write about the relationships between the people in the pictures, using words from the opposite page?**

EXAMPLE *Jon and Erica are colleagues.*



10.3 **Complete the text messages with the correct form of words from B opposite.**

Have you checked your social media this morning? Sam has [1] ..... you in a really funny photo and [2] ..... it with everyone! ☺

My grandma has just [3] ..... me to be her friend online! Don't know if I should [4] ..... or not.

I'm going to [5] ..... Emma if she keeps posting nasty [6] ..... about me online.

10.4 **What do you think the relationships between the people below would be? Use the verbs, phrases and idioms opposite.**

1 a teenage music fan: (a) parents *He/ She might like/ dislike his/ her parents.* (b) pop star (c) strict teacher (d) mate
2 a personal assistant: (a) another personal assistant (b) the boss (c) a very attractive workmate
3 a 45-year-old: (a) teenagers (b) ex-husband/wife who was cruel

10.5 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one mistake.**

1 Rosie and Matt don't ~~get on~~ *see* eye to eye.
2 I fell up with my parents last night. It wasn't my fault.
3 We had a quarrel but now we've made it well.
4 Do you think Josh and Nuala are making an affair? I do.
5 I see very well with all my colleagues at work.
6 Jo's attractive, but her mate just makes me cold completely.
7 Maria seems to find it difficult to get friends among her classmates.
8 I met my boyfriend at a party and we became together soon after.

10.6 Over to you

Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

..... is a good friend of mine. ..... is just a casual acquaintance.
Someone I look up to is ..... . A famous person I loathe is ..... .
Someone I once fancied was ..... . Someone I adore is ..... .

11 At home

A Types of houses/places people live in



detached house
not joined to any other house



terraced house
joined to several houses to form a row



bungalow
a house with only one storey (no upstairs)



semi-detached house
semi-(*infml*): joined to one other house

self-contained flat: does not share facilities with any other
cottage: a small house in the country or in a village
studio flat: a small apartment for one or two people, usually with one large room for sleeping and living in, a bathroom and sometimes a separate kitchen
villa: a large house with big gardens or a rented house in a holiday resort / tourist area

B Places in the home

You probably already know the names of most rooms and locations in a typical home.
Here are some less common ones and what they are for.
master/**main bedroom**: the largest, most important bedroom
utility room: usually just for the washing machine, freezer, etc.
shed: small building separated from the house usually for storing garden tools
attic/**loft**: space in the roof of a house used for storing things; it can also be converted into an extra living space with stairs leading up to it (**attic**/**loft conversion**)
cellar: room below ground level, no windows, used for storing things
basement: room below ground level, with windows, for living/working
studio: a room in which a painter or photographer works
landing: flat area at the top of a staircase
hall/hallway: open area as you come into a house
porch: covered area before an entrance door
terrace or **patio**: paved area between house and garden for sitting and eating, etc.
drive: a short road leading from the street to the house or garage; you can drive/park on it

C Everyday objects in the home



remote (control)



corkscrew



phone charger



peeler



toilet roll



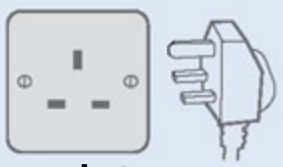
chopping board



(coat) hanger



ironing board
/ˈaɪənɪŋ bɔːd/



socket



dustpan and brush



grater

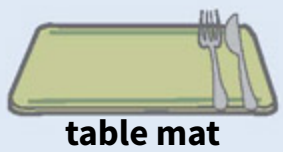


table mat

Common mistakes

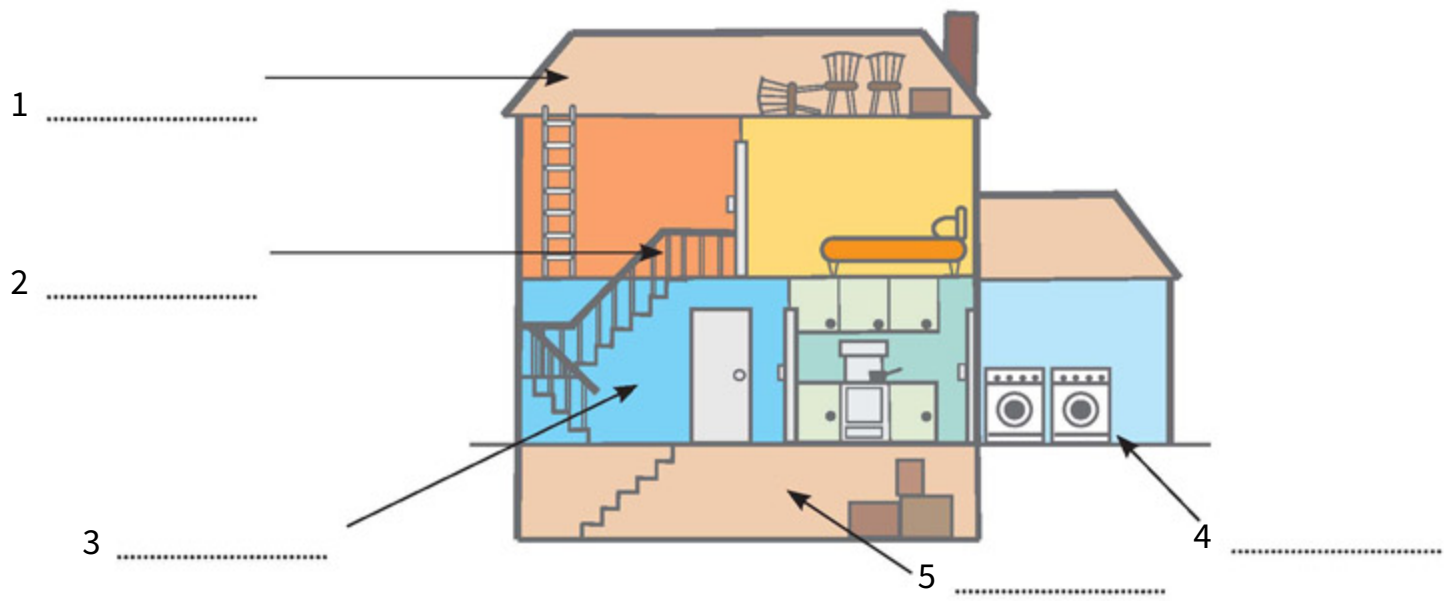
You **do housework, do the ironing, do the hoovering, do the washing-up.**
(NOT ~~make housework~~)

Exercises

11.1 Where in a typical house would you look for the following things?

1 garden tools *in the shed*
2 a toilet roll .....
3 table mats .....
4 a hanger .....
5 the remote .....
6 an ironing board .....
7 a socket .....
8 a porch .....
9 a grater .....
10 old empty boxes .....

11.2 Label the places in the house.



11.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1 The old house had a big *cellar* underneath it, where the family used to keep wine.
2 I'll prepare the potatoes and then you can do the cooking. Where's the ..... ?
3 Put a ..... under the coffee pot in case you mark that table. It's an antique.
4 Let's open this bottle. Do you know where the ..... is?
5 We keep our skis up in the ..... . They're out of the way up there.
6 You'll find the garden chairs in the ..... at the bottom of the garden. Bring them up and we'll have a drink on the ..... and watch the sunset.
7 The light switch for the stairs is on the ..... just by your bedroom door.
8 Grandma's moved to a ..... now she can't manage the stairs any more at her age.
9 Leave your car in the ..... , just in front of the garage. It'll be safe there.

11.4 Answer these questions about everyday objects.

1 How can you make very small pieces of cheese to sprinkle on a dish? *Use a grater* .
2 What might you fetch if someone dropped a cup and it broke into small pieces on the floor? .....
3 What do you need if your phone battery is flat? .....
4 How can you switch off the TV without leaving your chair? .....
5 How can you cut vegetables without marking the kitchen work surface? .....
6 What might you offer a visitor if they want to take off their jacket? .....

11.5 Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

1 Is your house detached? What sort is it if not?

2 Would you like to live in a studio flat? Why (not)?

3 Which of these household jobs do you most enjoy and which do you least enjoy – doing the washing-up / the washing / the ironing / the gardening / the hoovering / the dusting / the cooking?

12 Everyday minor problems

A Things that go wrong in houses and flats






This pipe's **leaking**.
He kicked the football too hard and it **smashed** a window.
This pot is **cracked**.
The batteries in this torch **have run out** / **are dead**. I'll have to get some more.
I'm sorry, your cup's **chipped**. Let me get you another one.
The lights aren't **working** – there's been a **power cut**.
The door handle's **come off** / **fallen off**.
The washing machine **broke down** the other day.
I'm sorry, the biscuits were at the bottom of my bag and they **got crushed** by the potatoes!
My computer keeps **crashing** today!

B Everyday minor injuries





She **twisted** her ankle coming down the stairs. **I bumped/banged** my head against the cupboard door and got a **bruise.** [/bruːz/ dark area on your skin where you have hurt yourself]
Kelly **tripped** and **fell down** and **grazed** her knee this morning. [if you trip you almost fall down because you hit your foot against something; if you graze something, it becomes red with broken skin, but no blood]

C Other everyday minor problems

I've **mislaid** my memory stick. Have you seen it anywhere? [put it somewhere and can't find it]
She **spilt** some coffee on the carpet. I hope it doesn't leave a **stain**. [permanent mark]
The sink is **blocked**. [the water will not run away]
I'm afraid I've **dented** your car. I'm really sorry. I'll pay for the repairs. [bent the metal a little bit by hitting something]
My mouse has **stopped working**; it could be a software problem.
I've **locked myself out**. Can I use your phone to ring my wife?
The car **won't start**. I hope it's nothing serious. Perhaps the battery's **flat**.
The kitchen clock's **slow**/**fast**/**stopped**. What time d'you make it?

Language help

Words often belong to more than one word class. In this unit, the following words can be used as verbs or as countable nouns:

flood crack chip bump bang bruise graze dent stain lock

Always make a special note of any word that belongs to more than one word class.

Exercises

12.1 **What do you think happened to make these people do/ say what they did?**

1 We had to send for a plumber. *Maybe a pipe was leaking.*
2 I had to call out a local mechanic.
3 Our neighbours let us use their washing machine.
4 Don't worry, the handle often does that – I'll fix it back on.
5 Luckily, that was all it was; the skin was broken a bit, but there was no blood.
6 What type of batteries does it take? I'll get some for you.
7 I don't know where you've put them. Try the bedside table.
8 I left it in the oven too long. It's all black on the top now!
9 I lost all my work – I know I should have saved it more often!

12.2 **Odd one out. Which of the three words is the odd one out in each case?**

1 spill, flood, chip *chip - the other two involve liquids*
2 stain, graze, bruise
3 run out, bump, flat
4 leak, smash, chip
5 leak, dent, flood

12.3 **Here is a matrix with the names of things and things that can go wrong with them. Put a tick (✓) for things that *typically* go together.**

	car	vase	elbow	clock	printer	sink	a meal
banged							
ruined							
cracked							
broken down							
dented							
stopped				✓			
blocked							

Write five sentences using combinations of words where you wrote a tick.

EXAMPLE *This clock has stopped - perhaps it needs new batteries.*

12.4 **Complete these sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.**

1 We had to use candles because *there was a power cut.*
2 I didn't look where I was going as I walked through the low doorway and .....
3 The wind blew the door shut and I realised I'd .....
4 I would ring her but I'm afraid I've .....
5 I can't take a photo, my camera's .....
6 I tried to run over the rocks but I .....
7 I accidentally sat on my bag of crisps and they .....

12.5

Over to you

What would you do if …

1 you mislaid your credit card?
2 you noticed your guest's glass was chipped?
3 one of your coat buttons came off?
4 your mobile phone stopped working?
5 you bruised your forehead?
6 your watch was slow?

13 Global problems

A Disasters/tragedies



earthquake
[the earth moves/trembles]



flood
[too much rain]



drought /dra t/
[no rain]



volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/
[hot liquid rock and gases pour from a mountain]

famine / f m n/ [no food] **landslide** [rocks and earth moving suddenly down a slope]
epidemic [disease affecting large numbers of people] **explosion** (e.g. a bomb)
major accident / **incident** (e.g. a plane crash)
hurricane / **tornado** /t ne d /
typhoon / **tropical storm** [violent wind / storm]
war / **civil war** [civil war is war between people of the same country]
Disasters not caused by human beings can be called **natural disasters**.

Language help

Injure / nd / is used about people.
Damage / d m d / is used about things.
*200 people were **injured**. Many buildings were **damaged**.*

Verbs connected with these words
A volcano has **erupted** in Indonesia. Hundreds **are feared dead.** The flu epidemic **spread** rapidly throughout the country. Millions are **starving** as a result of the famine. A big earthquake **shook** the city at noon today. The area is **suffering** its worst drought for many years. Civil war has **broken out** in the north of the country. A tornado **swept** through the islands yesterday.

B Words for people involved in disasters/ tragedies

The explosion resulted in 300 **casualties**. / k ju lti z/ [dead and injured people]
The real **victims** of civil war are children left without parents. [those who suffer the results]
There were only three **survivors** /s va v z/. All the other passengers were reported dead. [people who live through a disaster]
Thousands of **refugees** /refj d i z/ have crossed the border looking for food and shelter. [people who have escaped from their own country because of a war or other disaster]
Millions of **migrants** enter the country each year, looking for a better life. [people who travel from one country to another, often in order to find work]
During the battle, the **dead** and **wounded** / wu nd d/ were flown out in helicopters. [wounded: injured in a battle / by a weapon]

C Diseases/ epidemics

Here are some headlines from newspapers all connected with diseases and epidemics. Explanations are given.

/ re bi z/ disease can be caused by bite from a dog, fox, etc., very serious

Rabies out of control in many parts of Asia

New **AIDS** unit to be opened this month

acquired immune deficiency syndrome; often caused by sexual contact or contact with contaminated blood

/m le r / usually caught because of mosquito bites

New **malaria** drug tested

Cholera and **typhoid** injections not needed says Tourism Minister

/'kɒlərə/ /'taɪfɔɪd/ diseases causing sickness, diarrhoea, etc., caused often by infected food and water

Exercises

13.1 **What type of disaster from the list in A opposite are these sentences about? Why?**

1 The lava flow destroyed three villages. *Volcano - lava is the hot liquid rock from the mountain*
2 The aft ershock struck at 3.35 pm local time.
3 People had boarded up shops and houses during the day before, and stayed indoors.
4 Gunfire could be heard all over the town.
5 Witnesses said they saw a fireball fall out of the sky.
6 People had to stay on the upper floors and sometimes on the roofs of their homes.
7 The earth is cracked and vegetation has dried up.
8 They quite often happen in this area of the mountains and it can take some time for the roads to be cleared, especially if trees have been brought down too.

13.2 **Complete the missing items in this word-class table, using a dictionary if necessary. Where the space is shaded, you do not need to write anything.**

verb	noun: thing or idea	noun: person
explode	explosion	
		survivor
injure		
starve		
erupt		

13.3 **In these headlines, say whether the situation seems to be getting *worse* or *better*, or whether a disaster has *happened* or has been *avoided/prevented*.**

1 **Poison gas cloud spreads**

getting worse

2 **POLICE DEFUSE TERRORIST BOMB**

3 **OIL SLICK RECEDES**

4 **Experts warn of cholera time bomb**

5 **All survive plane's emergency landing**

6 **Flood warnings not heeded in time**

13.4 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word from B opposite. Try to work from memory.**

1 Another 50 people died today, all *victims* of the famine.
2 Over 5 million _____ have fled the war and are seeking shelter in neighbouring countries.
3 It was the worst road accident the country has ever seen, with over 120 _____.
4 A: Were there any _____ when the ship sank? B: I'm afraid not.
5 The _____ and _____ were left lying on the battlefield; it was a disgrace.
6 The number of economic _____ entering the country each year has increased sharply.

13.5 **Which diseases are these? Try to do this from memory.**

1 One that can be caused by a mosquito bite. *malaria*
2 One you can get by drinking infected water.
3 One you can get from an animal bite.
4 One caused by a virus which destroys the body's immune system.

14 Education

A Stages in a person's education (UK system)

The youngest children start their education in a **crèche** /kreʃ/, where they mostly play but also do some early learning activities. After that, they may go to a **nursery school**. Between the ages of five and 11, children attend **primary school,** where they learn the basics of reading, writing, arithmetic, etc. For most children, secondary education begins when they enter a **comprehensive school** or a more traditional **grammar school** (to which they **gain admission** by sitting an exam). The famous UK **public schools** are in fact private, fee-paying schools. Between the ages of 11 and 18, young people take a wide range of subjects in arts, sciences and technical areas. In the UK, pupils can leave school at the age of 16, although many young people choose to remain in full-time education until the age of 18. (In England it is **compulsory** for young people to continue with some form of education or training until they are 18 [they must do it], even if they also have a job.) From 16 to 18 young people may study at secondary school or at a **sixth-form college**, aft er which they may go on to **higher education**.



B Exams and qualifications

You **take**/**do**/**sit** an exam or **resit**[1] an exam. At schools and sixth-form colleges in the UK, students have to take formal **end-of-year** exams. At 18, a lot of students sit their **university entrance exams**, commonly referred to as 'A levels'. Students are usually given marks (e.g. 75%) or grades (e.g. A, B+, C). If you **pass** and **do well**, you get a high grade. If you fail, you don't get the minimum grade. If you **skip classes**[2], you'll probably do badly in the exam.

[1] take it again if you did badly first time
[2] miss deliberately; *infml*



Common mistakes

We say: **pass an exam,** e.g. *I **passed** all my exams and graduated in 2010.*
(NOT I ~~succeeded at/in~~ all my exams.)

C Technology

With an **LMS** or a **VLE**[1], students can work online and do more **distance**[2] **learning** or **blended**[3] **learning**. Teachers can **monitor**[4] students' activities and **progress**[5]; students can choose courses and/or **modules**[6], **submit**[7] work, write blogs, access wikis and leave voice messages.

[1] Learning Management System or Virtual Learning Environment: computer system that controls all aspects of teaching and learning [2] without attending classes, e.g. from home [3] using a mix of classroom and online learning [4] check regularly [5] note: *progress* is uncountable [6] individual elements or parts of a course [7] send/ give their work to the teacher

D Talking about education: common questions

What's the **school-leaving age**? It's 18 in a lot of countries.
At what age does **compulsory** education begin? [which you must do, by law]

Exercises

14.1 Fill the gaps in this life story of a British woman.

Amy first went to her local [1] *primary* school at the age of five. The year before that she attended a [2] ..... , but her parents didn't send her to a [3] ..... when she was very small. When Amy was ready to go on to secondary school, she passed a special exam and so gained [4] ..... to her local [5] ..... school. Her friends didn't do that exam. Like most children, they went to a [6] ..... school. Only a few children from very rich families go to famous [7] ..... schools and Amy only knew one girl from her class at primary school who did. At the age of 16, Amy went on to [8] ..... , where she is currently studying English, History and Maths. Her ambition is to go on to [9] ..... and become a teacher.

14.2 Rewrite the words in bold in this conversation using words from B opposite.

ALMUT: I've got one more exam tomorrow. I hope I **get the minimum grade** *pass* . I'm worried.

JOE: Really? What makes you think you won't **get a high grade**?

ALMUT: Well, I've **missed** a couple of classes this term.

JOE: Hm. If you **get below the minimum grade**, are you allowed to **take** the exam **again**?

ALMUT: Yes, but I don't want to. Next year I want to go to university, not **sit** my **university entrance exams** again!

14.3 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

sixth-form college

1 In the UK, students between 16 and 18 can go to a ~~nursery school~~.
2 The school-ending age is 18 in many countries.
3 I'm glad you succeeded at your exam.
4 She has to sit on a Biology exam next week.
5 Is school compulsive till 18 in your country?
6 Do we have to admit our work to the teacher by Friday?
7 I've made a lot of progresses in my English recently.
8 Thanks to the LMS, teachers can mentor their students' activities.

14.4 What do we call ...?

1 learning that mixes classes and online work? *blended learning*
2 schools which require students to take an exam to gain admission? .....
3 private schools where parents pay fees? .....
4 learning you can do at home, without going to class? .....

14.5 Over to you

Make a chart in English for the education system in your country. Is it the same as the UK or are there differences? Compare with someone else if possible.

15 Higher education

A University studies

Students who attend university in the UK start with **undergraduate studies**, which are usually the studies towards a **bachelor's degree** [a first degree at university]. They follow a **programme** of different **modules** [parts of the university course]. They usually have to complete a certain number of **credits** each year. For example, if the students need 180 credits, they might take two modules of 60 credits each, and their **dissertation** [long piece of writing] might be worth another 60 credits. When they have **graduated** [completed their bachelor's degree], students become **graduates**.

If they want to continue their university education, students can begin **postgraduate studies**. The first stage of this would be a **master's degree**, and aft er that they can do a **PhD** (doctor of philosophy) [the highest university degree]. Postgraduate studies require students to specialise in a particular **field**, and they often do **research**. They usually have to write another dissertation (for a master's degree) or a **thesis** (for a PhD).

B People, places, and types of classes



A university campus



A lecture theatre



A tutorial

If you visit a **university campus**, you'll see a **lecture theatre** (or a lecture hall). During **lectures,** students listen to a **lecturer** and take notes. Some modules have **seminars** where smaller groups discuss the subject in detail. The **academic staff** [people who teach] might also include **tutors**, who teach students individually or in small groups, in sessions called **tutorials**. Many students live **on campus** in **halls of residence** (or **halls**).

Language help

An **undergraduate (student)** or **undergrad** is a student studying for their bachelor's degree.

A **postgraduate (student)** or **postgrad** is a student studying for their master's or a PhD.

Notice that **postgraduate** and **undergraduate** can be used as nouns or adjectives.

C Student services



Admissions[1]

To apply for one of our postgraduate programmes, check the **entry requirements**[2] on the programme page. Then click here to **submit your application**.



Funding[3]

Tuition fees[4] should be paid at the beginning of the academic year. To apply for a **student loan**[5] or a **scholarship**[6] click here.



Student Union

Visit our **student union**[7] page to find out more about **student societies** and clubs.

1 a university department that deals with new applications and new students
2 qualifications that are needed to enter a programme
3 money that students can receive
4 money that students have to pay for their course
5 money that a student borrows to pay for their course
6 money that is given to a student to pay for a course (usually for students who are doing well at school)
7 an organization that deals with student issues and student life on campus, and a place where students can meet

Exercises

15.1 What do we call …?

1 A first degree at college or university *bachelor's degree*
2 The lower level of postgraduate degree .....
3 The highest university degree .....
4 A person who is studying for their first degree .....
5 A person who has completed their first degree .....
6 A person who is studying for a master's or PhD .....

15.2 Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

1 This undergraduate *credit / programme / field* lasts four years.
2 To complete the year students need 180 *lectures / credits / modules*. 60 of these are for the thesis.
3 After three years, you will *research / credit / graduate* with a bachelor's degree.
4 My master's *field / credit / dissertation* on modern English literature was 120 pages long.
5 Dr Lewis has been doing *research / thesis / field* into dolphin behaviour and has made a very important discovery.
6 Lucy is an expert in the *field / programme / research* of ancient history and has just completed her PhD on Greek art.

15.3 Fill the gaps with words from B opposite.

1 A *campus* is a place where the university buildings are located.
2 Student accommodation is called .....
3 Academic staff, such as professors, tutors and ....., have offices at the university.
4 ..... are meetings (one-to-one or in small groups) with a tutor.
5 Students listen to talks in a .....
6 Some ..... are attended by two hundred students.

15.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 There are two types of student ~~unions~~ *finance*: student loans and scholarships.
2 You must pay your entry requirements by 17th September.
3 A great way of meeting new people on campus is to join some of the student scholarships and clubs.
4 The admissions office helps current students with their problems and life on campus.
5 Before you submit your application, read the student loan thoroughly.

15.5

Over to you

Is the system of university studies similar in your country? Make a list of similarities and differences.

16 Work

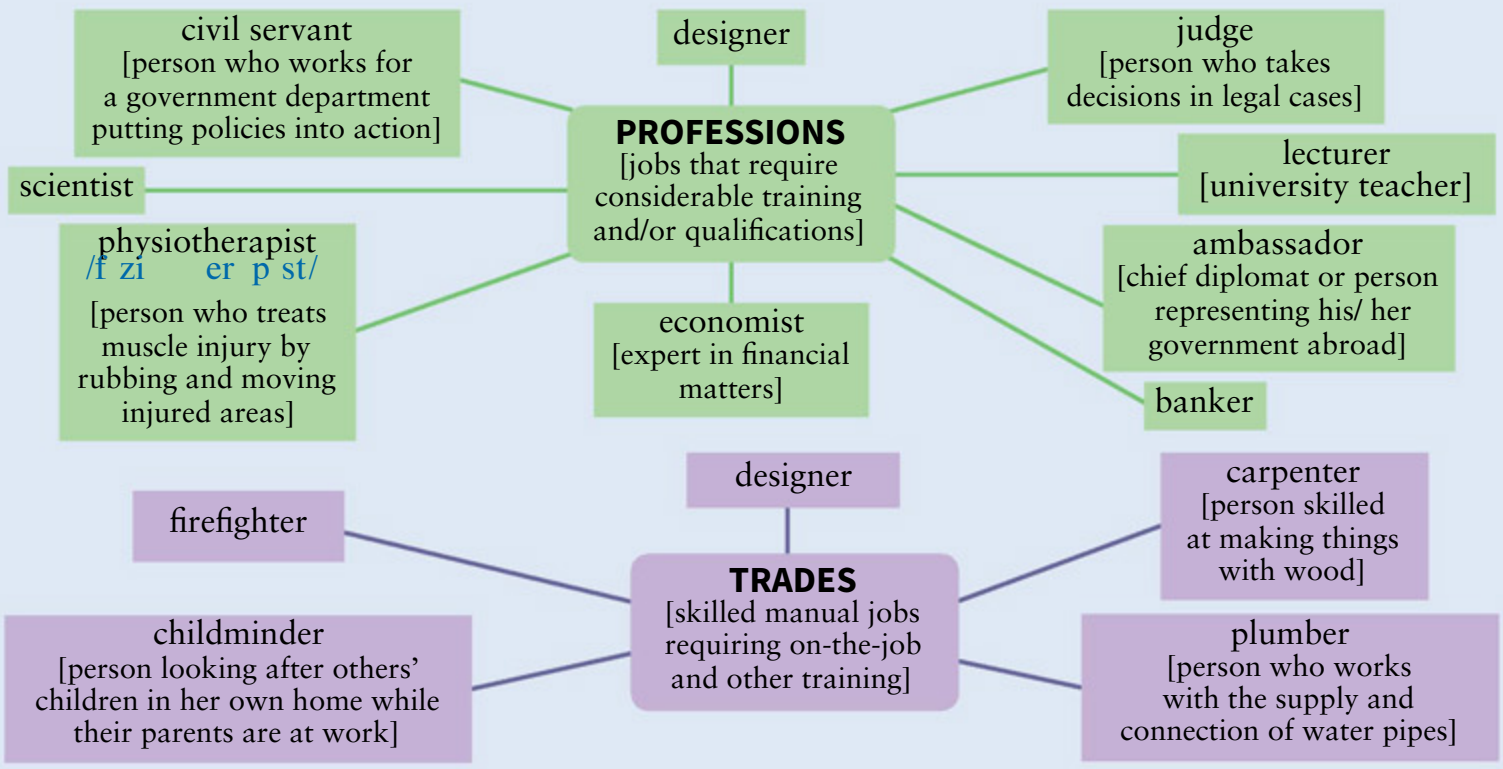
A Jobs in a workplace

director [member of the board of a company] **executive** / zekj t v/ [important person who makes big decisions] **administrator** [person who runs the office day-to-day] **skilled worker** [trained to do specific tasks, e.g. building a computer] **unskilled worker** [doing a job that needs no training] **receptionist** [visitors must check in with them] **public relations officer** [gives information about the company to the media] **union representative** [looks after the staff's interests] **researcher** [investigates and develops new products] **supervisor** [makes sure workers are doing their job properly]

Common mistakes

The best way of getting to **work** (NOT ~~job~~) depends on where you live.
Wish me luck in my new **job** (NOT ~~work~~).
Job refers to a particular role or position. *Jack's got a new **job** as a researcher.*
Work refers to activities that you do. *Jack's **work** is very demanding.*

B Trades and professions



C Collocations of words connected with work

It's not easy to **get**/**find work** round these parts. I've been **offered work** / **a job** in Paris.
What d'you **do for a living**? I'm **in publishing**/**banking**, etc.
It's hard to **make a living** as a freelance writer. [earn enough money to live comfortably]
She's not prepared to **take on that** job. [suggests 'having personal responsibility']

hours of work	to **do shiftwork** or to **work shifts** [nights one week, days the next week] to **be on flexi-time** [flexible working hours] to **work nine-to-five** [regular day work]
***not* working**	to **go**/**be on strike** [industrial dispute] to **get the sack** [thrown out of your job] to **be fired** (more formal than 'get the sack'; often used in direct speech: 'You're fired!') to **be made redundant** [thrown out, no longer needed] to **be laid off** (more informal than 'made redundant') to **be on** / **take maternity** (woman) or **paternity** (man) **leave** [before/after the birth of a baby] to **be on** / **take sick leave** [illness] to **take early retirement** [retire at 55]
other useful expressions	to **be a workaholic** [love work too much] to **be promoted** [get a higher position] to **apply for a job** [fill in forms, etc.]

Exercises

16.1 **Which of the job titles in A opposite would best describe the following?**

1 The person who represents the workers' interests in disputes with the management in a factory. *union representative*
2 A person who has a high position in a company and whose job it is to make important decisions. .....
3 An important person in a company who sits on the board. .....
4 A worker whose job requires no special training, for example, an office cleaner. .....
5 A person generally in charge of the day-to-day organisation of a company/department. .....
6 A person whose job it is to keep an eye on the day-to-day work of other workers. .....

16.2 **Choose job or work to complete these sentences.**

1 I'll pay for the plumbing *work* when it's finished.
2 I'd like to apply for a ..... in your office.
3 You should delegate more ..... to your personal assistant.
4 Let's stop for a coffee on our way home from ..... .
5 A ..... in a museum wouldn't be as tiring as one in a restaurant.

16.3 **Using the expressions in C opposite, say what you think has happened / is happening.**

1 I'm not working now; the baby's due in three weeks. *She's on maternity leave.*
2 He's enjoying life on a pension, although he's only 58. .....
3 One week it's six-to-two, the next it's nights. .....
4 They've made her General Manager as from next month! .....
5 I was late so often, I lost my job. .....
6 I get in at nine o'clock and go home at five. .....
7 Your trouble is you are obsessed with work! .....

16.4 **Which jobs do these people have? Would you call the following a *trade*, a *profession* or an *unskilled job*?**


1 *physiotherapist -profession*


2 .....


3 .....


4 .....


5 .....


6 .....

16.5 **Fill in the collocations.**

I'd love to [1] *get/ have* a job in journalism, but it's not easy without qualifications. Since I have to earn a [2] ..... somehow, I'll have to get [3] ..... wherever I can find it. I've been [4] ..... some part-time work editing a new book, but I'm not sure I want to [5] ..... it ..... .

16.6 **Over to you**

Think of five people you know who work for a living. Can you name their jobs in English? If you can't, look them up in a good bilingual dictionary.

17 Business

A Starting a business

Ryan Archer had an idea for a business. He had a computer but it was never just right for all his personal needs, so he went to his bank manager and **put forward**[1] a **business plan**[2] to sell **custom- built**[3] computers on the Internet. He **launched**[4] his business a year later, offering an individual service making desktop and laptop computers, and two years later **rolled out**[5] an **expanded**[6] range, including tablets and other hand- held devices. His **firm**[7] now **manufactures**[8] around 200 machines a year and delivers to 26 countries around the world.

Ryan said, 'It's all about personal service and **customer care**[9]. This was our **priority**[10] from the start. We didn't really do any proper **market research** [11] and we weren't sure if such machines would sell, especially during a **recession**[12]. But I felt there were enough **potential**[13] customers to make it worth the **risk**[14]. I was right. Soon, designers, scientists, academics and other professional people were requesting personalised machines and our **order books**[15] were full.' **Going forward**[16], Archer plans to expand the business further, and a new range of machines will **launch** next year.



[1] offered for people to consider [2] a plan of how the business will operate [3] specially made for a particular person or thing [4] started, perhaps with a special event to mark the beginning [5] make a new product available for the first time [6] made bigger [7] company [8] produces goods in large numbers, usually in a factory [9] looking aft er the customer's needs [10] something very important which must be dealt with first [11] (uncountable) finding out beforehand what people want or need [12] period of low economic activity and bad conditions for business [13] possible when the conditions are right [14] possibility of something bad happening [15] the list of orders waiting to be completed [16] going into the future

Language help

In business English, some verbs which usually need an object can often be used without an object or with the real object acting as the subject.

with object	real object as subject
*We **sold** 200 instruments last year.*	*We didn't know if the instruments would **sell**.*
*They are **launching** a new range.*	*The new range **launches** next year.*
*They are **rolling out** a new range.*	*The new range will **roll out** next year.*

B Common business English phrases and collocations

FACT SHEET

The **CEO**[1] of a big **corporation**[2] gave us these tips for success in business:

- **Do business** in the markets you know best before trying to enter new ones.
- It may be difficult to **access new markets**[3]. **Build contacts**; that's the secret.
- You may not **make a profit** immediately. Be patient.
- You will probably face **stiff competition**[4], so make sure your product is the best.
- **Get** regular **feedback** [5] from your employees and customers. They know best.

[1] Chief Executive Officer [2] a large company or group of companies that is controlled together as a single organisation [3] reach and do business with new groups of customers or parts of the world where something might be sold [4] (uncountable) other companies trying hard to be more successful than you [5] (uncountable) information/opinions about what people think of a product or service

Common mistakes

Business can be countable or uncountable.

*We hope to do more **business** in Asia next year.* (uncountable = the activity. NOT ~~We hope to do more businesses~~...)

*New **businesses** are launched on the Internet every day.* (countable = enterprises/companies)

Exercises

17.1 **Fill the gaps in the questions with words from A opposite, then complete the answers.**

1 What did Ryan Archer put *forward* to his bank manager? He presented a .....
.....
2 What is special about the computers his ..... makes? They are ..... -
.....
3 When did he ..... his business? A ....
4 What did he ..... out two years later? An .... of computers.
5 How many computers does his firm ..... now? About ..... a ..... .
6 What was Ryan Archer's ..... from the start? Personal service and .....
.....
7 Why didn't he do any ..... research? He felt there were enough ..... customers.
8 Why was he not sure if the machines would ..... ? There was a ..... at the time.
9 Was it all worth the ..... ? Yes. His firm's .... were soon full.
10 ..... forward, what are his plans? He's planning a new range of computers, which will
..... next year.

If possible, practise asking and answering the questions with someone else.

17.2 **Rewrite the words in bold using words and phrases from A and B opposite.**

1 The new service will **be available for the first time** over the whole country next year. *roll out*
2 The business didn't make **money** in its first year.
3 There are a lot of **possible** customers for this product.
4 Their **list of orders waiting to be completed** was full last month.
5 It is sometimes difficult to **get into** new markets if you don't have contacts.
6 We should pay attention to the **opinions and reactions** our clients post on our website.
7 Customer care is a **most important issue** for our company.
8 We need to **make our business bigger** in Latin America.
9 It's important to **create relationships with local people** before you enter a new country.

17.3 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

CEO
1 She's the ~~COE~~ of a huge corporation.
2 The new range of products will launch itself next month. We hope it will be sold!
3 The firm specialises in customer-built laptops for business travellers.
4 Bringing forward, we expect to increase our sales in Japan and China.
5 It's important to get a feedback from our clients.
6 We're facing competitions from American firms.
7 We hope to do more businesses in North Africa in the future.

17.4 **Match the words on the left with the words on the right to make typical collocations. Then write a sentence using each one.**

~~customer~~ order market custom stiff	built competition research ~~care~~ books

EXAMPLE *Customer care should be a priority in any kind of business.*

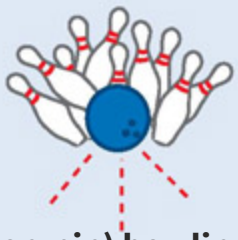
17.5 **Over to you**

If you could start a business, what would it be? What would you need to do to make it a success? Write a paragraph outlining your ideas. Use words and phrases from this unit.

18 Sport

A Some sports whose names you may not know


hang-gliding


(ten-pin) bowling


fencing


showjumping

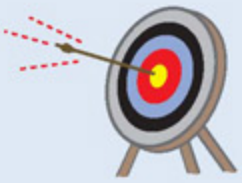

windsurfing


snowboarding


scuba diving


snooker/pool/billiards /ˈbɪljədz/

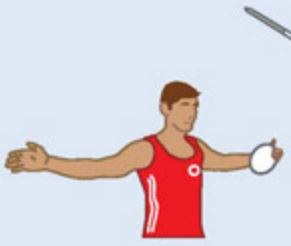

motor racing

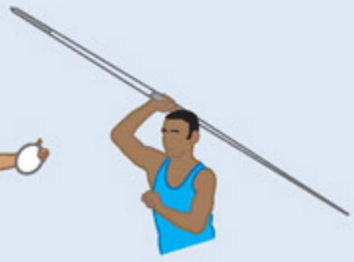

archery

B Equipment – what you hold in your hand

golf – **club** squash/tennis/badminton – **racket** darts – **dart** archery – **bow**
cricket / table tennis / baseball – **bat** ice hockey / field hockey – **stick**
snooker/pool/billiards – **cue** canoeing – **paddle** rowing – **oar** fishing – **rod**/**line**

C Athletics


discus (throw)


javelin /ˈjɒ vlɪn/


high jump


long jump


gymnastics


pole vault

She's a great **sprinter**. [fast over short distances]
He's a great **long-distance** runner. (e.g. 5,000 metres) He's doing a **marathon** next month.

D Competition in sport

She **set a** new Olympic **record** last year. He **holds the record** for the 100 metres breaststroke.
England **qualified** for the World Cup but **got knocked out** in the third **round**. [achieved the necessary standard but lost at the third stage and were then excluded from the competition]
Our team **made it to / reached the semi-final** but then we were beaten. [won every stage of the competition except the last but one, and so did not enter the final match/event]
Most sports are very **competitive** these days. [involve a strong desire to win and be better than other people]
She felt proud as she held the **trophy** in her hands. [cup or other object that shows she has won]
Players who disagree with the **referee** set a bad example to the **spectators** and to their fans. [people who are present at a sporting event to watch it]

E People who do particular sports

-er can be used for many sports, e.g. *footballer, swimmer*, etc. **Player** is often necessary, e.g. *tennis player, squash player*. Some names must be learnt separately, e.g. *canoeist*, *mountaineer, jockey, archer* (NOT ~~archerer~~), *gymnast*.

Common mistakes

In British English, the noun *sport* is used in the plural when it describes another noun (e.g. *equipment, facilities, club*). *The shop sells **sports** equipment*. (NOT ~~sport equipment~~) However, you will hear the singular *sport* used before another noun in American English.

Exercises

18.1 Which of the sports opposite are these people probably talking about?

1 The ball doesn't roll in a straight line on the ground. You have to aim away from the centre of the pins. *(ten-pin) bowling*
2 Provided it's not too windy at the top of the hill, there's no problem. .....
3 It is incredibly noisy, fast and dangerous, but it's really exciting to watch. .....
4 The horse has to get over a series of jumps without knocking the posts off. .....
5 It's all a matter of balance. But sometimes you can't help falling in the water. .....
6 You need a good eye and concentration, especially to hit the centre of the board. .....
7 The different ball colours are worth different numbers of points. .....
8 It's a fantastic feeling when the snow flies up into the air around you. .....

18.2 Name a piece of equipment necessary to do these sports apart from the item given.

1 golf: ball, *club*.....
2 archery: arrow, ...
3 tennis: ball, ...
4 field hockey: ball, ...
5 baseball: ball, ...
6 darts: dartboard, ...
7 canoeing: canoe, ...
8 snooker: balls, ...
9 rowing: boat, ...

18.3 Fill the gaps with suitable words.

1 She's a *long-distance* ..... runner. She won a medal last year for the 1,500 metres. She's won a lot of ..... in the last five years and has them all in a glass cabinet at her house.
2 Were many new records ..... at the last Olympics?
3 He's doing a ..... next week - running 42 kilometres! That's 26 miles!
4 Who ..... the world record for the 1,000 metres these days? Is it a Russian?
5 His national team failed to ..... for the World Cup so he's supporting Brazil instead.
6 Last year, our team ..... the final for the first time in 10 years but we lost. (*two answers*)
7 My team got ..... in the second ..... of the competition. We were very disappointed it happened at such an early stage.
8 All Olympic sports are highly ..... ; everyone has one ambition - to win gold.
9 Thousands of ..... protested loudly at the decision of the ..... to give their team captain a red card.
10 The world's best ..... can run 100 metres in less than 10 seconds.

18.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one mistake.

1 She was a champion ~~gymnastic~~ *gymnast* when she was a teenager.
2 Are you a good tenniser? We're trying to get a local team together.
3 My brother is an expert canoist. He's won medals.
4 My father is a good golfist. He's also an expert mountainer.
5 Is there a shop near here that sells sport equipment? I need a fishing rode.
6 I'd love to be a good archerer, but my eyesight isn't very good.
7 Are you a sprinter or a long-distant runner?
8 My favourite Olympic sports are fence and the height jump.

18.5 Which sport ...?

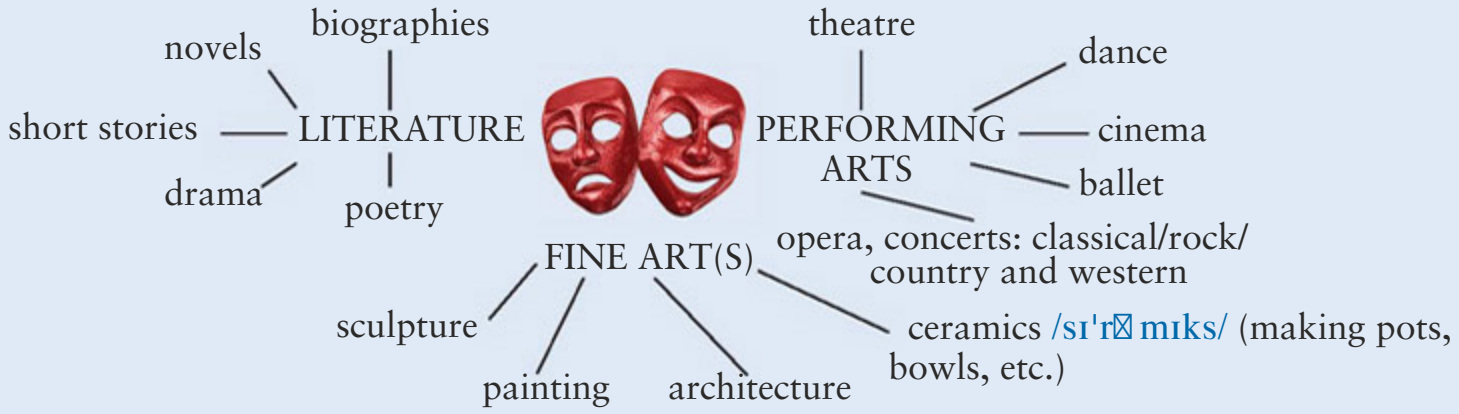
1 covers a long distance in one jump? *long jump*
2 throws a heavy disc a long way?
3 throws a pole with a sharp point?

18.6 Over to you

Make a list of (a) sports you have done and (b) sports you would like to do. Then list the equipment you needed / would need for each one. Write sentences about what you liked or disliked about sports you have tried, using vocabulary from this unit.

19 Art and literature

A Art and the arts



The arts (plural) covers everything in the diagram above. **Art** (singular, uncountable) usually means **fine art**, but can also refer to technique and creativity.
Have you read the **arts page** in the paper today? [that part of the newspaper that deals with all the things in the diagram] She's a great **art lover**. [loves painting and sculpture] Shakespeare was skilled in **the art** of poetry. [creative ability] Ask Sara to help you decorate your room - she's very **artistic**. [shows skill and imagination in creating things]
A **work of art** (plural = works of art) is an object made by a skilled artist - typically a painting, drawing or statue.
The phrase **arts and crafts** is used to refer to the skills of making objects such as decorations, jewellery and furniture by hand.

B Types of art and artists





This is a **sculptor** – he's **creating a statue** – his type of art is called **sculpture.**
This is a **potter** – she's **throwing a pot** – her type of art is called **pottery.**
Henry is an **architect** – he's **designing a building** – his type of art is called **architecture**.
An **abstract** painting involves shapes and colours rather than **images** of real people or things. A **portrait** is a painting of a person. A **landscape** is a painting of a scene in the countryside. A **still life** is a painting of a set of objects that do not move, usually fruit or flowers. An **original** painting is one produced by the painter him/herself rather than a copy or **reproduction**.

C Literature

Lisa O'Donnell is one of the country's most popular **novelists**[1]. She has written a **series**[2] of romantic novels all with a historical **setting**[3]. These have all been **bestsellers**[4] although the **critics**[5] complain that her **plots**[6] are predictable and her **characters**[7] are not very realistic. Her cousin, Lucy Smith, is a more **literary**[8] writer and her books tend to get better **reviews**[9] although they do not sell so well. Both writers have a novel which will be ready for **publication**[10] later this year; they will also be available to download as **ebooks**[11]. We have received advance **copies** of both novels and it is interesting to compare the opening **passage**[12] from Smith's latest book with an **extract**[13] from the first chapter of O'Donnell's.

[1] people who write long stories about imaginary people and events (remember a novel is typically at least 150 pages long; anything shorter is a **short story**) [2] set of books featuring the same characters [3] background for a story or film [4] very popular books that sell in large numbers [5] people whose job it is to give their opinion of something, typically books, films or music [6] stories [7] people in a book or film [8] serious rather than popular [9] what the critics write [10] making something available in a printed form [11] electronic book [12] short piece of text [13] part of a book chosen to be used in an article or for discussion

Exercises

19.1 Which branch of the arts do you think these people are talking about?

1 He's created some beautiful vases but I'm not so keen on his other pieces.
pottery

2 It doesn't have to rhyme to be good.
.....

3 Oils to me don't have the delicacy of watercolours.
.....

4 Her design for the new city hall won an award.
.....

5 The first chapter was boring but it got better later.
.....

19.2 What type of painting is each of these?



1 *portrait*



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....

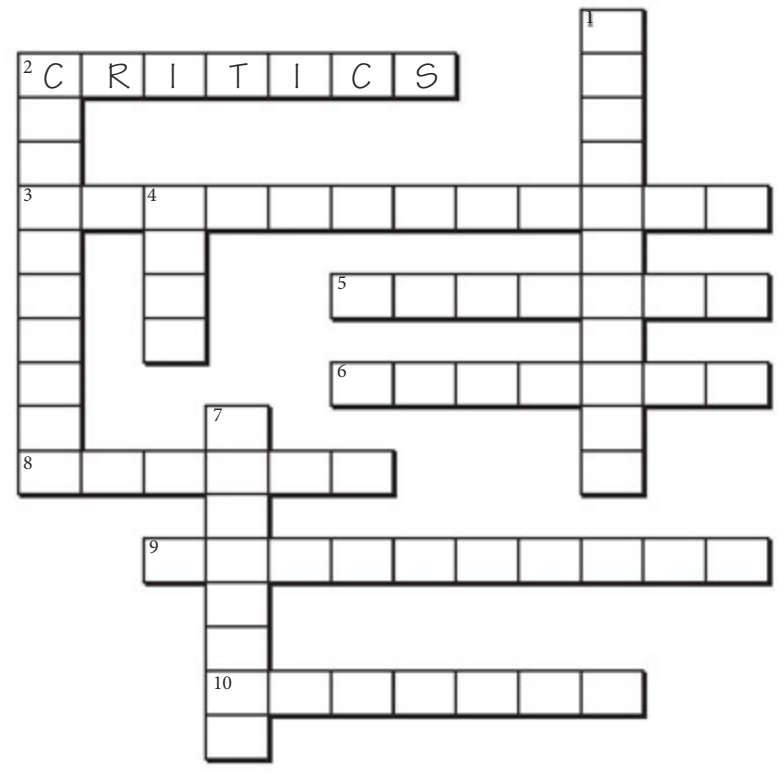
19.3 Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

1 A *sculpture* / *sculptor* is someone who makes statues.
2 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of *art / the art* of portrait painting.
3 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of *art / arts* and *craft / crafts*.
4 Which would you rather be good at - *art / the art* or *music / the music*?
5 I saw some interesting abstract *works of art / work of arts* at the City Gallery.

19.4 Find the missing words to complete the crossword.

Across

2 The ..... have generally been very positive about Kelly's latest novel.
3 Do you like this picture? It's only a ....., I could never afford an original.
5 The author began his talk by reading a short ..... from his latest book.
6 I usually prefer to read books with a modern ..... rather than ones about some unfamiliar period.
8 I've loved all the books in this detective ....., I hope they'll publish another one soon.
9 Max is, of course, hoping that his first novel will become a .....
10 Have you read any ..... of the novel we've got to read for our English class?



Down

1 Maria's first novel is due for ..... this summer.
2 You know from the first page that the two main ..... in the novel are going to fall in love with each other.
4 The novel has a very interesting ..... with some unexpected twists in it.
7 Leo's short story is going to be published in the country's leading ..... magazine.

20 Theatre and cinema

A At the theatre



We went to see a new **production** of *Hamlet* last night. The **sets**[1] were incredibly realistic and the **costumes**[2] were wonderful. It was a good **cast**[3] and I thought the **direction**[4] was excellent. Toby Cartwright **gave** a marvellous **performance**[5]. It **got rave reviews**[6] in the papers today.

[1] scenery, buildings, furniture on the stage or in a studio [2] clothes the actors wear on stage [3] all the actors in the performance [4] the way the director had organised the performance [5]+[6] note these typical collocations [6] got very enthusiastic comments

Dance usually refers to modern artistic dance forms; **ballet** /'bɑ leɪ/ usually has a more traditional feel, unless we say **modern ballet**. A **comedian** is a person who entertains people by telling jokes. They may have a **show** of their own or they may feature in a show with lots of different **entertainers**. [people whose job it is to entertain others] The people who watch a show are the **audience**. **Viewer** is only used about someone watching a TV programme.

Language help

When we refer to a performing art in general, we can leave out the definite article, e.g. *Are you interested in (the)* ***cinema/ballet/opera/theatre****?* But: *Would you like to come to the* ***cinema/ballet/opera/theatre*** *with us next week?* [particular performance]

B At the cinema

ANNA: Our local cinema's showing *Spectre* again next week. Do you fancy going to see it?
BETH: Yes, that'd be great. I love the opening **scene**[1] at the carnival in Mexico City. The James Bond films **are** always **set**[2] in great locations.
ANNA: Yes, and I think the film really **captures**[3] the human side of James Bond.
BETH: That's right. A lot of work went into the **script**[4] for this, and the **dialogue**[5]'s particularly good, I think.
ANNA: Do you know who the **director**[6] was?
BETH: Sam Mendes, I think. He didn't write the **screenplay**[7], though. I'm not sure who wrote that. The **score**[8] is by Thomas Newman. He also wrote the music for *Skyfall*.

[1] part of a play or film where the action happens in one place [2] take place [3] represents very accurately [4] the words of a play or film [5] conversation written for a book, play or film [6] person in charge of making a play or film [7] text for a film including instructions for actors and camera operators [8] music for a film

C Other words connected with events in the arts

The Opera Society are doing a **performance** of *Don Giovanni*.
The National Theatre has a very large and versatile **stage**. [area above ground level where actors perform]
What's on at the cinema/theatre, etc. next week? (note the two prepositions)
Sometimes they use our school hall as a **venue** for concerts - it's a little small but is otherwise quite good.
There was an actor on TV last night **promoting** an interesting new play he's **appearing** in at The Globe.
[providing publicity for; noun = promotion][acting; noun = appearance]

Exercises

20.1 **Fill the gaps with the correct form of the word in brackets.**

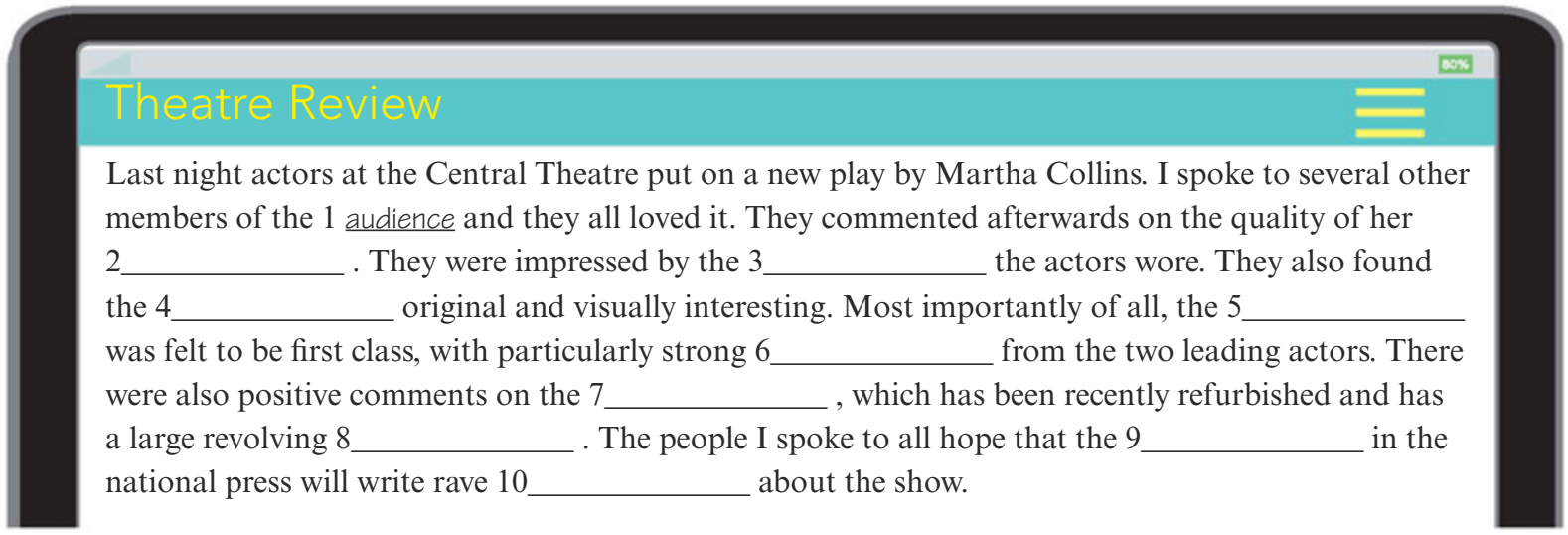
1 I thought all the cast gave an excellent *performance* in the play last night. (perform)
2 I don't find that ..... particularly funny. (comedy)
3 It's unusual for a film to have two ..... but this one did. (direct)
4 Paolo Tomassi is one of the best ..... I've seen for a long time. (entertain)
5 It was one of the best ..... of a Shakespeare play I've ever seen. (produce)
6 My favourite actor makes only a brief ..... in the film. (appear)

20.2 **Definite article or not? Fill the gap with *the* if necessary.**

1 The government doesn't give enough money to — ballet.
2 She's got a diploma in ..... dance from the Performing Arts Academy.
3 I've got some tickets for ..... opera. Interested?
4 Shall we go to ..... cinema this evening? There are several good things on.
5 I much prefer ..... theatre to ..... ballet, don't you?

20.3 **Choose the correct word from the box to fill each gap in this online review. There are some extra words in the box which you do not need.**

~~audience~~	cast	costumes	critics	entertainers	performances	productions
reviews	scenes	screenplay	script	sets	stage	venue	words



Theatre Review

Last night actors at the Central Theatre put on a new play by Martha Collins. I spoke to several other members of the 1 *audience* and they all loved it. They commented afterwards on the quality of her 2_____ . They were impressed by the 3_____ the actors wore. They also found the 4_____ original and visually interesting. Most importantly of all, the 5_____ was felt to be first class, with particularly strong 6_____ from the two leading actors. There were also positive comments on the 7_____ , which has been recently refurbished and has a large revolving 8_____ . The people I spoke to all hope that the 9_____ in the national press will write rave 10_____ about the show.

20.4 **Ask *questions* for which these remarks would be suitable answers.**

1 Yes, it got rave reviews. *Was the play a success?*
2 No, I'm not really a concert-goer, but thanks anyway.
3 Oh, romantic comedies, I think.
4 The cast were all good, but the direction was weak.
5 A new Hungarian film; fancy going to see it?

20.5 **Over to you**

Choose a film and answer these questions about it.

- Who do you think gives the best performance in it?
- Who's the director?
- Where was it set?
- What is your favourite scene in it?
- What's the score like?
- Are there any particularly memorable lines in the dialogue?

21 Music

A Downloading and managing your music

Downloading music as **MP3**[1] files is easy.

- You can download a whole **album** or individual **tracks**[2] onto your phone or computer.
- You can save your favourite albums and tracks in **playlists** so you can find them easily.
- You can **sync**[3] (or, more formal, **synchronise**) the music files on your computer with your phone.
- You can also **stream**[4] music from the Internet or from your computer to other rooms in your home if you have the right equipment.

[1] a popular type of audio file - you can listen to the files on a computer or mobile device [2] one song or piece of music from an album [3] have exactly the same files and data on more than one device [4] play music in real time from one source to another

B A typical rock band

She's **lead singer** in a rock band. One of her brothers plays **lead guitar** and her other brother is a **keyboard player**, so it's a real family band.

What would you rather play in a band, drums or bass? I could never be a **drummer** but I think I could become a fairly good **bass guitarist**.



C Types of music



My family all have different **tastes** in music. My sister Niki loves **classical** music, my uncle Ben's a **folk** fan and my father loves **jazz**. I like **R&B**[1] and **hip-hop**[2]. I even compose a bit of **rap**[3] myself! My older brother **is into**[4] The Beatles and other **60s music**[5]. My mother loves film **soundtracks**[6] but I just find them uninteresting. One type of music I can't stand is the **canned music**[7] you get in supermarkets and airports – it drives me crazy!

[1] Rhythm and Blues, originally a black American form of blues music with a strong rhythm
[2] a style of popular music where the words are spoken rather than sung [3] the words spoken in hip-hop music (can also be a verb) [4] interested in and enthusiastic about [5] music from the 1960s
[6] music from a film or TV show [7] artificial or recorded music played in the background

D Collocations for musical activities

She plays the guitar but she doesn't **read music**. She **plays by ear**. She's got **a good ear***. She can **pick out*** a **tune** on almost any instrument. She's a very **talented musician**.

You can **make music** in lots of ways. You don't need to be a **trained musician** to enjoy music to the full.

* informal

Common mistakes

We say: *classical* music. (NOT ~~classic~~) *She loves **classical** music.* (NOT ~~classic music~~) *Music* is uncountable. *They played fantastic **music** for an hour.* (NOT ~~fantastic musics~~)

Exercises

21.1 Fill the gaps in the conversation.

HENRY: I've been listening to some songs from the new *album* by the Hoods. It's great. I downloaded them to my ..... on my phone, so I've got them in both places. I just got six ..... , not the whole thing.

ANNA: Oh, right. I download music files but then forget to ..... them with my phone, so I don't have them when I travel! But I can ..... them from the computer in my study to the audio system in the living room, so I do get to listen to them. I've made some good ..... with my favourite tracks.

21.2 In a typical rock band …

1 … who usually sings the songs? *the lead singer*
2 … who keeps the rhythm using two sticks? .....
3 … who plays the lowest musical notes? .....
4 … who plays an electric piano or organ? .....
5 … who plays the highest notes on the guitar? .....

21.3 Read the comments and then answer the questions.

Ross 'I must be the only person who actually likes the music in supermarkets.'

Emma 'I love the old original tracks by groups like The Beatles and the Rolling Stones.'

James 'I love the film and I'm going to buy the music from it. I often buy film music.'

Lauren 'I listen to the traditional songs of my country and try to learn them.'

Natalie 'I just love the way they can speak the words so fast - it's so clever.'

Liam 'I've always loved the blues and I like music with a strong rhythm.'

1 Who likes soundtracks? *James*
2 Who likes hip-hop? .....
3 Who likes 60s music? .....
4 Who is a folk music fan? .....
5 Who likes R&B? .....
6 Who likes canned music? .....

21.4 Complete the missing words in this advertisement. You are sometimes given the first letter(s).

HELP WANTED



Do you have a good *ear*_____ for music? Do you play a musical instrument _____ ear? Can you p_____ out a tune on an instrument you've never played before? We are looking for volunteers to take part in an experiment to investigate people's natural musical abilities. You don't need to be a tr_____ musician and you don't need to be able to r_____ music. If you just _____ music at home or with friends for fun, whatever kinds of m_____ you are i_____, whether it's cl_____ music, j_____, pop, we want to hear from you. We believe there are many ta_____ musicians out there and we want to learn more about how you do it.

CALL 01255 7561447

21.5 Over to you

Write answers that are true for you.

1 Can you remember the name of the first album you ever bought? Who was it by?
2 How often do you download tracks or whole albums? Which do you prefer to do?
3 Which kinds of music mentioned on the opposite page do you particularly like/dislike?
4 Can you play any musical instruments and how well do you play them?
5 What instrument and what kind of music would you like to be able to play well and why?

22 Food

A Talking about flavours and tastes - adjectives and some opposites (≠)

hot, **spicy** (e.g. curry) ≠ **mild** **bland** [very little flavour; rather negative]
salty [a lot of salt] **sugary** [a lot of sugar] **sickly** [too much sugar]
savoury /ˈseɪvəri/ [pleasant, slightly salty or with herbs]
sour [sharp, often unpleasant taste, like a lemon, and not sweet]
bitter [with an unpleasantly sharp taste] **tasty** [has a good taste/flavour] ≠ **tasteless** [no flavour at all]
moreish [having a pleasant taste, so you want to eat more]

I love **spicy** food, especially curries - the **hotter** the better! My sister prefers **mild** curries.
Those cakes are too **sugary** for me. They have a **sickly** taste.
They had some delicious **savoury** snacks at the party. They were very **moreish**.
The breakfast buffet was very poor quality: the coffee tasted **bitter** and the fruit juice was **sour**.
The food on the plane was **bland** and **tasteless** - it was like eating cardboard!

B Appearance, presentation and quality of food

This meat is **overcooked**/**overdone** / **undercooked**/**underdone**.
I'm afraid this mango is a bit **unripe**. They're not really **in season** at the moment. [not ready to eat; *opp* = ripe] [being produced and ready and available]
This butter **has gone off**. I think we should throw it out. [not good to eat because it is too old]
I don't feel like anything **heavy**. I just want something **light**; a salad would be fine.
British cooking can be very **stodgy**. /ˈstɒdʒi/ [heavy, hard to digest]
Zoe will only buy **organic** fruit and vegetables. [grown without artificial chemicals]
We should try to have **a balanced diet**, without too much or too little of any particular thing.
A diet of **junk food** can cause long-term health problems. [food that is unhealthy but easy and quick to eat] **Processed** food in general is not good for you. [that has been treated with chemicals to preserve it or give it extra colour or taste]

C Eating out



At most good restaurants, you usually have to **book a table / make a reservation** beforehand. If something happens, or you are ill, you may need to **cancel the booking/reservation**. In the UK a meal in a restaurant is typically three courses: a **starter**[1], a main course, then a dessert. You can often order **side dishes**[2]. Some restaurants may have a **set menu** [a selection of dishes at a fixed price], or you can order individual dishes (called ordering **à-la-carte**). Restaurants often have **specials**[3] advertised on a board. They often cater for vegetarians, **non-meat-eaters**[4] and **vegans**[5].

[1] light snack / appetiser [2] a smaller dish alongside the main course (e.g. an extra vegetable)
[3] dishes only available on that day [4] people who don't eat meat but who are not vegetarians
[5] people who don't eat or use any animal products, such as meat, fish, eggs, cheese or leather

D Eating at home

HOST:[1] Right, there's more soup. Who wants **seconds**[2]?
GUEST: Oh, yes, please. It was absolutely delicious.
HOST: There's bread here. Just **help yourself**[3].
GUEST: Thanks.
HOST: Be sure to keep a bit of room for some **pudding**[4]. Can I **re-fill** your glass?
GUEST: Ah, yes, thank you.
HOST: **Say when**.
GUEST: **When!** That's fine. Thanks.

[1] the person who has invited the guests
[2] a second serving of something
[3] serve yourself
[4] desserts are often called **pudding** (uncountable), **a sweet** (countable) or **afters** (plural) at home

Exercises

22.1 **Which taste and flavour words opposite could you use to describe the following?**

1 a strong Indian curry *spicy / hot*
2 a pizza with cheese and herbs
3 sea water
4 an unripe apple
5 a cup of tea with five spoonfuls of sugar
6 extremely strong black coffee with no sugar

22.2 **Using words from B opposite, what could you say to the person/people with you in a restaurant if …**

1 you had ordered a mild curry but got the opposite? *This curry is too hot / too spicy for me.*
2 the fish you ordered had obviously been cooked too much / too long?
3 you ordered melon and it was very hard?
4 your dish seemed to have no flavours at all?
5 there was too much salt in your soup?
6 someone at your table recommended a big steak but you just wanted a salad?
7 the dish you ordered was very heavy and difficult to digest?
8 a piece of chicken you ordered had not been cooked enough?
9 you wonder if the vegetables have been grown without artificial chemicals?

22.3 **Read the comments and then complete the sentences with words and phrases from the opposite page.**

1 Chris: 'I had to call the waiter to bring me a knife and fork.' Chris needed *(some) cutlery* .....
2 Emma: 'If you want a dish not on the menu there's usually a blackboard with other dishes.' The restaurant usually has some .....
3 Oscar: 'The peanuts were free and I just couldn't stop eating them.' Oscar thought the peanuts were .....
4 Tina: 'I needed one because I didn't want to spill food on my new dress.' Tina needed .....
5 Jordi: 'I'm not a vegetarian; I just don't eat meat.' Jordi is a .....
6 Okas: 'I didn't like the set menu. I ordered individual dishes.' Okas ordered .....
7 Phoebe: 'It's a big student restaurant. You don't need to phone beforehand.' Phoebe said you don't need to ..... / ..... . (*two answers*)
8 Krishnan: 'With my main course I ordered an extra bowl of chips and some mushrooms.' Krishnan ordered a couple of .....
9 Emily: 'Everybody had colds so we phoned the restaurant and said we weren't coming.' Emily and her friends cancelled ..... / ..... . (*two answers*)
10 Hannah: 'I had some prawns before the main course.' Hannah had .....

22.4 **If you were the host at a dinner party, what could you say to your guests if …**

1 you offered them another serving of something? Who *wants seconds* ?
2 you wanted them to serve themselves? Please .....
3 you started to re-fill their glass? ..... , What could the guest say when you had poured enough? ..... !
4 you offered them something sweet after the main course? Would you like ..... / ..... / ..... / ..... ? (*four possible answers*)

22.5 **Over to you**

Write sentences that are true for you.

1 Which words from A and B opposite could you use to describe the food of your country or culture? Give some examples of dishes. Which fruit or vegetables are in season at different times of the year?

2 Describe your favourite dish, what is in it, how it is prepared, what flavours it has, etc.

3 How often do you eat junk food or processed food? Why? Do you have a balanced diet? In what ways?

23 Physical geography

A Geographical features

You have to be careful about the use of 'the' with geographical features.

	use with 'the'?	example
countries	no	France
countries which are in a plural form	yes	the USA, the Philippines
individual mountains	no	Mount Everest
mountains in the Bernese Oberland	yes	the Jungfrau /ˈjʊŋfraʊ/
mountain chains	yes	the Himalayas /hɪməˈleɪjəz/
islands	no	Sicily
groups of islands	yes	the West Indies
rivers	yes	the Volga
oceans	yes	the Pacific
seas	yes	the Mediterranean /medɪtəˈreɪniən/
gulfs, bays and straits	yes	the Gulf of Mexico, the Bay of Biscay, the Strait of Malacca
lakes	no	Lake Erie
currents	yes	the Gulf Stream

Language help

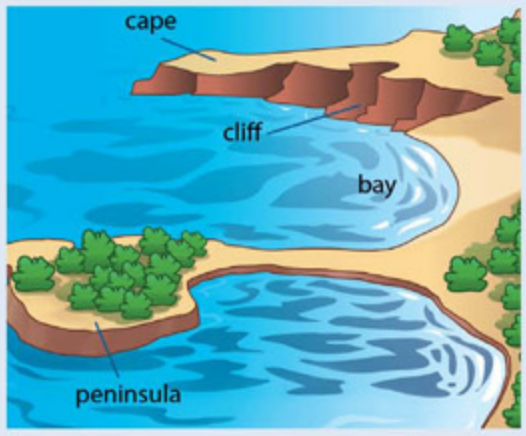
Although most countries do not take 'the', they do need the definite article when they are followed by a phrase limiting the meaning, e.g. *the Japan of today, the France we know from paintings, the South America of the past.*

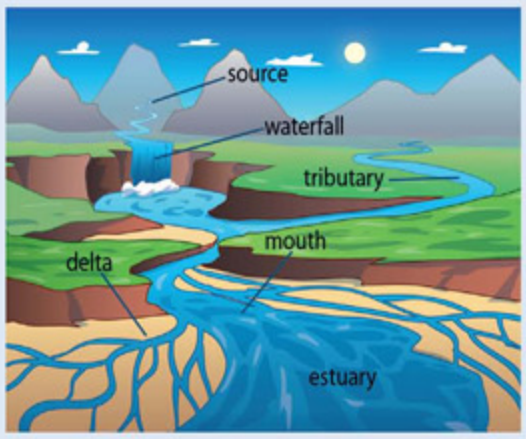
B Geographical features in Iceland

Iceland An island republic in the North Atlantic. The **landscape** consists largely of **barren plains**[1] and **mountains**, with large ice fields particularly in the south west. The island has **active volcanoes**[2] and is known for its **thermal**[3] springs and **geysers**[4]. With less than 1% of the land suitable for growing **crops**[5], the nation's **economy** is based on fishing, and fish products account for 80% of the exports. **Area**: 103,000 km^2. **Population**: 318,000.

Capital: Reykjavik.

[1] flat land where little grows [2] volcanoes that still erupt [3] hot [4] hole in the ground that sends out hot water and steam [5] food that is grown





C The sea, rivers and mountains

Where land meets sea: **coast**, **shore**, **beach**
Words connected with rivers: **valley**, **gorge** [valley with very steep sides], **stream** [small river]
Words connected with mountains: **foot**, **ridge**, **peak**, **summit**, **glacier** [river of ice]

Exercises

23.1 **Find words on the opposite page that match the definitions.**

1 a movement of water in a particular direction ..... *current* .....
2 the wide part of a river at its mouth .....
3 the top of a mountain (*two words*) .....
4 the place where a river starts .....
5 the land along the edge of a sea or lake .....
6 a narrow stretch of sea between two areas of land .....
7 a long piece of land sticking out into the sea or a lake .....
8 a long narrow high part of a mountain .....

23.2 **In the paragraph below all the instances of *the* have been omitted. Insert them wherever they are necessary.**

Brazil is *the* ∧ fifth largest country in world. In north, densely forested basin of River Amazon covers half country. In east, country is washed by Atlantic. Highest mountain chain in South America, Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, former capital. Today capital of Brazil is Brasilia.



23.3 **Can you answer the following general knowledge geography quiz?**

1 What is the highest mountain in Africa? ..... *Mount Kilimanjaro* .....
2 What is the longest river in Europe? .....
3 Where is the highest waterfall in the world? .....
4 Name another country, apart from Iceland, which has geysers and hot springs. .....
5 What is a delta and which famous river has one? .....
6 Where are the Straits of Gibraltar and the Cape of Good Hope? .....

23.4 **Find 17 more words for geographical features. Words go horizontally or vertically but not diagonally.**

P	W	A	T	E	R	F	A	L	L
G	L	A	C	I	E	R	P	C	S
O	I	V	G	E	Y	S	E	R	H
R	S	V	O	L	C	A	N	O	O
G	L	C	E	A	U	L	I	P	R
E	A	A	C	K	R	E	N	S	E
D	N	P	P	E	R	O	S	E	A
E	D	E	E	R	E	G	U	L	F
L	P	L	A	I	N	S	L	A	Y
T	M	E	K	O	T	B	A	Y	S
A	F	V	S	D	M	U	P	G	J

23.5 **Give two nouns from the opposite page to go with the adjectives below. Try not to repeat any of the nouns you choose.**

1 sandy ..... *beach* .....
2 steep ....
3 shallow ....
4 rocky ....
5 turbulent ....
6 dangerous ....

23.6 **Over to you**

Draw a map of a country or area that interests you. Write the English names of its main geographical features on it. Write a paragraph about the geography of the area.

24 Environmental problems

A The problems and their causes

A variety of environmental problems now affect our entire world. As **globalisation**[1] continues, local issues become international ones, so today there are few places in the world that do not suffer from environmental problems. Some of the major problems now affecting the world are **acid rain**[2], **air pollution**[3], **global warming**[4], **hazardous**[5] **waste, ozone depletion**[6], **smog**[7], **water pollution**, **overpopulation**, and **rainforest destruction**[8]. People are also worried about the **greenhouse effect**, where an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide [CO_2] and other **gases**[9] in the Earth's **atmosphere**[10] causes a gradual warming of the surface of the Earth. This global warming is leading to the thawing of the **polar ice caps**[11] and all this is causing concern about **climate change**. Both human behaviour and climate change have led to many animal and plant **species**[12] becoming **endangered**[13] or even **extinct**[14].

[1] increasing business, cultural and other contacts between countries [2] rain which contains harmful chemicals as a result of burning substances such as oil and coal [acid = a type of liquid that reacts chemically with other materials, sometimes dissolving them] [3] damage caused to the air by harmful substances or waste [4] rise in the world's temperature [5] dangerous [6] reduction in the ozone layer [layer of air above the Earth containing ozone which prevents harmful ultraviolet light from the sun from reaching Earth] [7] air pollution found in cities caused by a mixture of smoke, gases and chemicals (the word has been formed from smoke + fog) [8] destroying (cutting down) forest in a tropical area which receives a lot of rain [9] substance in a form that is neither solid nor liquid [10] the mixture of gases around the Earth [11] ice covering the areas at the North and South Poles [12] types [13] very few in number, at risk of becoming extinct [14] not existing any longer

Language help

The prefix ***over***- means *too much*. ***Overfishing*** means that people have fished so much that it is having a serious effect on fish populations. ***Overpopulated*** means there are so many people living in an area that life is difficult there.

B Dealing with the problems

Worldwide efforts are being made to improve the situation. **Green** parties and green or **ecological** policies are mainly concerned with **protecting the environment**. **Conservation** organisations are developing nature **reserves** where plants and animals are protected. Some farmers produce **organic** food, which avoids the use of harmful chemicals. More companies try to behave in a way that is **environmentally friendly** or **ecologically sound**. Societies attempt to **dispose of waste** in a more responsible way, by, for example, **recycling** as much as possible. People aim to **reduce their carbon footprint** by using cars less so that they cut down on their use of **fossil fuels**, for example.

C Word families

noun	verb	adjective	adverb
globalisation	globalise	global	globally
environment, environmentalist		environmental	environmentally
pollution, pollutant	pollute	polluting	
destruction	destroy	destructive	destructively
disposal	dispose	disposable	
reduction	reduce	reduced	

Exercises

24.1 Answer each question, using a word or expression from the box.

acid rain	carbon dioxide	endangered species	~~extinct~~	global warming
globalisation	hazardous waste	ozone layer	polar ice caps	destruction of rainforests
smog	water pollution			

1 What happened to dinosaurs about 65 million years ago? *They became extinct.*
2 What is the name for a special layer in the Earth's atmosphere which helps protect our planet?
3 What word can be used to describe the increasing contact between countries that has a major impact on life today?
4 What causes problems because it is difficult to dispose of safely?
5 What have scientists shown to be melting worryingly fast at the North and South Poles?
6 What does the chemical symbol CO_2 represent?
7 What has been happening in the Amazon area and in other tropical areas like Indonesia and Malaysia?
8 What problem is a type of air pollution?
9 What can cause harm to plant or other life when it falls on the land or sea?
10 What is the Siberian tiger an example of?
11 What has caused much plant and animal life in rivers in industrial areas to die out?
12 What is the term for the phenomenon describing the rise in the Earth's average temperature?

24.2 Match words to form compound nouns.

1	acid	fuel	*acid rain*	6	greenhouse	disposal	.....
2	carbon	change	.....	7	nature	reserve	.....
3	climate	party	.....	8	organic	depletion	.....
4	fossil	footprint	.....	9	ozone	effect	.....
5	green	rain	.....	10	waste	food	.....

24.3 Choose a word from the opposite page to complete each sentence.

1 An *environmentalist* is a person who does what they can to help protect the environment.
2 ..... items like plastic cups and paper plates are labour-saving but have a harmful effect on the environment.
3 The government says it is aiming for a significant ..... in this country's use of fossil fuels over the next ten years.
4 The company plans to ..... part of a nature reserve in order to build its new warehouses.
5 Carbon monoxide (CO) is an example of an air ..... .
6 The melting of the polar ice caps will have a ..... impact on the environment.
7 Staff can ..... of all recyclable items in these green bins.
8 Air pollution may ..... the lives of people with respiratory illnesses.
9 This company is proud of its ..... friendly policies.

24.4 Over to you

Answer these questions.

1 Which of the environmental problems in **A** exist in your country?
2 Do you think climate change is having any impact in your country?
3 How much support do green parties have in your country?
4 What could power cars instead of petrol or diesel?
5 Suggest three things people can do to reduce their carbon footprint.

25 Towns

A Describing a city

The words **city** and **town** are sometimes used interchangeably but a city is generally large with a wider range of facilities. This is a description of Cork, one of Ireland's main cities. Which words or phrases might be useful for describing your own or another town?



Cork city is the major metropolis of the south; indeed, with a **population** of about 119,500, it is the second largest city in the Republic. The main business and shopping centre of the town lies on the island created by two channels of the River Lee, with many of the **suburbs** within walking distance of the centre. The buses tend to be overcrowded and the one-way **traffic system** is extremely complicated. In the hilly area of the city is the famous Shandon Steeple, the bell-tower of St Anne's Church, built on the site of a church destroyed when the city was besieged by the English in 1690. Back across the River Lee lies the city's cathedral, an imposing 19th-century building in the French Gothic style. Cork has two markets. Neither caters specifically for tourists but those who enjoy the **lively** atmosphere of a real working market will appreciate their charm. The town has good sports and arts facilities. The Crawford Art Gallery is well worth a visit. It regularly puts on **adventurous** exhibitions by **contemporary** artists. The fashionable **residential** districts of Cork city overlook the **picturesque** harbour. There are other residential areas on the **outskirts**.

B Facilities

Sports: **swimming pool** **sports centre** **golf course** **tennis courts** **football pitch** **skating rink**
Culture: **theatre** **opera house** **concert hall** **radio station** **art gallery**
Education: **school** **college** **university** **library** **adult education centre** **museum**
Catering, accommodation and night-life: **restaurant** **take-away** **hotel** **B&B** (bed and breakfast) **youth hostel** **club**
Transport: **bus service** **taxi rank** **car hire** **car park** **parking meters**
Other: **health centre** **law courts** **registry office** **citizens' advice bureau** **job centre** **department store** **chemist's** **garden centre** **police station** **Town/City Hall** **estate agent** **housing estate** **industrial estate**

C Problems in cities

problem	effect	cause
traffic jams	traffic very slow; commuters get very stressed	too much traffic, especially in the rush hour
slums	housing in a bad condition	poverty - people don't have money to spend on housing
vandalism	pointless destruction of property	poverty; lack of hope
overcrowding	difficult living conditions	too many people living in one place
pollution	deterioration in health	traffic and industrial

D Adjectives to describe a city

picturesque [very pretty and attractive], **historic**, **spacious** [with plenty of space], **elegant**, **magnificent**, **lively**, **deserted** [no one on the streets, e.g. at night], **bustling** [with lots of movement], **packed** [very crowded], **filthy** [very dirty], **run-down** [in a very bad condition]

Common mistakes

There are a lot of open **spaces** *in the centre of London*. (NOT There are a lot of open ~~places~~ in …)

Exercises

25.1 **Check that you understand the text about Cork by answering the following questions.**

1 Where is Cork? *Cork is in the south of the Republic of Ireland.*
2 Where is the shopping and business centre of Cork?
3 What is Cork's traffic system like?
4 What is special about the site of St Anne's Church?
5 In what style is the architecture of Cork Cathedral?
6 Can you buy souvenirs at the markets?
7 Why is the Crawford Gallery worth visiting?
8 Where do Cork people live?

25.2 **Fill in the gaps in this description of a town. Use words from the text about Cork.**



Cambridge has the [1] *second* ..... oldest university in England (after Oxford). It has a [2] ..... of around 108,900, many of whom are students. The main tourist [3] ..... of the town lies in the city centre, around the university colleges. A number of the old university buildings are built on the [4] ..... of former monasteries or convents. Most of the more picturesque colleges [5] ..... the River Cam.

Most of the main hotels in the town are within walking [6] ..... of the centre. The town centre has a lively fruit and vegetable [7] ..... and it [8] ..... to be very crowded on Saturdays. The Fitzwilliam Museum is well [9] ..... visiting as is an art gallery called Kettle's Yard which regularly puts on quite varied [10] ..... by a range of artists. The town also has plenty of sports [11] ..... catering for both young and old. An interesting new Science Park has been built on the [12] ..... of the town, about two kilometres from the city centre.

25.3 **Look at the facilities listed in B. Think of a town and tick all those facilities which the town has.**

25.4 **Suggest three words which would collocate well with the nouns below. The words do not have to be on the left-hand page.**

1 *history* / *science* / *folk* / museum
2 ..... / ..... / ..... / centre
3 ..... / ..... / ..... / college
4 ..... / ..... / ..... / court
5 ..... / ..... / ..... / club
6 ..... / ..... / ..... / agency

25.5 **Which of the facilities in B might you go to in order to:**

1 dance? *a club*
2 play tennis?
3 find a taxi?
4 get married?
5 buy a house?
6 see an exhibition?
7 borrow a book?
8 buy a meal to eat at home?
9 do an evening class?

25.6 **What are the problems in C for these suggested solutions?**

1 They should provide good-quality state housing. *slums*
2 There should be stricter laws about traffic emissions.
3 They should restrict the number of people living in any one area.
4 People who destroy public property should be made to do community service.
5 We need a much better public transport system.

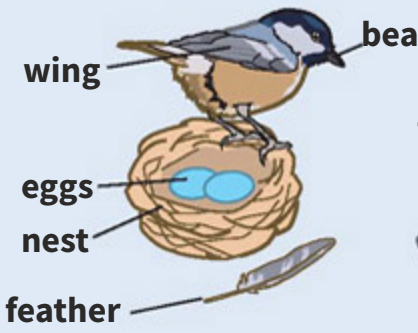
25.7

Over to you

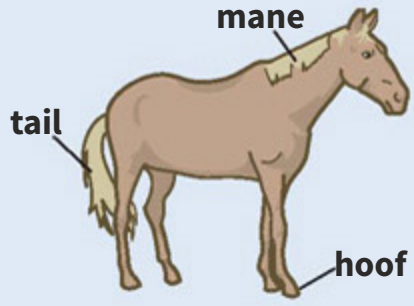
Write a description of the town where you live or another town you know well, using as much of the vocabulary from this unit as possible.

26 The natural world

A Birds and animals

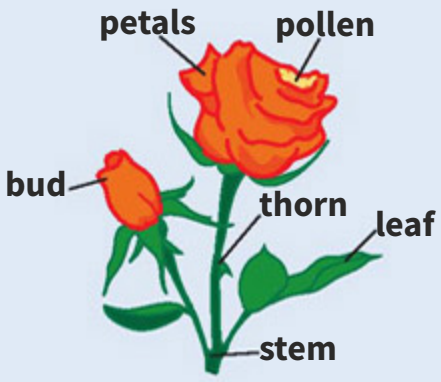


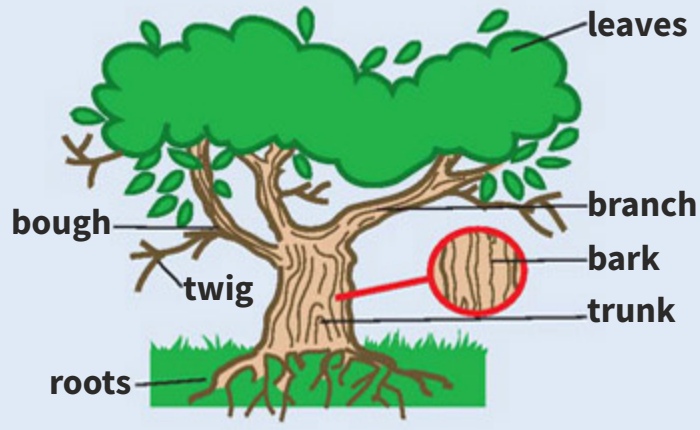






B Flowers and trees





C Specific animals

Here are the English names of some creatures that you may not know.


frog


whale


shark


bat


worm


deer (singular and plural)


owl


fox


snail


crab


pigeon


peacock


seal

D Some verbs and collocations for talking about processes in nature

Our apple tree **flowers** / **blossoms** in April.
Let's **pick** some **flowers**.
These birds **lay** their **eggs** on the ground.
Bees collect **pollen** from flowers to make honey.

Some verbs can be intransitive (no object) or transitive (with an object):
These flowers **grow** very quickly. We **grew** some tomatoes in our garden last year.
These animals **breed** in the spring. My neighbour **breeds** Burmese cats and sells them.

Common mistakes

Remember, we *pick flowers / fruit*; we don't say *pick up*.
*We **picked** some flowers and put them in a vase.* (NOT ~~picked up~~)
We *pick* something *up* when it has fallen from its normal position or someone drops it.
*A woman dropped her purse so I **picked it up** and gave it back to her.*

Exercises

26.1 Answer the questions about the animals and plants on the opposite page.

1 Where does a bird lay its eggs? *in a nest*
2 What do bees help to move from one flower to another as they collect nectar to make honey? .....
3 What do we call the hairs that stick out from a cat's face? .....
4 Which part of a flower usually has the brightest colour(s)? .....
5 What do we call a horse's foot? .....

26.2 Put these words into two groups: 'animal words' or 'plant words'.

~~mane~~ petal oak willow fox worm thorn horn bark stem claw owl

animal words	plant words
mane	

26.3 Fill in the blanks in the sentences below using words from the opposite page.

1 A tree's *roots* go a long way underground.
2 A cat can sharpen its ..... against the ..... of a tree.
3 Most fruit trees ..... in spring.
4 Plants will not ..... unless they get enough water and light.
5 Flowers last longer in a vase if you crush the end of their .....
6 A flower that is just about to open is called a .....
7 Take care not to prick yourself. That plant has sharp .....
8 If we pick up those ....., we can use them to start the fire.
9 ..... use a kind of radar to find their way around.
10 ..... move very, very slowly.

26.4 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 A large bough fell	☑ d	a some herbs to put on our pizza.
2 We picked up	☐	b its feathers. It was beautiful.
3 The scientists grew	☐	c into the stream and swam away.
4 The peacock opened	☐	d from the tree during the storm.
5 A frog jumped	☐	e some apples that had dropped from the tree.
6 We picked	☐	f a new type of tomato that was very big.

26.5 Answer the questions.

1 Which moves fastest and which moves slowest: a worm, a snail, or a deer? *a deer, a snail*
2 Which is the odd one out: a seal, a whale, or a crab? .....
3 Which of these animals has paws: a frog, a bat, a cat, a pigeon? .....
4 Which is correct? The bird *lay / laid / lied* three eggs. .....
5 Which is correct: (a), (b), or both? (a) He breeds horses. (b) Rabbits breed very quickly. .....
6 Which is a bird: a bat, a pigeon or both? .....

26.6 Over to you

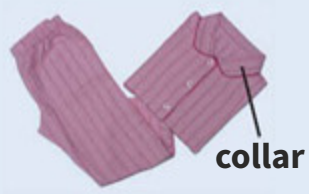
A tulip is the national emblem of the Netherlands and a maple leaf represents Canada. What flower or animal is used as the national emblem of your country?
Find out what other plants or animals are national emblems of other countries.



27 Clothes

A Some items of clothing

At this level you probably already know most of the everyday words for clothes. Here are some items of clothing or parts of them which are perhaps less familiar.



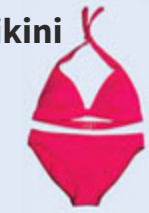
pyjamas


zip





badge






bra




helmet


slippers

Language help

Most items of clothing covering the legs are plural words only. If you wish to count them, you need to say, e.g. ***Six pairs of*** *trousers/shorts/tights/jeans/underpants* or *Jamie's football shorts are too small for him now. I need to get him* ***a new pair***.

B Verbs associated with clothing

Can I **try on** these grey shoes in the window?
I love **dressing up** for parties as I normally wear jeans.
The skirt is too tight and too short - it needs **letting out** and **letting down**.
The dress is too loose and too long - it needs **taking in** and **taking up**.
He **changed out of** his weekend clothes **into** his uniform.
Red usually doesn't **suit** people with ginger hair.
Her black bag **matches** her shoes.
Those shoes don't **fit** my son any more. He's **grown out of** them.

C Adjectives for describing people's clothing

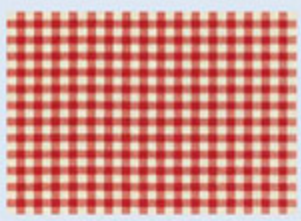
How things fit: **baggy** [loose] **close-fitting** [tight]
Style: **long-sleeved** **sleeveless** **V-neck** **round-neck**
Materials: **denim** [jeans are usually made of this] **woollen** [made of wool] **suede** [a kind of leather that isn't shiny]

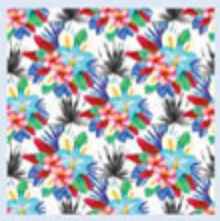

pinstriped


spotted


plain


striped


checked


flowery


tartan

D Other words and expressions useful for talking about clothing

Anna always looks very **elegant** even when she's dressed **casually**. [in a casual or informal way]
I don't think it's worth spending money on **designer** sunglasses. [made by a famous or fashionable designer]
Does your country have a special **national costume**?
Alessandra's put her top on **inside out** - I can see the label!
The burglars wore **masks** and hoods as a **disguise** in the hope that no one would be able to recognise them on CCTV.

Exercises

27.1 **Which words illustrated in A opposite fit best in the following sentences?**

1 I've eaten too much - I'll have to loosen my *belt.*
2 I must get my black shoes repaired. One ..... is broken and both the ..... have holes in them.
3 Do up your ..... or you'll fall over.
4 It's not very warm today. You should wear a ..... over your shirt.
5 Put your ..... on - this floor is very cold.
6 I've almost finished making my dress for the party but I've still got to take up the ..... and sew on some ..... .
7 It's starting to rain - why don't you put your ..... up so you don't get wet.
8 Come on, children. It's time for bed. Go and put your ..... on.
9 You must wear a ..... when you ride a motorbike.
10 Maya went on holiday last week. She packed her beach towel but forgot her ..... so she couldn't go swimming.

27.2 **Complete these sentences with any appropriate word. Use *pair* where it is necessary.**

1 Josh badly needs to buy a new *pair of jeans.*
2 Blue ..... are a kind of international uniform for young people.
3 It's too cold for ..... . Put your trousers on.
4 Dad needs some new underpants. Can you buy him three ..... today?
5 I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to change into a new ..... .

27.3 **Write two items of clothing that collocate with these adjectives.**

1 close-fitting *top, jeans*
2 baggy .....
3 checked .....
4 woollen .....
5 suede .....
6 denim .....

27.4 **Which words and expressions from D do these pictures illustrate?**



1 Natasha always looks *elegant.*



2 Japanese .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 He's turned his pockets .....

27.5 **Put the right verb, *match*, *suit* or *fit*, into each of these sentences.**

1 The blue dress *fits* her perfectly now she's had it taken in.
2 The blue of her dress ..... the blue of her eyes.
3 That blue dress ..... the girl with the blonde hair.
4 I can lend you a pair of slippers if you like. I think these ones should ..... .

27.6 **Over to you**

Describe in as much detail as you can how you are dressed. Use as many words as you can from this unit.

28 Health and medicine

A What are your symptoms?


rash


bruise


lump


spots


a black eye

All these noun phrases can be used with the verb **have (got)**. ***I've got …***
… a **sore throat** / a **temperature** [a higher temperature than normal] / high/low **blood pressure** / **chest pains** / **backache** / **earache** / a **pain** in my side / a **rash** on my chest / a **bruise** on my leg (e.g. after playing football) / a **black eye** (e.g. after being hit in the eye) / a **lump** on my arm / **indigestion** (after eating too fast) / **sickness and diarrhoea** /daɪəˈrɪə/ [an upset stomach which makes you vomit and need to go to the toilet frequently] / **sunburn** / a **virus**.

Verbs: My back is **aching**. I shouldn't have lifted all those heavy boxes.
My leg is **itching** - I think I've been bitten by an insect. [you want to scratch it all the time]
My hands are **trembling** after the shock of falling down. [shaking slightly]
I had a headache and started **shivering**. I knew it was the flu. [shake because you are cold]
My foot **hurts** from where I knocked it against the table.
I had a cold and it took me two weeks to **get over** it. [to get better; more formal = to recover from it]

Adjectives: I **feel sick** / **breathless** / **dizzy**. [my head is spinning]
I am **depressed** / **exhausted** / **stressed**.

Other expressions: I've **lost my appetite** / **voice**.
I think I've **picked up a bug** somewhere. [*infml* = caught a virus or infection]
I've **broken my wrist** / **sprained my ankle** / **dislocated my shoulder**.
She **died of a heart attack**.
He **contracted** AIDS. [*infml* = 'got']
My uncle **suffered a stroke**. [sudden change in the blood supply to a part of the brain, which can cause a loss of the ability to move particular parts of the body; *infml* = 'had']

B What does the doctor prescribe?

Take a **teaspoonful** of medicine last thing at night.
We'll get the nurse to put a **bandage** on your wrist.
You'll need to have some **injections** before you go to the Amazon.
I'm afraid you're going to need an **operation**.
You'll have to have your leg put in **plaster** until the break mends.
I'm going to give you some **tablets** - take one in the morning and one at night.

Common mistakes

A surgeon operates **on** a patient.
*They decided to operate **on** her and remove the tumour*. (NOT They decided to ~~operate her~~.)

Exercises

28.1 **What problems from A opposite might result if someone …?**

1 eats too fast *indigestion*
2 kicks someone's leg while playing football .....
3 hits someone in the eye .....
4 eats bad, rotten food .....
5 lies too long in the hot sun .....
6 runs much too fast to catch a bus .....

28.2 **Read the remarks and answer the questions.**

Casper 'I must have picked up a bug when I was travelling.'

Seth 'It's an unpleasant pain. I hope I haven't got an ear infection.'

Dalma 'My hand is covered in little red spots from where I touched that strange plant.'

Zoe 'The doctor said there's a risk I might suffer from heart disease if it continues.'

Write the people's names. Who has …?

1 a rash? *Dalma* 2 earache?..... 3 a virus?..... 4 high blood pressure?.....

28.3 **Match the sentences on the left with the ones on the right.**

1 My shoulder is itching.	[d]	a I've been working too much.
2 My head hurts.	[ ]	b I feel so cold.
3 I'm shivering.	[ ]	c I think I need to see a psychiatrist.
4 I'm trembling.	[ ]	d I can't stop scratching it.
5 I'm really stressed and exhausted.	[ ]	e I banged it as I walked through the low doorway.
6 I'm depressed.	[ ]	f I feel very nervous and scared.

28.4 **Match the pictures with the sentences.**

A 

B 

C 

D 

E 

F 

1 They put a bandage on my ankle.	[E]
2 I had to have some injections.	[ ]
3 My arm was in plaster for weeks.	[ ]
4 I had to take two teaspoonfuls every night.	[ ]
5 They operated me immediately.	[ ]
6 I have to take two tablets every night at bedtime.	[ ]

One of the sentences above contains a mistake. Correct it.

28.5 **Answer the questions.**

1 Which is correct? My aunt died (a) *with* (b) *of* a heart attack.
2 What is a more formal way of saying these? (a) He got AIDS in 2001. (b) She had a stroke.
3 What is an informal way of saying this? I had an infection but I recovered from it.

28.6 **Over to you**

Make a list of any of the problems mentioned in this unit that you yourself have had. What were the symptoms? What did you do to solve the problem(s)?

29 Medicine and technology

A A history of health technology

Ancient Egypt	The earliest **crutches** were in use.
Middle Ages	**Spectacles**[1], probably invented by Arab scientists, were used to correct **vision**[2].
1500-1600	The first **wheelchairs** were developed.
1800-1900	1804: the first **general anaesthetic**[3] was used in an operation in Japan.
	1896: **X-rays**[4] were first used in medicine.
1960-1970	The first **contact lenses**[5] were **manufactured**[6].

[1] a more formal word for glasses [2] the ability to see [3] something used to make you unconscious when you have an operation, so that you do not feel any pain
[4] a type of radiation that makes possible photographs (also called 'X-rays') of hidden objects such as bones and organs in the body [5] a small piece of transparent plastic which is worn on the surface of your eye to improve your sight [6] made in large numbers, usually in a factory







B The present day

Medical technology has made **rapid**[1] **advances**[2] in recent **decades**[3]. Nowadays, a **vast**[4] range of **devices**[5] is available: people with hearing **difficulties** wear **sophisticated**[6] **hearing aids**[7]; people with heart problems wear tiny **pacemakers**[8]. **Artificial**[9] **hips**[10] and knees are common, and are **highly**[11] efficient. People who have lost an arm or a leg can have a **prosthetic**[12] leg or a modern **robotic**[13] arm and hand, which they can use to pick things up like a natural hand. Eyesight problems can be corrected by **laser surgery**[14].



[1] very fast [2] improvements or developments [3] a period of 10 years [4] very wide [5] object or machine made for a particular purpose [6] clever in a complicated way and able to do complicated tasks [7] a small device put inside someone's ear to help them hear better [8] a small device put inside someone's chest to help their heart beat correctly [9] not natural, a copy made by humans [10] the joint which connects the leg to the upper part of the body [11] very (more formal) [12] made to replace a missing arm or leg [13] able to be controlled and moved by the user
[14] medical operations using powerful narrow beams of light

C The future

A recent TV documentary predicted the following **developments** in medical technology.

- **Scanners** which can **identify** health problems **at an early stage**[1] will become more and more sophisticated.
- **Diagnosing**[2] illnesses from a distance. Patients will sit at their home computers, describe their symptoms and send information **automatically** to their doctor (for example, their **blood pressure**[3] or body temperature) using instruments such as **thermometers** connected to their computer.
- Computers and huge **databases** will provide doctors with more and more information and the **tools**[4] to **treat diseases**.
- **Keyhole surgery**[5] will become more common. It will not be necessary to cut open a person's body to **operate on** them.

[1] during the first period of development [2] name the exact character of a disease or a problem, by examining it
[3] measure of the strength at which the blood flows through the body [4] something that helps you do something
[5] medical operations in which a very small hole is made in a person's body to reach the organ or tissue inside

Exercises

29.1 **Look at A opposite and answer the questions about medical technology.**

1 What did Arab scientists probably invent? *glasses* (*two answers, one more formal*)
2 What began to be used in 1896 to enable doctors to take photographs of the inside of people's bodies? .....
3 How did the ancient Egyptians help disabled people to walk? .....
4 What alternative to glasses became popular in the 1960s and 1970s? .....
5 How could disabled people move around as early as 1500 to 1600? .....

29.2 **Rewrite the words in bold using words from A and B opposite.**

1 Medical scanners are ~~**made**~~ *manufactured* at this factory.
2 Glasses were invented to correct **problems** ..... with **eyesight** ..... .
3 **Technology for medicine** ..... has made **very fast progress** ..... in the last **ten years** ..... .
4 There is now a **large number** ..... of **things** ..... that make life better for people with medical problems.
5 **Copies of natural** ..... hips are **very** ..... efficient.
6 Some disabled athletes can run as fast as able-bodied ones using ..... legs.
7 Scientists are working on ..... arms that can be controlled directly by the person's brain.

29.3 **Using words from the opposite page, say what each object is for.**



1 *a device for people with hearing difficulties*



2



3



4



5



6

29.4 **Complete the missing words. You are given the first letter(s). A preposition is missing in sentence 3. Add it.**

1 Doctors will be able to i *dentify* diseases at an early s ..... in the future using sophisticated sc..... .
2 Doctors will be able to d ..... a patient's illness from a distance. Patients will send information a..... to their doctor.
3 K..... s..... means doctors no longer need to open a patient's body when they operate them.
4 Information on large computer d ..... will help doctors t ..... diseases and give them new t..... to cure illnesses.

29.5

Over to you

Have you used or experienced any of the examples of medical technology mentioned in this unit? How? When? Write true sentences.

30 Health and lifestyle

A Diet

Some types of food are **considered** to be **good for** our health. Others can cause **long-term**[1] health problems if they are **consumed**[2] **in large quantities**. Here are some examples.

healthy ...	not so healthy ...
oily fish (e.g. salmon)	sugary foods (e.g. **fizzy**[3] drinks)
fruit and **nuts**[4]	food with a high **fat** or high salt **content**[5]
wholemeal[6] bread	**processed**[7] food

[1] lasting a long time into the future [2] eaten (*fml*) [3] with a lot of bubbles [4] dry fruits of some trees with a hard shell [5] amount that is in the food [6] containing all the grain, with nothing taken out [7] treated with chemicals to preserve the food or to add taste or colour

Some foods are considered to be **superfoods** - foods that may prevent diseases and improve **mental**[1] as well as **physical**[2] health. Foods that are often **listed** as superfoods include:

- Blueberries: may improve **short-term**[3] memory and **slow**[4] the **ageing process**[5].
- Apples: a good **source**[6] of **vitamin** C; they can also **lower**[7] **cholesterol**.
- Spinach: high in vitamin A; it can **boost**[8] **the immune system**.
- Vegetable juice (especially tomato): can **reduce the risk**[9] of heart disease.



[1] of the mind [2] of the body [3] lasting a short time [4] make it happen more slowly [5] the changes to our body and mind by which we grow old [6] the place it comes from [7] reduce/take the level down [8] improve or increase [9] make less likely that it will happen

B Lifestyle

Read the magazine extracts about lifestyle issues. Note the use of the adjective and noun forms of the same word.

There has been **a sharp rise**[1] in the number of children who are **obese**[2]. Childhood **obesity** is now a **major**[3] problem. Children often take too little exercise.

Keeping **fit** need not be difficult. You can **maintain**[5] a good **level** of **fitness** with a simple routine of daily **exercise**. Start **exercising** now!

People often do not realise how stressful their jobs are. Stress can cause high blood pressure, increased risk of heart attacks and depression[4].

Bad habits can cause serious **harm**[6] to the body. Alcohol and tobacco are particularly **harmful** if consumed in large quantities over a long period.

[1] an increase that is sudden and quick [2] extremely fat [3] very big and serious [4] a mental illness when someone is extremely unhappy and anxious for a long period [5] keep (*fml*) [6] injury or damage

Language help

The nouns *food* and *fruit* can be both uncountable and countable. When we refer to food and fruit in general we use the uncountable form (e.g. *That restaurant serves good food* / *I love fruit*). The plural forms, *foods/fruits*, are used to refer to individual types or examples of food (e.g. *fatty foods, citrus fruits*). We always use *fish* in the singular.

Exercises

30.1 **Rewrite the words in bold using words from A opposite.**

1 If people eat these foods in **big amounts** *large quantities* , it may be dangerous.
2 Certain foods are **thought** ..... by scientists to **have a positive effect on** ..... our bodies.
3 Foods with a **lot of fat in them** ..... may cause health problems.
4 Some foods may cause ..... health problems **that last long into the future**.

30.2 **Match the adjectives and nouns to make five collocations to fill the gaps in the sentences below.**

adjectives					nouns				
oily	processed	~~wholemeal~~	mental	fizzy	drinks	~~bread~~	fish	health	foods

1 *Wholemeal bread* is usually considered to be healthy because it contains the complete grain, with nothing taken out.
2 ..... may taste good when you're very thirsty, but they often have a high sugar content.
3 Types of ..... include salmon.
4 ..... often contain artificial colours to make them look more attractive.
5 Some foods can be good for our ..... as well as our bodies.

30.3 **Verb-noun collocations. Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.**

1 Certain foods can slow	☑ *d*	a cholesterol.
2 Some foods can boost	☐	b the risk of heart disease.
3 Some foods can lower	☐	c the immune system.
4 Other foods can reduce	☐	d the ageing process.

30.4 **Can you remember which positive effect each of these foods may have? Choose your answers from 30.3 (a-d).**

1 spinach ☑ *c* 2 vegetable juice ☐ 3 apples ☐ 4 blueberries ☐

30.5 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one.**

1 Blueberries can improve short-~~time~~ memory. *term*
2 Many fruits are a good sauce of vitamin C and provide mayor health benefits.
3 Oily fishes should form part of a healthy diet.
4 Which do you prefer to eat as a snack if you're hungry, fruits or nuts?
5 A: There's a new Chinese restaurant in town. B: Good! I love Chinese foods.
6 There has been a sharp raise in the number of people suffering from depresion.

30.6 **Complete the two versions of each sentence. Use related word forms, as in the example.**

1 Tobacco and alcohol **can cause a lot of** *harm* / **can be** *harmful* to our health.
2 Children **who are** ..... / **who suffer from** ..... need to exercise more.
3 Her job **is very** ..... / **causes her a lot of** ..... and is very tiring.
4 How can we **keep** ..... / **maintain a good level of** .....? The answer is **to get regular** ..... / **to** ..... **regularly**.

30.7

Over to you

List the foods that you eat most regularly. How many are (a) healthy (b) not so healthy? Do you consume any superfoods? Why? Why not?

31 Travel

A Here is some basic vocabulary for different kinds of travel

transport	kinds of vehicle	parts of vehicle	people working with it	associated words
road	car, bus, coach, tram, van, lorry	boot, steering wheel	driver, motorist, mechanic, chauffeur	petrol station, break down, breakdown service
rail	high-speed train, express	sleeping car, buffet, coach	ticket collector, conductor	platform, seat reservation
sea	liner, ferry, yacht	deck, bridge, gangway	captain, steward(ess)	port, cabin, cruise
air	aircraft, jumbo jet, helicopter	cockpit, wings, aisle /aɪjəl/	ground staff, cabin crew, air traffic controller	duty-free shop, terminal, runway, security

B Journey, trip, travel, voyage

A **trip** is usually shorter than a **journey**. We **had a long journey** by coach from the north to the south of the country. We usually say **business trip** (NOT ~~business journey~~). We **took a trip** / **went on a trip** to the beach last weekend. (**Go on a trip** suggests an organised short excursion, whereas **take a trip** or **have a trip** could be something you do yourselves in your own car.)

Travel is a general word. It is an uncountable noun and a verb. **Travel** broadens the mind. How did you **travel** round Australia? We hitch-hiked.

Voyage means a long journey usually by sea, though this use is quite formal. It is often used in other contexts with 'discovery'. Learning English is a voyage of discovery!

C Collocations and expressions connected with travel

ELENA: 'My flight from New York to Tokyo was **severely delayed**[1] because of bad weather, then later it was cancelled and I was **stuck at**[2] **the airport**. The airline **put me up**[3] in a hotel overnight, and they **put me on standby**[4] for the **early morning** flight the next day. Luckily, I managed **to get a seat** and the flight left **on time**[5] at 7.00 am. There was quite a lot of **turbulence**[6] during the flight, which was scary at times. When we finally got to Tokyo, the weather was bad and we had **a bumpy landing**[7]. Luckily, I don't **get airsick**[8] but I **had** terrible **jetlag**[9] for days afterwards.'

[1] delayed for a very long time [2] unable to move from [3] paid for me to stay [4] promised me a seat if one became available [5] punctually [6] strong, sudden movements while the plane was in the air [7] we landed in a way that was not smooth [8] feel sick because of the movement of the plane; more formal = **suffer from airsickness** [9] had a feeling of tiredness caused by moving quickly from one time zone to another

Pieter: 'I'd always wanted to **sail** across the Mediterranean, though I was worried I might **get seasick**. Anyway, I volunteered to work as a **crew member on board** a yacht and it was an amazing experience. Everything **ran** very **smoothly**, even when the sea was **rough**[1], and I never **suffered from seasickness**[2].'

[1] *opp* = a **calm** sea [2] less formal = I never **got seasick**

Common mistakes

We don't say 'a travel'. *Travel* is an uncountable noun.
*After we left the airport, we had a long **journey** by car.* (NOT we had ~~a long travel~~)
Remember, we say *on time*, not *in time* when we mean 'punctually'.
*The train arrived **on time** and I picked her up at the station.* (NOT The train ~~arrived in time~~)

Exercises

31.1 **Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.**

1	The customs officer stopped the car	☑ d	a and they couldn't get a cabin.
2	The car broke down	☐	b and they had nothing to eat.
3	The air traffic controllers went on strike	☐	c and they had a wonderful cruise.
4	The buffet was closed	☐	d and the driver had to open the boot.
5	The ferry was full	☐	e and a mechanic came to help them.
6	The liner was very modern	☐	f and their flight was cancelled.

31.2 **Sort the words according to the type of transport. One of the words fits in two places. Which is it?**

jumbo jet port express ~~steering wheel~~ coach helicopter gangway runway tram wing chauffeur platform ground staff van cockpit lorry liner deck

road	rail	air	sea
steering wheel			

31.3 **Choose the best word *flight*, *journey*, *trip*, *travel* or *voyage* to fit these gaps.**

1 I would love to *travel* round the world in a balloon.
2 The liner *Titanic* sank on its very first ..... .
3 How long does the ..... from New York to Rio take?
4 She says her hobbies are reading, golf and ..... .
5 When they were in Cairo they took a ..... to see the Pyramids.
6 Getting from London to the north of Scotland involves a long overnight train ..... .

31.4 **Read these travel blogs and fill the gaps with words from the opposite page.**

Erik's Blog (24 June)

The flight from Huascal to Puerto Amlugo was s_____ delayed (six hours!). I was worried I'd get s_____ at the airport (and hoped that the airline would p_____ me u_____ in a nice hotel ☺) but anyway the flight wasn't c_____ and we finally took off. The weather was awful, and we experienced a lot of t_____ . In fact, the flight was so b_____ that I got a_____ (very unpleasant!). But the c_____ c_____ were very friendly and helpful, which made me feel better. The l_____ was not so bad and soon we were at the t_____ collecting our baggage. I slept well last night - I think I've got over the j_____ I had after my 12-hour flight from Europe.

Mona's Blog (5 July)

I didn't have a reservation for the Eurostar train from Paris to London, but they put me on s_____ and I got a s _____ on a later train. It was a good journey, everything ran s_____ and it arrived _____ time. In London, I enquired if there was a s_____ c_____ on the train to Scotland so I could travel overnight. The alternative was a hotel and the e_____ m_____ train at 6.30 am (too early for me!). When I get to Scotland I want to go to some of the islands. I hope the sea is c_____. I hate r_____ seas - I always get s_____!

31.5 **Over to you**

Give answers that are true for you, and reasons.

1 How often do you travel by train? Have you ever been on a high-speed train?

2 Which do you prefer on a plane, a window or an aisle seat? Why? Do you usually visit the duty-free shop? What do you look for? What do you do before going through security?

32 Holidays

A Places to stay and types of holiday

campsite: a place where you can **pitch a tent** or park a **caravan**
self-catering flat/apartment: a flat which you rent; you cook for yourself
guesthouse: accommodation like a hotel but cheaper and with fewer services
youth hostel: cheap accommodation, mainly for young people, with, perhaps, ten or more people sleeping in **bunk beds** in one room
package holiday: a holiday in which you pay for travel, accommodation and food (even occasionally **excursions**) in advance
cruise: a holiday spent touring (or **cruising**) on a boat, stopping off to go sightseeing at different ports
an **adventure holiday:** a holiday involving unusual, exciting and possibly dangerous activities - suitable for **adventurous** people

B Holiday messages

Reply Forward



Dear Zara

Having a wonderful holiday. It's so nice to **get away**[1]. We're staying at an amazing campsite up in the mountains. It's very **remote**[2] and we had to drive up an unbelievably **winding**[3] road to get here. But once we made it, the views over the **surrounding**[4] countryside made the **terrifying**[5] drive worthwhile. I'm sending a photo of our camping spot.

Love, Sami

[1] go somewhere different
[2] far from other places
[3] with lots of bends, not at all straight
[4] all around
[5] very frightening

Reply Forward

Dear Nico

This is turning out to be probably the most **memorable**[1] holiday I've ever had. The town is absolutely **fascinating**[2] with lots of very **impressive**[3] buildings. Our hotel is **delightful**[4] - if a little **inconvenient**[5] from the transport point of view - and the food in this area is **exceptional**[6]. These are some of the old buildings in the town.

Wish you were here too!

Francesca



[1] one that will always be remembered (*a memorable holiday* is a strong collocation)
[2] extremely interesting
[3] grand, making an impact
[4] charming
[5] hard to get to
[6] unusually good

C Holiday brochures

These are often written in quite exaggerated language. Here are some typical adjectives with nouns that they collocate with.

breathtaking views / scenery / pistes (ski slopes) [breathtaking (like **stunning**) suggests that something is so magnificent that it takes your breath away]
exclusive access / club / shops [only the most special people can use the facilities]
exhilarating feeling / ride / walk [makes you feel excited and full of energy]
exotic beauty / charm / location [unusual and more exciting than your everyday reality]
glamorous surroundings / film star / hotel [especially exciting and attractive]
luxurious cruise ship / accommodation / lifestyle [provides great comfort]
picturesque streets / villages / cottage [very pretty; attractive to look at - **as pretty as a picture**]
unspoilt charm / village / woodland [still in a beautiful and natural state]
unique opportunity / charm / facilities [so special it does not exist anywhere else]

Exercises

32.1 **Complete this table. Use a dictionary to help you, if necessary.**

adjective	noun	verb
fascinating	*fascination*	
delightful		
exhilarating		
glamorous		
luxurious		

32.2 **Fill in the gaps in this holiday message with appropriate adjectives from the opposite page.**

Reply Forward

Hi,

Am having a wonderful holiday here. The town here is very old and quite [1] *fascinating* . The guidebook says it is remarkable for its [2] ..... charm and it is right! It is surrounded by magnificent mountains and yesterday I went for an [3] ..... climb. Even though it isn't too expensive, the hotel is quite [4] ..... and the view from my balcony is [5] ..... .

Wish you were here!

Love, P

32.3 **Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.**

1 At the youth hostel Anya insisted on sleeping in the top *bunk* .....
2 As soon as we got to the campsite we ..... our tent.
3 Visitors to our hotel have ..... access to our own private beach.
4 It's often cheaper to go on a ..... holiday, where everything is paid for in advance.
5 I'd love to hire a boat and spend a month ..... round the Mediterranean, wouldn't you?
6 I wouldn't recommend that hotel. It's extremely ..... ; it's seven miles to the nearest beach and ten miles to the town.
7 Our trip to South Africa was undoubtedly the most ..... holiday I've ever had.
8 A narrow ..... road led up the mountain to the cottage we'd rented.

32.4 **Which of the adjectives from C could describe each of these?**

1 a club which only a select group of members can go to *an exclusive club*
2 a hotel with very expensive facilities and very attentive staff .....
3 a village with very pretty buildings and lots of flowers .....
4 a view from the top of a mountain over a magnificent landscape .....
5 the opportunity to go on a once-in-a-lifetime holiday .....
6 a walk along a windswept beach .....

32.5 **Over to you**

Answer these questions. Write sentences.

1 Which of the holiday places and types of holiday in A have you or your friends experienced?

2 Which would you prefer and why - a holiday in the centre of a historic city or one in a remote village with spectacular surrounding countryside?

3 What's the most memorable holiday you've ever had?

4 Which would you say is the most impressive city you've visited?

5 What would you say is the most fascinating place you've been to?

6 Have you ever had a holiday experience you'd describe as terrifying?

33 Science and technology

A New sciences

You are probably familiar with the **traditional branches** of science, e.g. chemistry, physics, botany and zoology. But what about these more recently **established** fields?

field	definition / applications
genetic engineering	Works with genetic material (DNA) of living things to **alter**[1] **features**[2]. **GM foods** (**genetically modified** foods) are grown in some parts of the world.
ergonomics	Studies the design of physical working spaces and how people **interact**[3] with them.
molecular biology	The study of the **structure**[4] and **function**[5] of the **molecules**[6] **associated**[7] with living things.
voice technology	Technology which **enables**[8] machines to **interpret**[9] speech, e.g. voice-to-text software.
stem cell research	The study of the use of human **cells**[10] to treat diseases and injury and to repair the body.
cloning	The **creation**[11] of exact copies of plants or animals with the same genes as the original plants or animals.
hydroponics	The science of growing plants without using **soil**[12].

[1] change, usually slightly [2] typical qualities or important parts [3] communicate with or react to [4] the way that parts of a system are organised [5] purpose [6] the basic chemical units / groups of atoms [7] connected in our mind [8] makes possible [9] decide the intended meaning of [10] smallest basic part of a plant or animal [11] making something new that did not exist before [12] the top layer of the earth's surface, in which plants grow

B Everyday technology



smartphone



tablet



3D TV



high-definition (HD) camcorder



satnav/GPS [satellite navigation / Global Positioning System]



digital photo frame

C Verbs used in science and technology

Note the collocations in **bold**.

He **experimented with** different materials before **utilising**[1] the most suitable one.

The technician **pressed a button** and **lights** started **flashing**.
When she **pulled** the large **lever**[2], the **wheel** began to **rotate**[3].
The zoologist **dissected**[4] **the animal** and **extracted**[5] **its organs**.

When they were **combined**, the two **chemicals reacted** violently with each other.
After **analysing** the **problem**, she **concluded** that there was **a flaw**[6] **in the theory**.

Insert[7] **the disk** into the DVD drive to **install**[8] **the software** or visit the website to download it.

[1] use (*fml* technical/scientific) [2] bar or handle that moves in order to control something (e.g. a machine) [3] turn (*fml* technical/scientific) [4] cut open (usually a dead body or plant) to study its parts [5] took out (*fml* technical/scientific) [6] fault, mistake or weakness [7] put in (*fml* technical/scientific) [8] make it ready to use

Exercises

33.1 Fill the gaps with words from A. Then say what branch of science each person is probably talking about.

1 We grow the plants in liquids, without using s *oil*. Science: *hydroponics*
2 The software i ..... your speech and e ..... you to turn it into text. Science: .....
3 We're interested in workplaces and how people i ..... with their working environment. Science: .....
4 People are often worried. They feel that the c ..... of an exact copy of an animal is not morally right. Science: .....
5 We study how human c ..... can be used to rebuild our bodies and to repair them when they are injured. Science: .....
6 My work is concerned with the s ..... and f..... of the organic molecules a..... with living organisms. Science: .....
7 Many people refuse to eat g ..... m..... foods. They consider GM foods to be unnatural. Science: .....
8 By manipulating DNA, we can a ..... hereditary f..... . Science: .....

33.2 What item do you think each person needs from B?

1 'I keep losing my way and I'm not good at reading maps.' *a satnav*

2 'My phone is so old I can't take any videos with it.' .....

3 'I'd love to be able to look at my photos any time I want to.' .....

4 'My old camcorder doesn't produce really sharp movies.' .....

5 'It was a fantastic film. I didn't mind wearing the special glasses. It was so realistic. I'd love to be able to do that at home.' .....

6 'I want something like a laptop with a touch screen that I can watch films on or read ebooks.' .....

33.3 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 These chemicals	☑ c	a that button, it turns the printer on.
2 If you pull	☐	b to flash after a few seconds.
3 The zoologist extracted	☐	c react with each other.
4 When you press	☐	d in the theory.
5 They experimented	☐	e that lever, it starts the machine.
6 I believe there is a flaw	☐	f the animal to see why it died.
7 They had to dissect	☐	g the organs from the animal.
8 A red light started	☐	h with different liquids.

33.4 Use technical/scientific words from C instead of the words in bold.

1 The wheel began to ~~**turn**~~ *rotate* very quickly.
2 **Put in** ..... the disk to **get the software ready to work** ..... .
3 We can **put these chemicals together** ..... .
4 You should **use** ..... the strongest material.
5 We **looked into** ..... the problem and **decided** ..... that it was a computer virus.

34 Computers

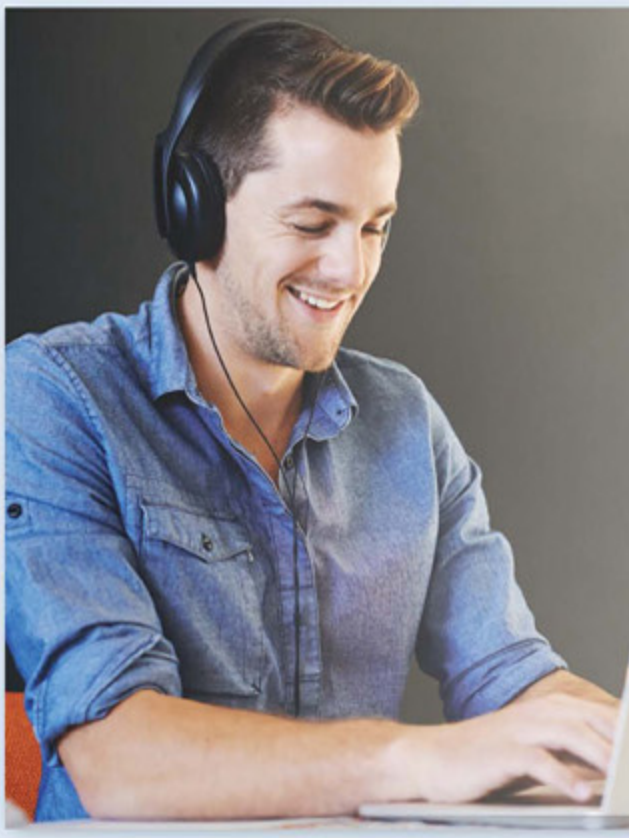
A Hardware [computer equipment or machinery]

personal computer / **PC** / **desktop computer:** a computer that fits on a desk, used by individuals at work or at home
laptop (computer): a lightweight portable computer that usually fits in a briefcase
tablet: a portable personal computer operated by a touch screen
hard disk: a **device** [piece of equipment] inside a computer that stores large amounts of information
disk drive: a device that allows information to be read from a disk
scanner: device for transferring pictures and texts into a computer
memory stick: a small device that lets you carry computer data anywhere conveniently; you can then **plug** the stick **into** any machine
RAM (random access memory / **memory):** the **memory** available on a computer to store and use information temporarily; can be measured in **gigabytes**
(micro) chip: a very small piece of semiconductor, especially in a computer, that contains extremely small electronic circuits and devices, and can perform particular operations
network: when a number of computers, for example in one office, are connected together (or **networked**) so that they can share information

B Software [computer programs that you install]

An **application** is a piece of software designed for a specific purpose. This is often shortened to **app**. You can get mobile phone apps for all sorts of things these days.
word-processing: writing and storing printed text on a computer
spreadsheet (program): a program, or the grid you create with it, to perform mathematical operations
database: a large amount of information stored in a computer system in such a way that it can be easily looked at or changed
(computer) graphics: pictures, images and symbols that you can form on a computer
virus: hidden instructions in a program designed to destroy information
display: what you see on the screen of an electronic device
A computer shows a range of **icons** on its **display**. You put the **cursor** on the one you want to use and click on it to open it.

C Some computing verbs



You probably **store** a lot of important information on your computer. So, it's sensible to **back up** all your files on a regular basis. Then it'll be less of a problem if you **delete** something accidentally or if your computer **crashes.**

A particularly useful feature of most applications is the one that allows you to **undo** what you have just done – just **click** on Undo and it's quick and easy to correct anything that you have **keyed in** by mistake.

After a few years you may want to **upgrade** your computer as they are always developing machines which are faster and more powerful. If you don't do this you may not be able to **run** all the software you need. You can usually just **download** upgrades to your computer's operating system or to your applications from company websites.

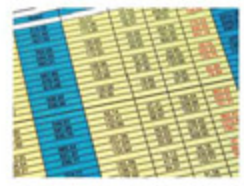
Exercises

34.1 Match the words in the box to the pictures below.

laptop	desktop computer	tablet	icon	~~scanner~~	memory stick	microchip
cursor	spreadsheet					



1 *scanner*



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9

34.2 Fill in the blanks with appropriate words from the opposite page.

1 It's so easy to use a *scanner* when you want to send a handwritten document to someone by email. It's just like using a photocopier.
2 I've lost a lot of data. I wonder if my computer has a ..... .
3 A lot of people carry their ..... on aeroplanes and work on them during the flight.
4 I've got such a lot of photos, music and videos stored on my computer that my ..... is almost full.
5 That computer game you gave me has got amazing ..... - the people just look so realistic!
6 One of my most important tasks at work is to keep the ..... up to date so that customers' contact details are always accurate.
7 If you put the ..... in the middle of a paragraph of text and double click, you select the whole paragraph.
8 I downloaded a fantastic ..... the other day - it tells me where the nearest cash machine is to wherever I am in the world.
9 ..... programs make it very easy to write text and to format it.
10 It's miraculous how much data can be stored on that tiny little computer ..... inside your mobile phone.

34.3 Answer the questions using a verb from C opposite.

1 What do you do when you want to add new information to, for example, a database? *You key it in.*
2 If you don't want to lose computer data, what must you do?
3 If you notice you've repeated a paragraph in an essay, what can you do?
4 You want to open your spreadsheet program, so what should you do?
5 If your computer is old and working very slowly, what might you consider doing?
6 If you accidentally delete some text you've just been working on, what can you do?
7 What can you do to immediately get hold of music or a film from an internet store?
8 If you buy new software when you have an old operating system, what may you find?

34.4 Over to you

Answer these questions.

1 Do you use a desktop, a laptop or a tablet?
2 How much RAM do you have?
3 Which apps do you use most frequently?
4 How often do you back up your data?
5 Has your computer ever crashed?
6 Have you ever accidentally deleted anything?

35 Communications and the Internet

A The Internet



The Internet / **the net** is a network connecting millions of computer users worldwide. **The World Wide Web** / **the Web** is a huge portion of the Internet containing linked documents, called **pages**.

If you have a **broadband** connection then your **access** to the Internet should be fast. Many cafés and other public places now offer people a **wi-fi** /waɪfaɪ/ connection to the Internet - this means that you can **access** the Internet through a **wireless network**, i.e. without needing a **cable** of any kind.

When you **browse**, you look for information on the Internet. The software that helps you do this can be called a **browser** (e.g. Internet Explorer® or Firefox®). You use a **search engine** to help you locate what you want. Google® is one of the best known search engines and people now talk about **googling** someone or something. You can easily spend a lot of time **surfing the net** / **the Web**. [navigating around the Internet, sometimes aimlessly]

A **website** is a document on the Web giving information about a particular subject, person or institution. The introductory page is called the **home page**. From this there are **links** to other pages. Good websites are easy to **navigate** or find your way around. One option on many websites is an **FAQ** page. This stands for 'frequently asked questions', a list of common questions and helpful answers.
You can **bookmark** websites that you **log on**[1] to frequently.
If a website gets a lot of **hits**, that means that it has been visited by a lot of people.

Sometimes you need to **subscribe to** a site, which means you become a member of it. This may involve having a special **username** and choosing a **password**. You will only be able to **log in**[2] to the site if you **enter** this information correctly.
You can store your data on your computer or phone, or you can store it in the **cloud**[3].

[1] *opp* = **log off** [2] *opp* = **log out** [3] a network of servers on the Internet where data can be stored and viewed from any device

B Online communication



You can communicate with others by email. With an email you can include an **attachment**. You can **attach** a photo, for example. You can also send someone an **e-card**. A **server** is a powerful central computer from which other computers get information. If your (**ISP**) **internet service provider**'s server is **down** [not functioning], you may not be able to send emails.

You can use your computer to **Skype** friends and family - the software allows you to make phone calls using your computer and the Internet, and you can see which people on your **contact list** are online at the same time. If you each have a **webcam**, you can see each other as you talk.

Many modern online programs can be called **interactive**, i.e. they allow users to become involved in the exchange of information. For example, **social networking** sites like Facebook are a popular way for people to keep in touch with their friends.

A **wiki** is a website which allows users to add, delete and edit its contents. Wikipedia is perhaps the world's largest wiki. **Blogs** are also interactive as they are a kind of online diary that readers can add comments to. Many people are involved in **online gaming**, playing with people who they have never met. Often these games make use of **virtual reality**. [a set of images and sounds produced by a computer, which represent a place or a situation that the gamer can take part in]

Exercises

35.1 Which word from the box matches each definition?

attachment	bookmark	browser	~~contact list~~	navigate	internet service provider
password	search engine	server	cloud		

1 email addresses, phone numbers, etc. for the people you know *contact list*
2 something that you send with an email .....
3 an individual combination of letters and digits that you use to log in to a website .....
4 a way of accessing a favourite website quickly .....
5 software that allows you to surf the web .....
6 a company that enables you to use the web .....
7 software that helps you to locate the websites that you need .....
8 a large computer that holds information that can be accessed by smaller computers .....
9 to find your way around a website or between websites .....
10 a network of servers where you can store your data on the Internet .....

35.2 Choose a word from the opposite page to complete each sentence.

1 WWW stands for World Wide *Web* .....
2 I read that journalist's ..... every day - he's always got something interesting to say and often readers add some very interesting comments.
3 I couldn't ..... the Internet last night. The server must have been .....
4 It's wonderful being able to ..... my cousins who live in Australia - I love seeing them as well as talking to them.
5 I've decided to ..... to my favourite newspaper's website. It doesn't cost much and it has lots of interesting stuff there.
6 I like this website because it has lots of very useful ..... to all sorts of other sites that interest me.
7 My brother loves online gaming, particularly ..... reality games.
8 An ..... website is one which allows users to add comments to it or edit its content in some way.

35.3 Are these statements true or false? If they are not true, correct them.

1 Google® is the name of a browser. *False - Google is the name of a search engine.*
2 FAQ stands for Fast Answers to Questions. .....
3 If a café says that it has wi-fi access, you can get online with your laptop there. .....
4 A wiki is a kind of computer device. .....
5 When you want to use some websites you may be asked to enter a password. .....
6 If you send someone an e-card they will receive it in the post. .....
7 When you want to stop using the net, you log on. .....
8 A website's home page is the one where you will find key information about the site and links to its other pages. .....

35.4 Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

1 What do you mainly use the Internet for?
2 What is your search engine of choice?
3 Which websites have you bookmarked?
4 How often do you use social networking sites?
5 Do you write a blog or read anyone else's blog?
6 Do you enjoy online gaming?

36 Social media

A Social media verbs

My friend **posted** a video of her baby and it was **shared** over a thousand times!



I probably **update my status** about twice a week. I like telling people what I'm doing.

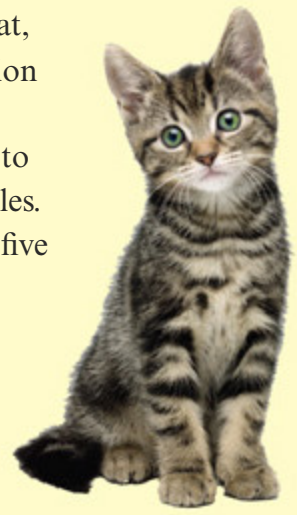
Send me a **friend request**, and then you can see the pictures I took.

Over 100,000 people **subscribe** to his video channel and **follow** him on Twitter.

B A social media app

Here's our round-up of the latest apps. This month we loved CatNapp, a new social media app that allows users to share information about their favourite pets.

We found it very easy to use. You create a **profile** of your cat, **upload** a favourite **photo** and include some basic information about it (age, colour, favourite food). You can then **post updates** about what your cat has been doing, **share links**[1] to things you find interesting or **comment** on other cats' profiles. You can **rate** videos of other cats' adventures (from one to five stars) or see how many **views**[2] or **likes**[3] your post got. The most popular post each month wins a prize!



We found it a little annoying that you can't turn off **notifications**[4] when a friend writes something new, but overall cat lovers will adore it. Highly recommended.

Language help

Many of the words in this unit are used as both nouns and verbs. For example:

*24 people **liked** my post.*
*My post got 24 **likes**.*
*I **commented** on her status.*
*I wrote a **comment** on her status.*

[1] connections to other websites
[2] times people have watched it
[3] times people have clicked 'like'
[4] messages to tell you when something has happened

C Online privacy

Top tips for staying safe online

On social media, it's important to think about who can see your personal information:

- If you have to give personal information (e.g. date of birth, address) when you **create an account**, make sure that it's kept **private**. It's better not to give this information if you don't have to.
- Always check your **privacy settings** [choices on your account about what people see on your profile] regularly and make sure you understand who can see what you post. For example, often your **profile picture** is **public**, but you can usually make posts on your **timeline** [collection of photos and other posts on your profile] private.
- Remember that if you are **tagged** [your name and a link to your profile is added] in someone else's post, it might be seen by a lot of people you don't know. You can ask people to remove the **tag** if necessary.
- Use **direct messages** [messages that only the people in the conversation can see] for private conversations, especially if you discuss where you live, paying for things, etc.
- Delete old **accounts** on sites that you are not using any more. You might forget what information they contain, or the **default** [what happens automatically if you don't change it] privacy settings might change.

Exercises

36.1 Fill in the gaps with the words below.

follow	request	post	~~share~~	subscribe	status

1 If you liked this video, please *share* it with your friends.
2 I hate it when people ..... hundreds of photos from their holiday.
3 Do you know Monica Coto? She's just sent me a friend ..... on Facebook.
4 I just updated my ..... to tell people we've arrived safely at the hotel.
5 You can ..... to our channel, and we'll email you when a new video comes out.
6 Mo likes to ..... chefs and food writers on Twitter.

36.2 Circle the correct word.

1 I've just uploaded *comments* / (*photos*) of Saturday's football match to the team Facebook page.
2 Yi Ling *posts* / *views* a lot of updates about her training for the 10k run.
3 Jo posted a really interesting article about Formula 1 racing, but it didn't get any *likes* / *rates*.
4 To enter the competition, *share* / *view* this picture on your timeline before 8 pm on Friday.
5 Did you *rate* / *upload* that restaurant we went to? I'd give it one star!
6 Elena made a video for the animal charity she works for and it got 3,000 *views* / *uploads*.
7 An old friend *commented* / *viewed* on one of my photos, asking where I was living now.

36.3 What do we call...?

1 The page with information about the user of social media: *profile*
2 The photo of the user: .....
3 The page where a person's photos and posts appear: .....
4 The message a person receives when something new happens: .....
5 Part of a private conversation: .....

36.4 Fill the gaps with words from C opposite.

1 I'm a teacher, so I make sure everything in my profile is p *rivate*.
I don't want my students to see it.
2 To find your p ..... settings, click on the 'lock' icon at the top of the screen
3 If you want everyone to be able to see that post, make sure that it's p .....
4 Please don't t..... me in any of those photos - I look terrible!
5 If you want to buy the skirt, please send me a d ..... message.
6 To create an a ....., you have to give your email address and a password.
7 The d..... setting for new posts on this site is Friends Only, but it's easy to change if you want to share something publicly.

36.5 Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

1 What was the last thing you posted on social media?

2 How many views and/or likes did it get?

3 How often do you comment on other people's posts?

4 Have you checked your privacy settings recently? Is your profile public or private?

37 The press and the media

A Radio and television

Read these extracts from TV listings.

4.00 pm	Jessica: **talk show**[1] with Jessica Brown; today's guest, Rona Fredale	7.00 pm	**Documentary**: Are we killing our kids? **Investigating**[5] the junk food industry
5.00 pm	**Cartoons**[2]: crazy fun for kids of all ages	8.00 pm	*The Happy Couple*: **sitcom**[6] about a pair of newly-weds
5.30 pm	*Golden Chance*: **game show**[3] with Bob Langley	9.00 pm	*Roundup*: **sports programme** with all the day's top action - tonight: rugby final
6.00 pm	**News** and **weather forecast**	10.00 pm	*The Day in Politics*: **current affairs**[7] programme. **Presenter**[8]: James Hill
6.30 pm	*Didbury Street*: the nation's favourite **soap**[4]	10.30 pm	*Wikdal*: **detective drama** set in Norway. **Episode**[9] 3: A second body is found

[1] usually has a host and famous people who answer questions about themselves [2] film where the characters are drawn rather than real [3] show where people compete to win prizes [4] short for soap opera - a series of TV/radio programmes about the lives of a particular group of characters, continuing over a long period and broadcast (several times) every week [5] trying to find out the facts/truth about something [6] funny TV/radio show where the same characters appear in a different story each week [7] news about political events happening now [8] person who introduces the show [9] one of the parts into which a story is divided

B Other expressions connected with TV and radio

The (mass) media refers to TV, radio, newspapers and the Internet, i.e. **means** of communication which reach very large numbers of people.

Subtitles enable people to read what the characters are saying (maybe in translation).
If a film is **dubbed**, you hear the speech in your own language.

To **receive** a lot of TV channels, you may need a **satellite dish** on the roof or wall of your house. Many channels depend on **(TV) commercials** to make money. You may be able to **stream** radio and TV **broadcasts** from the Internet and you may be able to watch **catch-up TV**, or TV **on demand**, which allow you to watch programmes whenever you like. A lot of radio and TV stations offer free **podcasts** which you can download.

Language help

The noun ***means*** (a way of doing something) always ends in *s*, even in the singular. *The Internet is **an** important **means** of communication.*

C Newspapers

A **popular** or **tabloid** newspaper usually **focuses on**[1] **sensation**[2] rather than real news, whereas a **quality newspaper** is usually more interested in serious news. A tabloid often has stories about celebrities, sport, **scandals**[3] and crime, while a quality paper focuses more on serious **journalism**[4] with **in-depth**[5] articles. To read newspapers on the Internet, you may have to **subscribe** / **pay a subscription**[6].

[1] emphasises / pays attention to [2] very exciting or interesting events [3] events which shock people in a moral way [4] the work of collecting, writing and publishing or broadcasting news and articles [5] done carefully and in great detail, explaining the reasons for events [6] pay a sum of money regularly (e.g. once a year)

D Verbs connected with the media

The BBC World Service **broadcasts** throughout the world. [transmits TV/radio programmes]
They're **televising** the opening of Parliament tomorrow. (or, less formal: **showing**)
The film was **shot** / **made on location** in Australia. [filmed in a real place, not in a studio]
The series **is set** in London in the 1980s. [place/time where the drama happens]
Within minutes of the event, people were **tweeting** about it. [posting very short messages on the Internet]

Common mistakes

Remember that the noun ***news*** is uncountable and takes a singular verb. *I have **some news** for you.* (NOT *I have ~~a news~~.*) *The **news is** on TV at 7 pm.* (NOT *The ~~news are~~ on TV.*)

Exercises

37.1 What sort of TV programmes from A opposite are these people talking about?

1 'It investigated how the banks had wasted billions of euros in bad loans.'
documentary

2 'Walt Disney made a lot of them. *Mickey Mouse* was probably his most famous.'
.....

3 'The Minister of Education was on it, discussing the new schools policy.'
.....

4 'It's so funny, especially when the old uncle appears. We can't stop laughing.'
.....

5 'My mum watches it every day. She knows all the characters as if they were real.'
.....

6 'We wanted to find out if it was going to rain tomorrow.'
.....

7 'They always solve the murder in the end, but it's very exciting.'
.....

8 'He interviewed that young star who just won an Oscar, oh, what's her name?'
.....

9 'The prize is £500,000 this week. That's a lot of money!'
.....

10 'They showed a repeat of the Manchester United versus Valencia match.'
.....

37.2 Fill the gaps with words from B opposite.

1 Which do you prefer if a film is in a foreign language, to read *subtitles* or to have the film d.....?
2 I downloaded a great p ..... about bees. I listened to it on my MP3 player in bed last night.
3 I hate it when c ..... interrupt a good film. I usually go and make a cup of tea while they're on.
4 We've got a new s ..... d..... on our roof. We can r ..... hundreds of channels now.
5 I'd like a job in the m ....., perhaps in TV or radio.
6 A lot of people use social networking sites as their main m ..... of communication with their friends.
7 People often download b ..... from the Internet so they don't need to watch them on the day they are transmitted.
8 With a fast broadband connection, you can s ..... TV shows directly from the Internet.

37.3 Sort these words into two categories: 'tabloid' and 'quality' newspaper.

~~celebrity news~~ complex political debate scandals in-depth reviews of books competitions and prizes sensational crimes long articles huge headlines

tabloid	quality
celebrity news	

37.4 Rewrite the words in bold using verbs from the opposite page.

1 The documentary **looked into** *investigated* the food industry and **emphasised** ..... school meals.
2 The programme **was filmed** ..... / ..... in Northern Finland. (*two answers*)
3 CNN **sends** ..... news programmes around the world.
4 They're **showing** ..... the cup final next week. (*give a more formal verb*)
5 The drama **takes place** ..... in Paris in the 1880s.
6 Do you ever **send those short messages over the Internet** ..... about news events?

37.5 Over to you

Which types of media do you use most? Give your reasons.

38 Politics and public institutions

A Types of government

republic: a state **governed** by representatives and, usually, a president (e.g. USA, France)
monarchy: a state **ruled** by a king or queen (e.g. UK, Sweden)
federation: a union of political units (e.g. provinces) under a central government (e.g. USA)
democracy: government of, by and for the people
dictatorship: system of government run by a dictator
independence: freedom from outside control; self-governing

B Presidential and parliamentary government (US and UK)



***United States* Presidential government:** The powers of the **President** and the **legislature** (**Congress**) are separate. These **branches** of government are **elected**[1] separately. The **President** is elected for a four-year **term** and can **appoint**[2] or **nominate** high officials in government, including **cabinet** members (who advise) and federal **judges**. The President leads a major **party**, usually, but not always, the **majority party**[3] in Congress. **Congress** consists of two **houses**, the **House of Representatives** and the **Senate**.



***United Kingdom* Parliamentary government:** The government consists of a legislature[4] (**Parliament**) and a **Cabinet of Ministers**[5] from the majority party in Parliament. If no party has an overall majority, there may be a **coalition** government formed from more than one party. The **Prime Minister** is the head of the government and the leader of the majority party in the **House of Commons**. The Prime Minister **selects** high officials and **heads**[6] the Cabinet. Parliament consists of two **chambers**, the **House of Commons** and the **House of Lords**. **MPs** are **members of parliament** elected from each **constituency**[7] to the House of Commons.

[1] chosen by vote [2] decide who to give positions of authority to [3] political party which won the most votes [4] group of people who make new laws [5] group of most important ministers [6] is the leader of [7] geographical voting area

C Parliamentary elections

During a **general election** each **constituency** has to choose which **politician** it wants as its **representative**. Usually there are several **candidates** to choose from. These candidates are all **standing** (or **running**) for Parliament. They present the **policies**, i.e. their party's plans. On **polling day** every adult goes to the **polling station** and **casts a vote** by marking a cross on their **ballot paper**. The candidate who gets the **majority** of votes wins the **seat**. If the vote is very close, the constituency may be referred to as a **marginal seat**.

Language help

Here are some word families relating to words on this page.

verb	person noun	abstract noun
rule	ruler	rule
govern	governor	government
preside (often followed by *over*)	president	presidency
represent	representative	representation
elect	elector; electorate (group of people)	election

Exercises

38.1 Circle the correct word from the choices offered.

1 A member of parliament *governs / rules / represents* his or her constituency.
2 India gained *republic / independence / democracy* from the UK in 1948.
3 On *electing / voting / polling* day electors cast their votes.
4 She's *running / sitting / walking* for Parliament in the next election.
5 His father was *voted / stood / elected* MP for Cambridge City.
6 What is your country's economic *politics / policy / politician*?
7 The USA is a *legislature / federation / congress* of 50 states.
8 Although modern monarchs are said to *rule / govern / preside* over their countries they have little real power.

38.2 Look at this text about politics in the UK. Fill in the missing words.

Parliament in the UK consists of two [1] *chambers* : the House of Commons and the House of Lords. The country is divided into [2] _____ , each of which elects a(n) [3] _____ to represent it in the House of Commons. The ruling party in the Commons is the one which gains a [4] _____ of seats. The main figure in that party is called the [5] _____ Sometimes more than one party may share power in a [6] _____ government. The Commons is elected for a maximum period of five years although the Prime Minister may call a general [7] _____ at any time within that period.

38.3 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 The President appointed his uncle	c	a over a Cabinet of Ministers.
2 The Prime Minister presides		b on the ballot paper.
3 In last year's election I voted		c as a judge.
4 Lee says he would never want to stand		d from in our constituency.
5 Put a cross beside the name you want		e the seat in our constituency.
6 I haven't decided yet how to cast		f for the Green Party candidate.
7 I'm not keen on the candidate who won		g for political office.
8 We had five candidates to choose		h my vote.

38.4 Find a word from the Language help section to match each definition.

1 the person with the highest political position in a republic *the President*
2 someone who speaks or does something officially, on behalf of a group of people
3 the leader of a country, e.g. a monarch or dictator
4 the period of office of the person with the highest political position in a republic
5 system used for controlling a country
6 the group of people who are entitled to vote
7 to act officially for a group of people

38.5 Over to you

Write a paragraph about the political system in your country. Make sure your paragraph deals with all the following aspects of the topic appropriate to your country:

kind of government, e.g. a republic or a monarchy chambers or houses elections terms of office government leader

39 Crime

A Crimes and criminals

crime	definition	criminal	verb
murder	killing someone	murderer	murder
shoplifting	stealing something from a shop	shoplifter	shoplift
burglary	stealing something from someone's home	burglar	burgle
smuggling	taking something illegally into another country	smuggler	smuggle
kidnapping	taking a person hostage in exchange for money or other favours, etc.	kidnapper	kidnap
terrorism	violent action for political purposes	terrorist	(terrorise)
fraud	deceiving people in order to take money from them	fraudster	defraud
abduction	taking someone, especially a child, usually in order to harm them	abductor	abduct

All the verbs in the table above are regular. Note that the verb *terrorise* is mainly used in a general way, meaning to make others very frightened, rather than just relating to the crime.

B Investigating crime

Ross **committed** a crime when he robbed a bank. Someone **witnessed** the crime and told the police. The police **arrested** Ross and **charged** him **with** bank **robbery**. They also **accused** his twin brother, Ben, of being his **accomplice**[1]. The police investigated the **case**[2] and collected **evidence**[3] at the **crime scene**. They found Ross's **fingerprints** and they also found **DNA evidence**[4] that linked him to the crime, so they were confident they had **proof**[5] that the two men were guilty.

[1] someone who helps someone commit a crime
[2] a crime that is being investigated
[3] information used in a court of law to decide whether the accused is guilty or not
[4] evidence from hair or skin that can be analysed scientifically and be shown to come from a particular person
[5] evidence that shows conclusively whether something is a fact or not

C Trial and punishment

The **case** came to **court**[1], and Ross and Ben **were tried**[2]. The **trial**[3] did not last very long. Ross and Ben both **pleaded not guilty**[4] in court. Their lawyer did her best to **defend** them, but the **prosecuting** lawyer produced a very strong case against them. After brief **deliberations**[5], the jury **passed verdict** on them. They decided that Ross was **guilty**, and he was **convicted of**[6] robbery, but Ben was **innocent**[7]. The judge **acquitted** Ben **of** any involvement in the robbery, but **sentenced** Ross to three years in **prison**/**jail**. As well as a prison **sentence**, Ross also had to **pay** a large **fine**. Ross **served** two years in prison, but **was released from** prison a year early. He **got time off** for good behaviour.

[1] the place where a judge makes legal decisions
[2] were put through a legal process to decide whether they committed the crime or not
[3] the legal process in court whereby an accused person is investigated and tried
[4] said they did not commit the crime
[5] discussions
[6] found to be guilty of a crime
[7] not guilty of a crime

D People connected with crime and the legal process

offender: someone who commits an illegal act (an **offence**)
judge: the person who leads a trial and decides on the sentence, i.e. the punishment when someone is found guilty
jury: group of citizens (12 in the UK and, usually, the US) who decide on the verdict, i.e. whether the accused is guilty or not
victim: a person who suffers as the result of a crime
suspect: a person who is **suspected of** committing an offence
witness: a person who sees a crime being committed

Exercises

39.1 **Which crime is each person accused of?**

1 Zoe stole a chocolate bar from a shop. *Zoe is accused of shoplifting.*
2 Harry took a film star's son and said she could only have him back if she paid a large sum of money. .....
3 Ophelia shot her husband in the heart. .....
4 Noah tried to take a large amount of cigarettes into his country without paying the due tax. .....
5 Tom broke into someone's house and stole a TV and a computer. .....
6 Mike used a website to sell people holiday homes that didn't really exist. .....

39.2 **Fill in the gaps in the newspaper article below with words from B opposite.**

CRIME WATCH

A man has been [1]..... by police and [2]..... with burglary after a house in the city centre was broken into last night. Experts have searched the [3]..... and found several items which they have taken away to be used as [4]..... in court. The police believe the burglar may have had an [5]....., so they are calling for anyone who [6]..... the crime to come forward and help them catch the second burglar.

39.3 **A preposition is missing in each of these sentences. Add it.**

1 The judge sentenced the accused ~~ten~~ *to* ten years in prison.
2 Many prisoners end up getting time for good behaviour.
3 The police have charged the driver of the red sports car speeding.
4 The two girls are suspected taking sweets from the shop without paying.
5 Sam was found guilty today but the judge will decide his sentence tomorrow.
6 The jury passed a verdict of guilty the accused.

39.4 **Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.**

1 The judge gave the accused six months in prison as punishment. (sentenced)
The judge sentenced the accused to six months in prison.
2 The police think Bert is guilty but they cannot show this to be true. (proof)
3 In court the accused said he did not commit the crime. (pleaded)
4 The murder case is still being looked into by the police. (investigation)
5 Anyone suffering because of a crime can join this support group. (victim)
6 The detective thought the jealous lover killed the woman. (suspected)
7 The bank robbers are currently being tried at a court in London. (trial)
8 Nathan is hoping to be let out of prison soon. (released)

39.5 **Over to you**

Find out about how criminals are caught and punished in your country. Answer the questions.

1 Who decides if someone is guilty or innocent?
2 Who decides on their sentence?
3 Can criminals get time off their sentence for good behaviour?
4 How are victims of crime helped?

40 Money

A Personal finance

Read these advertisements about personal finance.

Newbank - Your Bank
Need a good **current account**[1] with the best **interest rates**[2] and a guaranteed **overdraft facility**[3]? Pop into one of our branches.

Short of cash? Need a loan?
Need to **raise money** for that round-the-world trip? For a loan with **competitive**[8] interest rates visit our website at www.cashforyou.com

TOO MANY CREDIT CARDS?
Consolidate[4] all your cards and **debts**[5] into one convenient **payment**[6]. Discuss your **credit limit**[7] with us today. Call 01677 442319.

Looking for a **mortgage**[9]? Act now! For mortgages with low **deposits**[10] and flexible **repayments**[11] call 01569 87623.

[1] account you use for most everyday business [2] percentage which the bank pays you based on how much you have in your account [3] permission to have a negative amount of money in your account [4] join together to make one [5] money you owe someone [6] the act of paying something [7] the maximum amount of money you may spend on your card [8] as good as or better than other banks [9] a loan used usually to buy a house [10] money you pay before buying something to show you really want to buy it [11] payments to reduce the amount you owe

B Bank accounts and services

I have a **steady income**[1] now, which is great, and my **outgoings**[2] are quite low. I don't have any major **expenses**[3].

I've just **opened** a **savings account**[7], and I **transfer**[8] money into it regularly.

I pay all my bills by **direct debit**[4], so I don't have to worry about them. It also means I have a good **credit rating**[5], so I can borrow money if I need to.

My account is usually **in credit**[9] at the beginning of the month, but by the end of the month it's always **overdrawn**[10]. I hate being **in the red**[11] and the banks all **charge interest**[12] on overdrafts! I try not to go over my **overdraft limit**, though.

I need to buy a car, but I'm not sure how I'm going to **finance**[6] it.

I use **online banking** most of the time. I only go to the bank occasionally, to use the **cash machine**.

[1] money coming in regularly, in a way that does not change much [2] money you pay each month, e.g. rent, cost of running a car, etc. [3] money you spend on things [4] money taken automatically from your account, e.g. to pay bills, a mortgage, etc.; the bank *debits* (verb) your account for the necessary sums of money [5] judgement made by a bank about how likely someone is to pay back money that they borrow [6] find the money needed to pay for it [7] account where you put money you do not immediately need [8] move from one account to another [9] has a positive amount of money in it [10] has a negative amount of money in it [11] *infml* have a negative amount of money in your account [12] make you pay a percentage of the amount

C Public finance

The government collects money through taxes. **Income tax** is the tax collected on wages and salaries. **Inheritance tax** is collected on money people get from people who have died. **Customs** (or **excise) duty** is paid on goods imported from other countries; airports usually have **duty-free** shops. **VAT** (**value added tax**) is a tax paid on most goods and services. Companies pay **corporation tax** on their profits.

Exercises

40.1 Match the words on the left with the definitions on the right.

1	interest	[e]	a an account for money you don't need immediately
2	mortgage	[ ]	b payment taken automatically from an account
3	overdraft	[ ]	c an account for day-to-day use
4	savings account	[ ]	d a loan to buy a house or flat
5	current account	[ ]	e money that is charged on a loan
6	direct debit	[ ]	f an account with a negative sum of money in it

40.2 Use words from A opposite to complete the sentences.

1 Nico owes his brother 5,000 euros and he borrowed 10,000 euros to buy a car. Nico has d*ebts* totalling 15,000 euros.
2 Misha spent 6,000 euros on her credit card; the bank said she'd spent 1,000 euros too much. Her c..... l..... was 5,000 euros.
3 Newbank offers interest rates on loans that are similar to the rates other banks offer and are sometimes better. Newbank's rates are c.....
4 Before she bought her new car, Alice paid £500 to the dealer. She paid a d ..... of £500.
5 If a customer needs more money than is in their account, they can get permission to go on using the account. The bank offers an o ..... f.....
6 Harry sold his car, got a part-time job and offered to clean people's windows. He was trying to r..... money to f..... his trip to Africa.
7 You only need one credit card. You can c ..... all the sums you owe into one p.....
8 If you want to buy a house, the bank offers loans where you can pay the money back over 30 years. The bank offers m ..... with r..... over 30 years.

40.3 What do we call ...

1 the tax you pay on imported goods? *customs / excise duty*
2 a shop at an airport where you don't pay tax?
3 a tax which is added to most goods and services?
4 a tax on money paid if someone dies?
5 the tax that companies pay on their profits?
6 the tax that the government takes out of your salary?

40.4 Answer the questions. Give reasons for your answers.

1 If you were overdrawn, would you be in a good situation or a bad one?
A bad situation - you would have a negative amount of money in your bank account.
2 Why might a person open a savings account as well as a current account?
3 Joel's account is in the red. Why is his bank manager unhappy?
4 Why might someone transfer money from a savings account to a current account?
5 Why is online banking easier than visiting your branch?
6 Why are cash machines so convenient? Are there any risks in using them?
7 Zara's account is in credit. Is she probably happy or unhappy?
8 Bob doesn't have a steady income and his outgoings are very high. Do you think he feels secure or insecure?
9 If your bank debited your account for 500 euros, would you feel you had more or less money as a result?
10 If you have a good credit rating, what will you find it easier to do?

41 Describing objects

A Some pairs of opposite adjectives



a **conventional** chair



a **bizarre** chair

Cotton is a **natural** material and nylon is **artificial**.
Red and yellow are **vivid** colours while grey is a **sombre** colour.
You can see through a **transparent** material but you can't see through an **opaque** material.
A machine that has no problems at all is **perfect** while one that doesn't work properly is **faulty**.
Something that is hard and doesn't move or bend easily is **stiff** while something that bends easily is **flexible**.
A material that can be easily spoilt by, for example, washing, can be called **delicate** while something that is hard to spoil can be called **tough**.
A material like glass that can be easily broken can be called **fragile** while something that does not break easily can be called **strong** or **sturdy**.



a **plain** frame



a **decorative** frame

I prefer **strong** coffee to **weak** coffee - I can't stand coffee that has too much water or milk in it. I like to be able to really taste my coffee!
The painting is not a **genuine** Picasso - it's a **fake**.

B Adjectives and nouns

adjective	noun	example	meaning
decent	decency	I'd like to get a table that's a decent size so we can have ten people to a meal.	good
entire	entirety	Between them they ate the entire cake!	whole
characteristic	character, characteristic	Big windows are characteristic of houses built in the early 1900s.	typical
precise	precision	We need to take precise measurements before we decide which fridge to get.	exact
severe	severity	It's a severe building - all concrete and straight lines.	very serious
solid	solidity	The table is made of solid oak.	hard all through
trivial	trivia, triviality	He doesn't write serious novels, just trivial romances.	insignificant

The only verbs that can be formed from adjectives in the above table are **characterise, solidify** and **trivialise**.

C Phrases typical of speech

Did you see that **great big** cat run across the grass? [very big]
This photo **isn't half as** interesting as that one. [is much less]
Jessie's car is **nowhere near as** powerful as mine. [much less]
Tamara makes an **unusually strong** cup of coffee.
It's a **reasonably good** piece of sculpture. [fairly good]
It's a **pretty thick** book. [fairly thick]

Exercises

41.1 **Answer these questions relating to the adjectives in A opposite.**

1 Which is artificial - silk or lycra? *lycra*
2 Which is more delicate when it comes to washing - silk or cotton? .....
3 Would you say a watch that looks like a snake has a conventional or a bizarre design? .....
4 How could you describe car brakes that are not working properly? .....
5 Which would cost more - a genuine Monet painting or a fake one? .....
6 Which of these materials is more fragile - china or wood? .....
7 Which is more flexible - metal or rubber? .....

41.2 **Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.**

1 Jana's clothes are never frivolous - they're always rather *B* .
A delicate B severe C precise D bizarre

2 This painting is ..... of the works of Rembrandt.
A characteristic B solid C entire D plain

3 I'd like to buy the ..... salami, please, not just a small piece of it.
A precise B trivial C entire D solid

4 Do have the ..... to put on a new shirt, not that one with the hole.
A decency B severity C vividness D characteristic

5 Writing a good job application is not a ..... matter.
A solid B conventional C trivial D transparent

6 Making beautiful jewellery requires a high degree of ..... .
A entirety B precision C character D triviality

41.3 **Choose words from the box to complete the dialogue.**

reasonably	nowhere	half	~~great~~	unusually	pretty

NINA: I love this room, Mark. Those [1] *great* big windows are wonderful, and the views from them are [2] ..... amazing too.
MARK: Thanks. And I'm sure it isn't [3] ..... as expensive as you might imagine. I only pay 1,000 euros a month.
NINA: Wow! That's [4] ..... near as much as I pay. And my flat's very noisy too. It seems [5] ..... quiet here - you don't seem to hear too much noise from the street.
MARK: No, it's not too bad. And I've certainly got [6] ..... quiet neighbours. I never hear a sound from their flat.
NINA: Lucky you! I wish I could say the same about mine.

41.4 **Some words in this unit can be used to talk about abstract ideas as well as objects. Use your knowledge of these words to answer the questions.**

1 If someone gives you a genuine smile, do they feel friendly or not particularly friendly towards you? *They feel friendly*
2 Do you think a transparent argument is one that is easy or difficult to follow? .....
3 If a writer describes something vividly, is their writing effective? .....
4 If a person behaves in a stiff way, are they more likely to be relaxed or tense? .....
5 If the teacher says your work is 'solid', are you likely to be pleased or not? .....

42 Belief and opinion

A Verbs connected with beliefs and opinions

You probably already know **think** and **believe**; here are some more verbs.
I'm **convinced** we've met before. [very strong feeling that you're right]
I've always **held** that compulsory education is a waste of time. [used for very firm beliefs; *fml*; **maintain** could be used here]
She **maintains** that we're related, but I'm not convinced. [insists on believing, often against the evidence; *fml*; **hold** could not be used here]
I **feel** she shouldn't be forced to do the job. [strong personal opinion]
I **reckon** they'll get married soon. [used for an opinion about what is likely to happen / to be true; *infml*]
I **doubt** /daʊt/ we'll ever see total world peace. [don't believe]
I **suspect** a lot of people never even think about pollution when they're driving their own car. [have a strong feeling about something negative; fairly formal]

B Phrases for expressing opinion

We haven't made any progress, **in my view** / **in my opinion**. (fairly formal)
She's made a big mistake, **to my mind**. (fairly informal)
If you ask me, he ought to change his job. (*infml*)
Note how **point of view** is used in English:
From a teacher's **point of view**, the new examinations are a disaster. [how teachers see things, or are affected]

Common mistakes

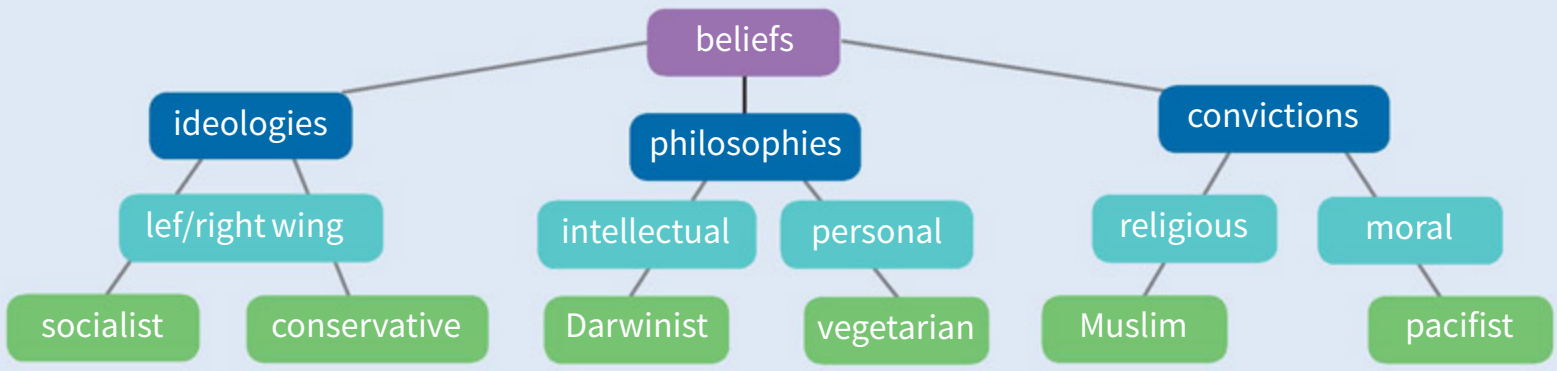
Notice the prepositions in these phrases: **In my opinion**/**view** but **to my mind** and **from my point of view**. (NOT ~~in my mind~~ or ~~in my point of view~~)

C Prepositions used with belief and opinion words

Do you **believe in** life after death? What are your **views on** divorce? What do you **think of** the new boss?
Are you **for** or **against** long prison sentences? (neutral/*infml*)
I'm **in favour of** (*opp* **opposed to**; *fml*) long prison sentences.
I **have my doubts about** this plan.

D Beliefs, ideologies, philosophies, convictions

If you would rather organise this word tree differently or can add more examples, do so; it will probably help you to remember the words better.



E Adjectives for describing beliefs and opinions

These are in sets which have similar, but not exactly the same, meaning:
fanatical / **obsessive** **eccentric** / **odd** / **weird** **conservative** / **traditional**
middle-of-the-road / **moderate** **dedicated** / **committed** **firm** / **strong** **radical** / **extreme**
Jason is a **fanatical** supporter of the Green Party. Grandpa has rather **eccentric** views. Maria is a **moderate** liberal. Rosie is a **committed** Christian. Emma is a **firm** believer in free speech. Tom is a **radical** Marxist.

Exercises

42.1 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right and add an appropriate preposition. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

1	I have strong views *on*	[c]	a my opinion.
2	Many people believe	[ ]	b the proposed changes.
3	I was in favour	[ ]	c marriage.
4	What does she think	[ ]	d the plans for the new airport?
5	This is absurd, ...	[ ]	e life after death.
6	He's quite wrong, ...	[ ]	f how honest he is.
7	Well, that's just silly, ...	[ ]	g our point of view.
8	I have my doubts	[ ]	h the new teacher?
9	Is Alex likely to be opposed	[ ]	i my mind.

42.2 Use adjectives from E which fit the phrases describing the beliefs and views of these people.

1 A person who insists that the earth is flat. (an *eccentric* ..... belief)
2 A person who believes absolutely in the power of love to solve world problems. (a ..... believer in the power of love)
3 A socialist neither on the left or the right of the party. (a ..... socialist)
4 A vegetarian who refuses even to be in the same room as people who love meat. (an ..... vegetarian)
5 Someone who is always suspicious of change. (a rather ..... view of the world)
6 Someone who is in favour of making everyone wear blue clothes on Tuesdays. (a rather ..... point of view)

42.3 Rewrite these sentences using a form of the verb in brackets.

1 My mum's sure Nina's expecting a baby. (reckon) *My mum reckons Nina's expecting a baby.*
2 I've always suspected that ghosts don't really exist. (doubt) .....
.....
3 My view has always been that people should rely on themselves more. (hold) .....
.....
4 Claudia is convinced that the teacher has been unfair to her. (maintain) .....
.....
5 I had a very strong feeling that I had been in that room before. (convince) .....
.....
6 In his view, we should have tried again. (feel) .....
.....

42.4 Over to you

Are you … ? Consider how many of these words apply to you, and explain why. Some ideas for situations are given in the box to help you decide. Write sentences about yourself.

EXAMPLE *I don't think I'm a moralist because I wouldn't try to impose my views about religious or other morality on other people.*

a moralist left-wing an intellectual a traditionalist a philosopher middle-of-the-road
a radical thinker dedicated

food preferences	politics	learning English	sport	life and existence	
work	religion				

43 Pleasant and unpleasant feelings

A Happiness and unhappiness

You feel ...

content(ed) when you are satisfied with what you have. **Content** is not used before a noun. You can say 'She is content/contented' but only 'a contented person'.

He's very **content with** his life. He's always been a contented person.

grateful when someone has done something thoughtful for you. *Note:* You feel **thankful** if something bad that could have happened did not happen.

I'm really **grateful to** you **for** helping me with my project.

delighted when something has happened that gives you great pleasure, when you hear news of someone's good fortune, for instance.

I was **delighted to hear** you're getting married!

miserable when everything seems wrong in your life.

I **felt miserable** all day yesterday - maybe it was just the grey, cold weather.

discontented when your life is not giving you satisfaction.

She's very **discontented with** her job and is going to look for a new one.

fed up / **sick and tired** when you have had enough of something disagreeable.

I'm **fed up with** Olivia's rudeness, and **sick** (**and tired**) **of** her bad behaviour.

depressed when you are miserable over a long period of time. **Depression** is considered an illness in some severe cases.

I **felt depressed** after having ten job interviews and not getting a job.

confused when you cannot make sense of different conflicting feelings or ideas.

I **feel** so **confused** - last week she said she loved me passionately; this week she said we were just good friends.

B Excitement, upset, anger and anxiety

I felt **inspired** after the concert. I've decided to take piano lessons.
[stimulated to do something positive or creative]

The argument I had with Eva the other night really **upset** me.
[made me feel unhappy]

I was quite **enthusiastic** about my tennis lessons at first, but the teacher isn't very good and now I just feel **frustrated**.
[enthusiastic: had very positive feelings]
[frustrated: feeling unable to do something you really want to do]

She was so **thrilled** when she got a job with a TV company. She's always wanted to work in the media.
[how you feel when something extremely exciting and pleasing happens]

I was so **nervous** before the exam, and then I felt **anxious** before the results came out, but I passed with a high grade.
[nervous: feeling nervous is a bit like feeling excited but it is a negative feeling]
[anxious: when you are afraid and uncertain]

I was **furious with** the waiter. The service was slow and he spilt coffee over my shirt.
[extremely angry]

Language help

Really can be used with all the adjectives on this page. **Absolutely** goes only with the words describing extreme states, i.e. *delighted*, *fed up*, *sick and tired*, *thrilled*, *furious*. With these words **quite** means **absolutely**, but with the other less extreme words, **quite** means **rather**.

Exercises

43.1 Read the remarks and then answer the questions.

George 'I'm just not feeling very happy today. Everything seems to have gone wrong.'

Katie 'I like my life and I have nothing to complain about.'

Pilar 'I felt so good that nothing bad had happened. It could have been a disaster.'

Max 'I've had enough of all the arguments and the bad atmosphere at work.'

Agnes 'I felt very happy when I heard she had an interview for the job.'

Sara 'Thank you for helping me today.'

Carlos 'I've been so unhappy for a long time. I've been seeing a psychiatrist.'

Stefan 'I just don't understand. Was that his wife or his daughter?'

Who feels ...	name	Who feels ...	name
1 fed up with something?	*Max*	5 miserable?	
2 depressed?		6 thankful?	
3 content?		7 confused?	
4 grateful?		8 delighted?	

43.2 Rewrite the words in bold using words from A and B opposite.

1 After watching the nature programme, I felt **stimulated** *inspired* to become a zoologist.
2 I always get **a feeling of negative excitement** ..... just before an exam.
3 I was **extremely angry** ..... when they refused to give me my money back.
4 I was **very excited and pleased** ..... to see my old school friend again after so long.
5 The news about Rory's illness really **made me feel unhappy** .....
6 At first, I was **full of positive feelings** ..... about the course, but it's just not very good.

43.3 Sort the adjectives into positive and negative feelings.

contented ~~sick and tired~~ anxious thrilled frustrated confused

positive	negative
	sick and tired

43.4 Fill the gaps using the adjectives in 43.3. Choose an appropriate adverb (*absolutely*, *quite* or *a bit*) to go in front of the adjective. Sometimes, both are possible.

1 I was feeling (quite / absolutely) *quite anxious* because she had not phoned to say she had arrived safely.
2 I am (quite / absolutely) ..... of her selfish behaviour. I've had enough!
3 It's all so complicated. I feel (a bit / quite) ..... . Can you help me?
4 I was (absolutely / a bit) ..... when I heard the wonderful news!
5 It made me feel (quite / a bit) ..... that I still couldn't play any songs after six weeks of guitar lessons.
6 You always seem so (absolutely / quite) ..... with life. How lucky you are!

43.5 Over to you

Choose six adjectives from this unit which describe feelings you have had recently and write sentences about when and why you felt that way.

44 Like, dislike and desire

A Words and expressions relating to liking

Reply Forward

Dear Anna,

Good to hear from you after so many years. Fancy you being married!

I'm not married but I've got a boyfriend called Tom. I must tell you about him. We've known each other for three years. I **quite liked** him when we first met, but I didn't really **fancy** him in any big way. I did like being with him - he **fascinated** me with his stories of his travels around the world and something mysterious about his past **attracted** me. What's more, we were both keen on sailing. Little by little I **fell in love** with him. His sense of humour **appealed to** me and I was **captivated by** his smiling eyes. Now, three years later, I can't see why I didn't **fall for** him the moment we met. He's a very **caring** person, **fond of** animals and small children. He's always **affectionate** and **loving towards** me and **passionate** both **about** me and about the things he believes in and the people he **cares for**. I hope we'll always be as **devoted to** each other as we are now.

Do write again soon and tell me all about your life!

Love,

Amy



B Words and expressions relating to disliking

Loathe, **detest**, **despise**, **cannot stand** and **cannot bear** are all stronger ways of saying 'dislike' and they are all followed by a noun or an *-ing* form.
I **loathe** / **detest** / **despise** / **can't stand** / **can't bear** bad-mannered people. I **can't bear** listen**ing** to her stupid stories.
Repel, **revolt**, **appal** and **disgust** are strong words used to describe the negative effect which something has on a person.
His films **disgust** me. I was **revolted** by the way he spoke. We were **appalled** by the conditions in the refugee camp. His behaviour **repels** everyone.

C Words and expressions relating to desiring

Desire is either a formal verb to express a sexual wish for someone or a formal word for *wish*.
He **desired** her the moment he saw her. I have a strong **desire** to see the Himalayas before I die.
Look forward to means think about something in the future with pleasant anticipation. It is followed by a noun or an *-ing* form. The opposite is **dread**, which is rather strong.
I'm **looking forward to** go**ing** to Fiji but I'm **dreading** the long flight.
Long for means to wish for something very much. **Yearn for** is a more poetic way of saying **long for**.
After this long, cold winter, I'm **longing for** spring. He will never stop **yearning for** his country although he knows he can never return.

Exercises

44.1 Complete the sentences with words from A opposite and add the missing prepositions.

1 Jack and Lily are very d *evoted* ..... *to* ..... each other.
2 Mrs Williams is very f .... her son-in-law.
3 Are you k .... rugby? There's a big match on TV tonight.
4 Spending a whole day with my cousins doesn't a .... me.
5 We just looked at each other and we f .... love immediately.
6 She's so beautiful. I f .... her the moment I saw her.
7 Our grandmother was always very a .... us when we were little and hugged us every time she saw us.
8 She's very p .... wildlife and c .... sick animals in the local animal rescue centre.

44.2 Rewrite the sentences, changing the meaning as little as possible. Use the word in brackets.

1 I'm fond of him. (quite like) *I quite like him.*
2 I strongly dislike jazz. (stand) .....
3 Do you think Ethan is attractive? (fancy) .....
4 She likes rowing and golf. (keen) .....
5 I loathe very salty food. (bear) .....
6 His art attracts me. (appeal) .....
7 I find Gina very interesting. (fascinate) .....
8 She has totally charmed him. (captivate) .....
9 I'm dreading the exam. (look) .....

44.3 In each pair of sentences which person probably feels more strongly, a or b?

1	a He's devoted to his sister.	b He's very fond of his sister.	*a* .....
2	a I dislike his poetry.	b I loathe his poetry.	.....
3	a She's yearning to see him.	b She's longing to see him.	.....
4	a I'm not really looking forward to the exam.	b I'm absolutely dreading the exam.	.....

44.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one mistake in the sentence.

appalled
1 I was ~~appealed~~ by the terrible conditions in the prison. They were simply inhuman.
2 I can't bare selfish people. I dispose anyone who never considers others.
3 Her manner repealed me at first and I wouldn't stand being in the same room as her, but now I've begun to like her more.
4 I felt a strong desire of finding out what had happened to my old school friends.
5 Are you looking forward to start your new job?
6 I felt absolutely disgusting by his unkind remarks about Sylvia.

44.5 Over to you

Answer the questions.

1 What characteristics in people do you most detest?
2 Would you describe yourself as a caring person? In what ways do you show it?
3 What issues are you passionate about? Why?

45 Speaking

A Reporting verbs

We can use these verbs to report people's speech and how they speak (including how loudly and what their mood is).

verb	loudness	most likely mood
whisper	very soft	telling someone a secret*
murmur	soft	romantic *or* complaining
mumble	soft (and unclear)	nervous *or* insecure
mutter	soft	irritated
shout	loud	angry *or* excited
scream	loud (usually without words)	frightened *or* excited
shriek	loud (and shrill)	frightened *or* amused
stutter, stammer	neutral	nervous *or* excited**

*People also whisper in places where it would be impolite to speak loudly.
**Stuttering and stammering may also be the result of a speech impediment.

'I'm sick of this. I'm going home,' he **muttered**.
Suddenly, someone **shouted** 'Help!'
She **whispered** that she was not happy with the way the meeting was going.

B Describing feelings

These verbs indicate the speaker's feelings or intentions. (sb = someone, sth = something)

verb	patterns	feeling	verb	patterns	feeling
boast	to sb about sth	proud of yourself	**complain**	to sb about sth	displeased
insist	on sth	determined	**maintain**	that	confident
object	to + *-ing*	unhappy with a situation	**confess**	to + *-ing*	repentant
threaten	to do sth	aggressive	**urge**	sb to do sth	encouraging
argue	with sb about sth	not in agreement	**beg**	sb to do sth	desperate
groan	that	despair, pain	**grumble**	about sth	displeased

C Adverbs related to speech

To indicate someone's feelings, you can use a speaking verb plus an adverb. For example, 'He said **anxiously**.' 'She spoke **angrily**.' This is common in written style.
If someone feels angry: **angrily** **furiously** **bitterly**
If someone feels unhappy: **gloomily** **miserably** **sadly**
If someone feels happy: **happily** **cheerfully** **gladly** **hopefully**
If someone feels worried: **anxiously** **nervously** **desperately**

Other useful adverbs: *excitedly*, *impatiently*, *reluctantly*, *shyly*.

Language help

Most of the verbs in **B** above can also be used with a *that* clause.
She **boasted that** *she had scored 20 goals in one season.*
He **threatened (that)** *he would call the police.*

Exercises

45.1 **Choose a verb from A opposite to fit the meaning of the sentences.**

1 'Oh, nooooooooo!!!!!!' she *screamed / shrieked* in absolute terror.
2 'Don't look now, but Matt has just arrived,' she ..... in my ear.
3 'Joey! Come here at once!!' his mother ..... .
4 'I d-d-d-did it,' he ..... .
5 'I'm sick of this meeting. I'm going home,' he ..... .
6 'Oh, that's so, so funny!' she ..... with laughter.
7 'There's a spider!!!' she ..... .
8 'Stop .....! I can't hear what you're saying,' she said.
9 'I think we should leave now. It's late,' he ..... quietly.

45.2 **Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.**

1 He always maintained	[d]	a to cancel my parking permit.
2 He groaned	[ ]	b not to leave, but I had to.
3 They threatened	[ ]	c on using recycled paper for everything.
4 She complained	[ ]	d that he could read people's minds.
5 He begged me	[ ]	e that he needed a doctor immediately.
6 She insisted	[ ]	f about the noise coming from above.

45.3 **Add a reporting verb and one of the adverbs from the box to each sentence. Where possible, use reporting verbs from A.**

~~angrily~~	bitterly	impatiently	happily	hopefully	anxiously	sadly	excitedly

Milly 'You must pay attention!'
Milly shouted angrily.

Andrew 'I feel much better today, thank you.'

Petra 'Oh wow! I've just won a prize in a competition!'

Leo 'I will never forgive them for what they did.'

Lily 'This is our last day together. I'll miss you.'

Rory 'I'm very worried. She said she would phone us.'

Kallum 'Oh, come on! Do hurry up! Let's go! Now!'

Anna 'We may be lucky and the rain might stop.'

45.4 **Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in brackets.**

1 Don't exaggerate your talents to your friends. They'll stop liking you. (boast)
Don't boast about your talents to your friends.
2 I'm not happy with having to sit on the floor. I paid for a seat. (object) .....
.....
3 Stop being discontented with your job all the time. (grumble) .....
.....
4 He talked about refusing to pay and calling the police. (threaten) .....
.....
5 She asked if we would help her. (beg) .....
6 He admitted that he had broken the window. (confess) (*two answers*) .....
.....

45.5 **Answer the questions.**

1 Which adverbs describe positive (P) feelings and which describe negative (N) feelings?
gloomily (N) miserably ( ) cheerfully ( ) desperately ( ) gladly ( )
2 Which prepositions usually follow: (a) object, (b) insist, (c) complain?
3 Which adverb means that someone does not want to do something?
4 What is the missing preposition? 'Let's be friends. I don't want to argue ..... you.'
5 How might someone speak at a job interview if they were not very confident?

46 The six senses

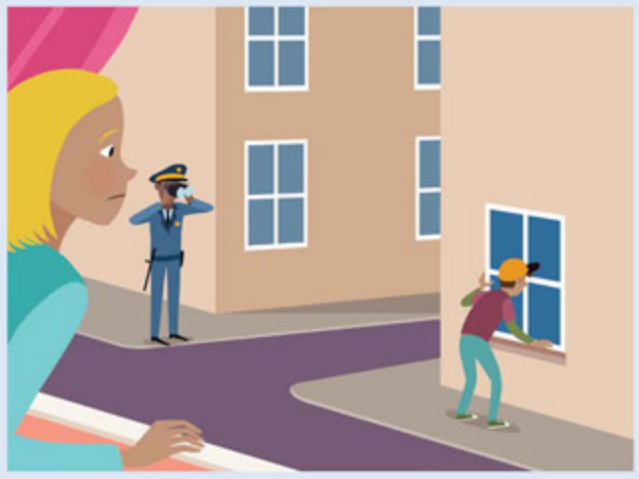
A The five senses

The five senses are **sight**, **hearing**, **taste**, **touch** and **smell**. What is sometimes referred to as a 'sixth sense' (or extrasensory perception) is a power to be aware of things independently of the five physical senses - a kind of supernatural sense. The five verbs referring to the senses are modified by an adjective rather than an adverb.

He **looks** dreadful. The trip **sounds** marvellous. The cake **tastes** good. It **felt** strange.
The soup **smelt** delicious.

B Sight

Yesterday I **glanced** out of the window and **noticed** a policeman **observing** a house opposite through binoculars. I thought I **glimpsed** a man inside the house. Then I **saw** that there was a man **peering** into the window of the same house. I **gazed** at them wondering what they were doing. Suddenly the policeman stopped **staring** through his binoculars. He went to arrest the other man as he started to climb into the house through the window. I realised that I had **witnessed** a crime.



C Hearing

Scale of loudness:

noiseless → **silent** → **quiet** → **noisy** → **loud** → **deafening**

D Taste

sweet (honey) **salty** (crisps) **bitter** (strong coffee) **sour** (vinegar) **spicy** (Indian food)

If you say something tastes **hot** it may mean **spicy** rather than **not cold**. If a curry, say, is not particularly hot, then it is **mild**. Food can be **tasty**, but **tasteful** refers to furnishings, architecture or a style of dressing or behaviour. The opposite of both is **tasteless**.

E Touch

She **poked** me in the ribs with her elbow to wake me up. He **stroked** the cat and **patted** the dog. She **tapped** him on the shoulder. He **grasped** my hand and we ran. She **grabbed** her phone and ran to the bus stop. The thief **snatched** her handbag and disappeared into the crowd. **Press** the button. Please **handle** the goods with great care.

F Smell

Here are some adjectives to describe smells:
Very unpleasant: **stinking foul-smelling putrid musty** [smelling unpleasantly old and slightly damp] **pungent** [smelling very strong, often unpleasantly so]
Pleasant: **fragrant** **aromatic** **sweet-smelling** **perfumed/scented**

G Sixth sense

Different phenomena which a person with a sixth sense may experience:
telepathy [experiencing someone else's feelings even though you are apart]
premonition [knowing something is going to happen before it occurs]
intuition [instinctive understanding]
déjà vu [an inexplicable feeling that you have already been somewhere or experienced something before]

Exercises

46.1 **Which of the verbs in the text in B opposite suggests looking in the following ways**

1 as a crime or accident occurs? *witness*
2 closely, finding it hard to make things out? .....
3 in a scientific kind of way? .....
4 quickly? .....
5 fixedly? .....
6 at something but getting only a brief view? .....

46.2 **Are the following best described as *sweet, salty, bitter, sour, spicy* or *hot*?**

1 strong, unsweetened coffee *bitter*
2 chocolate cake .....
3 chilli powder .....
4 lime .....
5 Indian cooking .....
6 sea water .....

46.3 **Which of the adjectives in F best describes for you the smell of the following?**

1 herbs in a kitchen *aromatic*
2 old socks .....
3 out-of-date eggs .....
4 roses .....



5 a shed full of goats .....
6 a beauty salon .....
7 a loft used for storage .....
8 a skunk .....

46.4 **Replace the underlined words with a more precise verb from the opposite page.**

1 I <u>touched</u> the dog <u>a few times</u>. *patted*
2 He <u>knocked lightly</u> on the door. .....
3 She <u>took</u> my hand <u>firmly</u>. .....
4 She <u>put</u> her face <u>very close</u> up to the window so she could see better. .....
5 Take care you don't <u>hit</u> anyone in the eye with your umbrella. .....
6 He <u>touched</u> the cat <u>affectionately</u>. .....
7 The robber <u>took</u> the money and ran. .....
8 She <u>picked up, carried and put down</u> the boxes carefully. .....

46.5 **Make a sentence about the situations using any of these verbs - *look, sound, taste, feel, smell* - plus an adjective.**

1 You see a film about the Rocky Mountains. *They look magnificent.*
2 You come downstairs in the morning and smell fresh coffee.
3 A friend has just had her hair cut.
4 You hear the latest number one song.
5 A friend, an excellent cook, tries a new soup recipe.
6 A friend asks how you feel today.
7 A little boy asks you to listen to his first attempts at the piano.
8 You see a friend of yours with a very worried look on her face.

46.6 **Write sentences using each of the nine verbs in bold in B in ways that illustrate their specific meanings as clearly as possible.**

EXAMPLE *Laura hoped her boss wouldn't notice her <u>glancing</u> at her watch every few minutes.*

46.7 Over to you

Answer these questions about yourself.

1 What's your favourite smell?
2 Do you prefer a hot curry or a mild curry?
3 What materials do you like the feel of?
4 Do you believe that some people have a sixth sense?
5 Have you ever had a feeling of déjà vu?
6 Have you ever had a telepathic experience?

47 What your body does

A Verbs connected with the mouth and breathing



yawn: Why are you **yawning**? Are you feeling sleepy?
sneeze: Dust often makes me **sneeze**.
snore: He **snored** in his chair with his mouth wide open.
cough: It was so smoky in the room that he couldn't stop **coughing**.
sigh: She **sighed** with relief when she heard the plane had landed safely.
be out of breath: I ran for the bus and now I'**m out of breath**!
take a deep breath: He **took a deep breath** and jumped into the water.
hold your breath: How long can you **hold your breath** underwater?

B Verbs connected with eating

chew: My granny used to say you should **chew** every mouthful ten times.
rumble: It's embarrassing if your stomach **rumbles** during an interview.
swallow: Take a drink of water to help you **swallow** the pills.
suck: In an aeroplane, if you **suck** a sweet, it can stop your ears popping.
lick: The cat **licked** the bowl clean.
bite: Don't **bite** that hard sweet - you'll damage your teeth.

C Verbs connected with the eyes and face

wink: He **winked** at me across the room to try to make me laugh.
frown: Why are you **frowning**? What's the problem?
grin: She was so delighted with the present that she **grinned** from ear to ear.
blink: She **blinked** several times to try and get the dust out of her eye.
blush: He **blushed** with embarrassment when she smiled at him.



wink



grin



sweat

D Verbs connected with the whole body

perspire/sweat /swet/**:** When it's hot, you **sweat**/**perspire**. (**perspire** is more formal)
shiver: Look at him! He's so cold that he's **shivering**!
tremble: My hands **tremble** when I've been drinking too much coffee.
shake: She laughed so much that her whole body **shook**.



frown



shiver

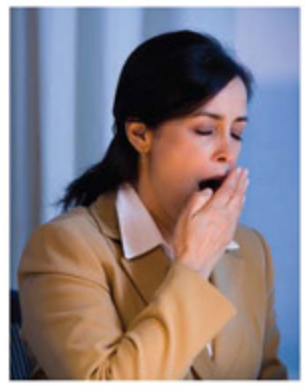
Language help

All the verbs on this page (except **shake** and **bite**) are regular verbs; almost all the words have an identical noun form: **to yawn** → **a yawn**, **to cough** → **a cough** /kɒf/ etc. (except **to breathe** /briːð/ and **to perspire**; their nouns are **breath** /breθ/ and **perspiration**).

Exercises

47.1 Which of the words on the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?




1 *blush* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

47.2 Complete the sentences with verbs from A opposite.

1 I could see she was extremely cold because she was *shivering*.
2 I sensed that he was feeling sad because he .....
3 She couldn't sleep all night because her husband was .....
4 The fumes from all the cars and lorries were horrible and made me .....
5 I knew I had caught a cold because I started .....
6 The doctor examined my chest and asked me to .....
7 Put your head underwater and see how many seconds you can .....
8 We started running fast and soon we were both .....

47.3 The Trubble family are at a restaurant and things are not going well. Fill the gaps with verbs from B opposite.

MRS TRUBBLE: Where's our food? My stomach is [1] *rumbling*. What slow service! Edward, stop making that horrible noise with your drink! People are looking at us.
EDWARD: It's my straw. It's broken and I can't [2] ..... through it properly.
MR TRUBBLE: Ouch! I just [3] ..... an olive and I've broken my tooth on the stone! Look!
MRS TRUBBLE: Mm. So ... where's the stone?
MR TRUBBLE: Oh dear. I think I [4] ..... it!

47.4 Find the word to match these definitions.

1 Draw the eyebrows together to express displeasure or puzzlement. *frown*
2 Crush food into smaller, softer pieces with the teeth so you can swallow it. .....
3 Your body makes small, quick movements because you are laughing so much. .....
4 Shut and open both eyes quickly. .....
5 Deliberately shut and open one eye. .....
6 Use your tongue to take in food (e.g. on an ice-cream cone). .....

47.5 Circle the correct word to complete the sentences.

1 We worked hard in the hot sun. Soon we were *trembling / perspiring / shivering*.
2 He seemed very amused. He was *trembling / blushing / grinning*.
3 She *sucked / licked / bit* the stamp and stuck it on the envelope.
4 I always find it difficult to *swallow / suck / chew* medicines.
5 It was so funny! I was just *trembling / shaking / shivering* with laughter!
6 The poor little animal was *shivering / trembling / grinning* with fear.
7 It was so hot and humid. Soon my shirt was soaked with *perspire / perspiration / perspitation*.

48 Praising and criticising

A Praising

You **praise** someone **for** something. The teacher **praised** the children **for** their hard work.
Highly praised is a common collocation. William's acting in this film has been **highly praised**.

She plays the guitar **brilliantly**, just like her father. [very skilfully] He's the very best, a really **first-rate** / **top-notch** administrator. When it comes to grammar, she's **really on the ball**. [quick to understand] Ben **has a way with** foreign students. The other teachers envy him. [good at establishing good relations / motivating them, etc.] Emma really **has green fingers**; look at those flowers! [good at gardening] Let him do the talking; he's **got the gift of the gab**. [good at talking]

Imogen is **head and shoulders above** the rest of the girls at maths. (usually used of people) / She's **miles better** than the other girls at maths. When it comes to technology, Japan **is streets ahead** of most other countries. As far as sport is concerned, Sam is **among the best** in his class. [one of the best; can also say **among the worst / most interesting**, etc.] That meal was just **out of this world**. [outstanding/superb; usually used of things]

B Criticising

The verb **criticise** can mean: to say that someone or something is bad, e.g. Paige's parents are always **criticising** her appearance. Notice that it can also be used to mean: give an opinion or judgement about a book or film, e.g. I belong to a writer's group - we read and **criticise** each other's work.

critical /ˈkrɪt.ɪ.kəl/

adjective **NOT PLEASED**

1 saying that someone or something is bad or wrong:

*a **critical** report ○ The report is **highly critical of** safety standards at the factory.*

adjective **IMPORTANT**

2 of the greatest importance to the way things might happen:

*The President's support is **critical** (to this project). ○ a **critical** decision*

adjective **GIVING OPINIONS**

3 giving opinions or judgements on books, plays, films, etc.:

*She has written a major **critical** appraisal/study of Saul Bellow's novels. ○ His last film **won/received critical acclaim** (= was praised by film critics).*

adjective **SERIOUS**

4 extremely serious or dangerous:

*Both drivers are **critical** / in a **critical condition** (= so badly hurt that they might die) after the 120 mph crash.*

The adverb **critically** can relate to any of these four meanings of 'critical' although the following are the most frequent uses:
critically important (meaning 2), **critically acclaimed** (meaning 3), **critically ill** (meaning 4)

Note these idiomatic synonyms of the verb **to criticise** (with its meaning of saying something is bad):
You shouldn't **run down** your own country when you're abroad. Why do you always have to **pick holes** in everything I say?

Here are some criticisms of people:
I think Antonio's being totally **absurd**. [ridiculous] You are undoubtedly **at fault / to blame** and you should apologise. [you are in the wrong] She thinks she's **the cat's whiskers** /ˈwɪskəz/ / **the bee's knees**. [thinks she's wonderful] When it comes to time-keeping, he's **the world's worst**. [no one is worse] Jack is so rude. He really **takes the biscuit**. [is a striking example of some negative quality] Jo **wants to have her cake and eat it**! [wants everything with no contribution from her side]

Exercises

48.1 Which expressions from the opposite page might these pictures help you to remember?







1 *have your cake and eat it* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

48.2 Using the word in brackets and an expression from A opposite, rewrite the sentence without changing the meaning.

1 The hotel we were staying in was absolutely superb. (world)
The hotel we were staying in was out of this world.
2 Giovanni is a long way above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums. (shoulders)
.....
3 Maria is very good with young children - they always love her. (way)
.....
4 You're a long way ahead of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed. (streets)
.....
5 Hassan is great at chess. (brilliantly) .....
6 Agata is a very fluent and confident speaker. (gab) .....

48.3 Which of the expressions in 48.1 is most suitable for completing each sentence if you want to:

1 say someone's behaviour is extremely annoying? What Jack said *really takes the biscuit!*
2 say that someone is quick to understand? Tanya is usually .....
3 say someone has a very high opinion of themselves? Rajiv thinks .....
4 praise someone's gardening skills? Marek .....
5 comment on someone who wants to buy a new car but keep all their savings too? Unfortunately, you .....

48.4 Answer these questions.

1 If someone is critically injured, is their injury minor or serious? *It's serious.*
2 If your teacher asks you to write a review criticising a film you've recently seen, does she want you only to write about its negative aspects? .....
3 If a father is critical of his son's behaviour, does he approve or disapprove of it? .....
4 If someone says that it is 'critically important' that you complete a piece of work by a specific deadline, how flexible is that deadline? .....
5 If several people are said to be in a critical condition after an accident, are doctors worried or not particularly worried about them? .....

48.5 Write the *opposite* meaning to these sentences using expressions from the opposite page.

1 He's a third-rate athlete. He's a *first-rate / top-notch athlete*.
2 I don't understand why Sophie has such a low opinion of herself.
3 When it comes to sport, Andrey is one of the best in his school.
4 Greta was not responsible for the error in the accounting figures.
5 He is no good at talking to people at all.
6 Mick doesn't get on with the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.
7 He often says how wonderful his school is.
8 She always praises everything I say.

49 Emotions and moods

In this unit we focus on fixed expressions describing various emotions. You may not need to use them often yourself, but you need to understand them when you read or hear them.

A Positive feelings, moods and states

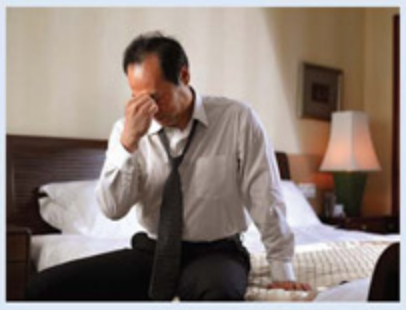
Maria seems to be **on cloud nine** these days. [extremely pleased/happy]
Everyone seemed to be **in high spirits**. [lively, enjoying things]
She seems to be **keeping her chin up**. [happy despite bad things]
Jo's **as happy as Larry / as happy as can be**. [extremely content]

B Negative feelings, moods and states



He had **a long face**. [looked depressed/sad]
She certainly **looked down in the dumps**. [looked depressed/sad]
Zac is **in a bad mood**. [a bad mood/temper]
Martin was **like a bear with a sore head**. [extremely irritable] (See Unit 97.)
Alice **threw a wobbly** the other day. [became extremely angry and upset]

C Physical feelings and states



I'm **feeling done in**. [exhausted]
You're looking **a bit under the weather**. [not very well / ill]
She looked, and felt, **on top form**. [in good physical condition]
I suddenly **felt my head was spinning**. [unable to balance, feel as if you will fall over]
I was almost **at death's door** last week! [very sick/ill]
Old Nora's **as fit as a fiddle**. [very fit indeed]

D Fear/fright



She was **scared stiff**. [very scared]
She **frightened the life out of him**. [frightened him a lot]
We were all **shaking in our boots/shoes**. [trembling with fear]
The poor lad was **scared out of his wits**. [very scared indeed]
I **jumped out of my skin** when I heard the bang. [gave a big jump]

E Other expressions for actions and feelings

Capricorn (21.12-19.1)



Don't get **carried away**[1] by promises not kept. **Keep a cool head**[2] and **take everything as it comes**[3]. On the work front, **things are looking up**[4].

Taurus (21.4-20.5)



If someone says something that **makes you swell with pride**[5] and **feel on top of the world**[6], enjoy the moment!

[1] get too excited [2] stay calm [3] deal calmly with events as they happen [4] improving
[5] feel **proud** / very pleased because of something good that you did [6] very happy indeed

Language help

There is often an element of **exaggeration** in these expressions. They make quite strong comments on the situation and often lighten the tone of what you are saying. So use them only in informal situations.

Exercises

49.1 **Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right to make fixed expressions.**

1 Imogen was on	[c]	a her chin up.
2 Michaela was in	[ ]	b a bear with a sore head.
3 Anna kept	[ ]	c cloud nine.
4 Lily was as	[ ]	d a bad mood.
5 Kathy was like	[ ]	e a wobbly.
6 Rosie threw	[ ]	f happy as the day is long.

49.2 **Complete the fixed expressions from A and B opposite.**

1 Has something good happened? You all seem in high *spirits*.
2 What's the matter? You've got a long .....
3 As long as he has his car to work on, he's as happy .....
4 It's been an awful day! No wonder everyone is in a .....
5 Has something bad happened? You look down .....

49.3 **Read the comments and then answer the questions.**

Mark 'I've never felt so terrified in my life.'

Lidia 'I was just not feeling very well yesterday.'

Andrea 'I felt as if I couldn't keep my balance and was about to fall.'

Krishnan 'I've been feeling really well recently.'

Lars 'I was very ill indeed last week.'

Karen 'I've gone to the gym every day this month and I can feel the results.'

comment	name
1 Who was feeling under the weather?	*Lidia*
2 Who is probably as fit as a fiddle?	
3 Who was scared out of their wits?	
4 Who was at death's door?	
5 Whose head was spinning?	
6 Who is feeling on top form?	

49.4 **Use fixed expressions to rewrite the words in bold.**

1 I **gave a sudden jump** when he fired the gun. *jumped out of my skin*
2 I think you should **not panic** and just be patient. .....
3 He **scared me very much** when he came in wearing that ghost mask! .....
4 Everyone was **trembling with fear** when they saw the door open all by itself. .....
5 I was **very scared** before I did the bungee jump, but it was OK. .....
6 She **felt very proud indeed** as her daughter received the gold medal. .....
7 I think I got **too excited** by the idea of joining a rock band. It's actually very hard work!
.....
8 I try to just **deal with events in a calm way as they happen**. .....

49.5 **Over to you**

Write sentences about yourself.

1 Describe a situation or event which would make you feel on top of the world.

2 Which of the expressions in C opposite best describe(s) your state at the moment?

50 Commenting on problematic situations

A Types of problems and difficulties

There are many words for different types of difficulties. **Chaos** is a state of total confusion, where there is no order at all. A **disaster** is an event which causes great harm or damage. If you are **facing a dilemma** or are **in a dilemma** you are in a situation where you have to make a difficult decision between two things.

The earthquake was a dreadful disaster for the country. The transport system was in chaos for some time afterwards. The government were faced with a dilemma: start reconstruction work at once or wait until the likelihood of aftershocks had passed.

to be in a **fix** = be in a difficult situation to be in a **tight corner** = be in a situation that is hard to get out of to be in a **muddle** = be confused / mixed up

The word **challenge** puts a positive slant on a problem situation in that it focuses on the fact that it needs great mental or physical effort in order to be done successfully and therefore tests a person's ability.

B Specific difficulties

You can be **badly affected**[1] by all sorts of things, from those that are **mildly irritating**[2] to the **intensely annoying**[3].

[1] things can have a negative impact on you [2] slightly annoying [3] extremely annoying

Your plans may be **disrupted**. [prevented from continuing as intended]
Negotiations or a building may **collapse**. [fail because of a lack of support]
You can be **deprived of** something you value. [have something taken away from you]
Someone's **heart** can be **broken**. [made extremely sad]
Your life may **lack** something that you would like. [not have (enough of) something]

The nouns related to the words in this section are **effect**, **irritant** or **irritation**, **annoyance**, **disruption**, **collapse**, **deprivation**, **heartbreak** and **lack**.

C Idioms about dealing with problems and difficulties

to **take a back seat** [not to do anything; let others act instead] ≠ to **take the bull by the horns** [act positively to face and attack the problem]
to **stir things up** [do/say things that make the situation worse] ≠ to **pour oil on troubled waters** [do/say things that calm the situation down]
I **can't face** (**the thought of**) clearing up all this mess today. [don't want to deal with]
I thought it would be best just to **lay my cards on the table**. [state exactly what my position is]
This has to be done by next week; we must **get our act together** before it's too late. [organise ourselves to respond; *infml*]
We need a proper investigation to **get to the bottom of things**. [find the true explanation]
It's quite difficult to **get** people to **sit up and take notice**. [make them pay attention]
I'm trying to **get a grasp** of what's happening; it's not easy. [find out / understand]

D Idioms relating to changes in problem situations

The tide has turned for us; better days are ahead.
We can **see the light at the end of the tunnel** at last. [see that a difficult situation may be ending soon]
I'm afraid we've just **come to a dead end** with our plans.
I think I've **reached a turning point** in my career.
The government and the unions have **buried the hatchet** for the time being. [made peace / stopped fighting each other]
All that trouble last year was just **swept under the carpet** in the end. [ignored / deliberately forgotten, without solving it]

Exercises

50.1 Choose the best word from A opposite to complete these sentences.

1 Can you help Grandpa fill out that form? It's so long and complicated that he's getting in a bit of a *muddle* .
2 The manager told his staff that he didn't want to hear the word 'problems', but rather they should talk about ..... .
3 After the earthquake, city transport was in ..... .
4 I wonder if you could help me out - I'm in a bit of a tight ..... .
5 Should I take the job in New York or the one in Sydney? It's quite a ..... .
6 The floods are the worst natural ..... the country has experienced this century.

50.2 Match the sentence beginnings with the words on the right and add a preposition to complete the sentence.

1 Ben decided he would immediately lay his cards. *on*	☒ *c*	a	troubled waters.
2 The best thing to do is just to take the bull	☐	b	her life.
3 Fortunately we can now see the light at the end	☐	c	the table.
4 It'll take ages before we can get to the bottom	☐	d	a dead end.
5 It's asking for trouble to sweep things	☐	e	the horns.
6 You can always rely on Naomi to pour oil	☐	f	things.
7 At the moment my research seems to have come	☐	g	the tunnel.
8 Claire has now reached a turning point	☐	h	the carpet.

50.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.

1 The snow caused serious disruption to trains in the region. (disrupted)
Trains in the region were seriously disrupted by the snow.
2 I don't want to drive home in all this traffic. (face)
3 Keira doesn't seem to have much confidence. (lacking)
4 Unfortunately, the project doesn't seem to be getting anywhere at the moment. (dead)
5 Sleep deprivation can cause health and other problems. (deprived)
6 Paula was profoundly affected by her meeting with Angus. (effect)

50.4 Choose suitable idioms from C and D to fill the gaps.

1 Selim's business has been going through hard times but he feels at last *the tide has turned* .....
2 No, please, don't say anything: you'll only ..... .
3 It's been a long, hard struggle, but I think finally we can ..... .
4 The police are trying their best to ..... , but it's still a real mystery at the moment.
5 You've been messing around achieving nothing for too long; it's time you ..... !
6 At last I've managed to get him to ..... ; he's paid no attention at all to us so far.
7 I found it hard to understand thermodynamics at first but I'm beginning to ..... it now.
8 I think I'll just ..... and let everyone else get on with sorting matters out.
9 I wish you and John wouldn't argue so much. Can't you ..... once and for all?

51 Number, quantity, degree and intensity

A Number and quantity

Number is used for countable nouns (e.g. a large number of students), **amount** for uncountable nouns (e.g. a large amount of money).

Some adjectives for expressing number and quantity:



Even **minute** amounts of toxic material can be dangerous. (*fml*)
Add just a **tiny** amount of chilli pepper, or else it may get too hot.
Were there many people at the airport? Oh, about **average**, I'd say. (fairly informal)
A **considerable** number of people failed to get tickets. (*fml*)
A **significant** number of students have dropped out of university in the last year. [noticeably large]
Substantial amounts of money have been wasted on this project. (*fml*)
There is an **excessive** amount of sugar in many soft drinks. [too much; rather formal]
A **vast** / An **enormous** quantity of sand was blown on to the road during the storm.

B Informal words for number/quantity

I've got **dozens of** nails in my tool box. [a dozen is 12; *dozens of* means many; especially used for countables]
Scores of people were injured when the gas tank exploded. [a score is 20 or about 20; *scores of* means a large number of; usually formal]
There's **heaps**/**bags**/**loads** of time yet, slow down! (usually with singular *there is*, not *there are*; countable or uncountable; *infml*)
There was absolutely **tons of** food at the party – far too much. (again, note singular *there* was; especially used for things, not so often used for abstract nouns)
There are **tons of** apples on this tree this year – last year there were hardly any.
(*Note:* The verb here is plural because of 'apples', but singular in the example before with 'food' – number depends on the *noun* following, not on **tons**/**lots**/**loads**.)
Just **a drop** of milk for me, please. [tiny amount of any liquid]

C Degree and intensity: collocations with *utter(ly)*, *total(ly)*, *wholly*

Utter(ly), **total(ly)** and **wholly** mean complete(ly).
Utter combines with 'strong' nouns like *nonsense*, *contempt*, *silence*, *confusion*, *chaos* and *despair*.
There was **utter chaos** during the transport strike.

Utterly combines with adjectives such as *ridiculous, confused* and *impossible*.
I was **utterly confused** by the instruction manual that came with my camcorder!

Total combines most often with *disbelief* and *ban*, e.g. She looked at him in **total disbelief**. The government introduced a **total ban** on smoking in public places.

Totally combines most often with *different, unexpected, unsuitable* and *wrong*, e.g.
The two brothers have **totally different** personalities.

Wholly combines most often with *dependent, inadequate* and *unacceptable*, e.g.
The success of the project was **wholly dependent** on the weather.

Exercises

51.1 **Complete the sentences with words from A opposite.**

1 It takes a c *onsiderable* amount of time to learn to ski well.
2 A s..... quantity of food is thrown away every day by supermarkets. It's a scandal. (*two possible answers*)
3 The scientists found only a m ..... amount of the chemical in the food and said it was safe to eat.
4 We ate an e ..... amount of food at dinner last night! (*two possible answers*)
5 V..... amounts of money are wasted by government departments every year.
6 The number of students registering for our courses is about a ..... for the autumn semester.
7 A t..... amount of water had got into the keyboard and it stopped working.
8 Last year we didn't really notice an increase in prices, but this year the increase has been s..... .

51.2 **Use words from A to fill the gaps. More than one answer may be possible.**

1 Even a *tiny / minute* amount of sand can damage a camera.
2 I've had an absolutely ..... amount of work lately. I'm exhausted!
3 Oh, you've given me a ..... amount of food here! I mustn't eat too much.
4 It takes a ..... amount of money to start a business.
5 An ..... amount of fat in your diet is dangerous.

51.3 **Circle the most suitable answer. More than one may be correct.**

1 *Tons* / (*Scores*) / *Bags* of people came on to the streets to hear his speech.
2 We've got *loads* / *scores* / *dozens* of time. The train doesn't leave till 2.30.
3 There *was* / *were* tons of food left over after the dinner party.
4 I've got *heap* / *loads* / *dozens* of CDs that I never play any more.
5 There *was* / *were* dozens of people waiting outside the building.

51.4 **Using intensifiers from C, write what you could say in the following situations.**

1 You thought someone's views were completely ridiculous. *His/Her views were utterly ridiculous.*
2 You read two novels by the same author which were completely different.
.....
3 You thought someone's behaviour was completely unacceptable.
.....
4 You thought a particular way of working produced chaos.
.....
5 You listened to someone's story and did not believe a word of it.
.....
6 You think there should be a complete ban on using mobile phones in cinemas.
.....

51.5 **Over to you**

Write sentences that are true for you using these collocations:

wholly dependent utterly confused totally unexpected utter nonsense

52 Numbers and shapes

A Pronunciation of numbers

Notice how we say the following:

28% twenty-eight per cent	10m × 12m ten metres by twelve metres	
$1\frac{2}{3}$ one and two thirds	$\frac{4}{5}$ four fifths	$\frac{9}{13}$ nine thirteenths / nine over thirteen
4^2 four squared	7^3 seven cubed	8^4 eight to the power of four
10.3 ten point three	32°C *or* F thirty-two degrees Celsius *or* Fahrenheit	

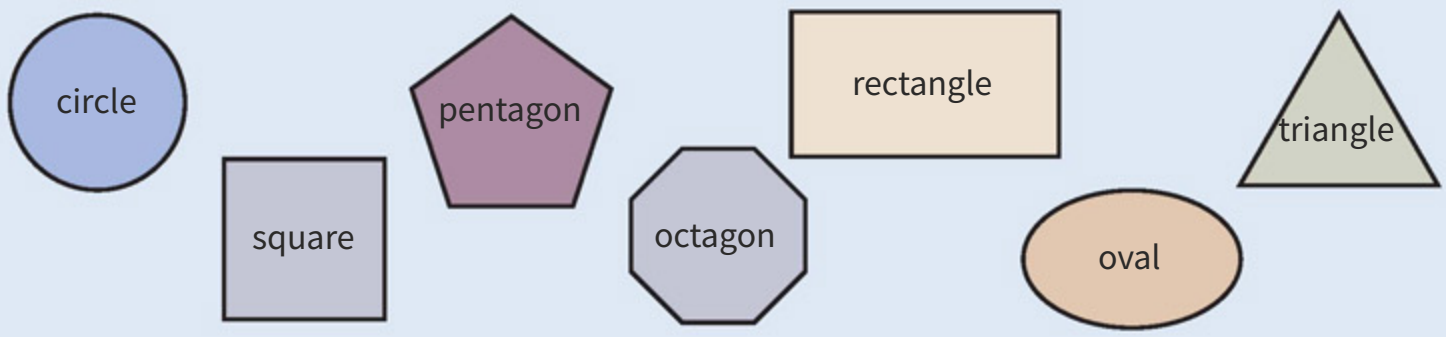
Decimal fractions are separated by a dot and not a comma in English and this is pronounced ***point***.
Note how commas are used to separate each set of three numbers in long numbers:
1,623,457 = one million, six hundred and twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-seven.

Telephone numbers are usually said like this: 01223 20675 = oh one double two three, two oh six, seven five.

Language help

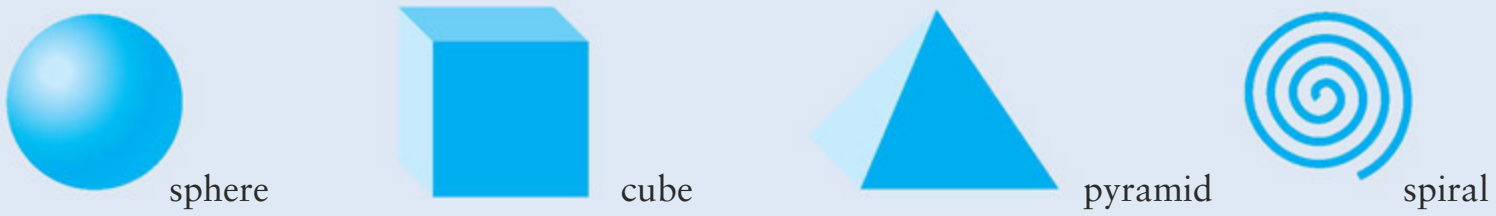
When saying a long number, you pronounce each set of up to three digits separately with rising intonation, until the last set, where the intonation falls at the end to make it clear that the number is complete.

B Two-dimensional shapes



The corresponding adjectives are: **circular**, **pentagonal**, **rectangular**, **triangular**, **square**, **octagonal**, **oval**.
A **rectangle** has four **right angles**. A pentagon has five **sides**.
A **circle** is cut in half by its **diameter**. Its two halves can be called **semi-circles**.
The **radius** of a circle is the distance from its centre to the **circumference**.

C Three-dimensional shapes



The corresponding adjectives are: **spherical**, **cubic**, **pyramidal**, **spiral**.
The two halves of a sphere can be called **hemispheres**.

D Arithmetic

+ addition **– subtraction** **× multiplication** **÷ division**

$2x + 3y - z = \frac{3z}{4x}$	Two *x* plus three *y* minus *z* equals three *z* divided by four *x* *or* three *z* over four *x*
6 × 7 = 42	Six **times** / **multiplied by** seven is forty-two *or* six sevens are forty-two

Exercises

52.1 **Write the following in words rather than in figures or symbols.**

1 17.1% of adults have false teeth. *Seventeen point one per cent of adults …*
2 According to a UN study, 2% of the world's population owns over $^1/_2$ of all household wealth.
3 0°C = 32°F
4 This article says that 8,556,981 people are currently living in London.

52.2 **How good at maths are you? Try this numbers quiz. Write the answers in words rather than figures.**

1 What is seven times nine? *sixty-three*
2 Name two shapes that have four right angles.
3 Subtract 41 from 93.
4 What is three fifths of twenty?
5 How many sides has an octagon?
6 What is one third of ninety-nine?
7 What is three squared?
8 What is four cubed?

52.3 **Complete this table.**

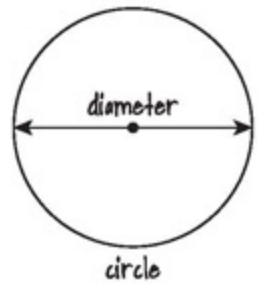
description	name of shape	adjective
shape with four sides of equal length and four right angles	*square*	*square*
round shape		
shape with three sides		
shape with eight sides		
shaped a bit like an egg		
three-dimensional round shape		
three-dimensional square shape		

52.4 **Correct the mistakes in how the numbers are said in these sentences.**

1 $3^2 = 9$ Three square equals nine. *Three squared equals nine.*
2 46.6% Oxygen accounts for forty-six comma six per cent of the earth's crust.
3 7 × 9 = 63 Seven nine are sixty-three.
4 18° C The temperature today is eighteen points Celsius.
5 3m × 6m My bedroom is three multiplied by six metres.
6 6^9 What is six at the power of nine?
7 $^{11}/_{16}$ Eleven sixteens of the students passed the exam.
8 $^2/_3 \times 5^3 = 83^1/_3$ Two third times five cubes is eighty-three and three third.

52.5 **Draw the following shapes.**

1 A circle with its diameter indicated.
2 A right-angled triangle with two equal sides of about two centimetres in length. Draw a small circle at the centre of the triangle and then draw lines from the centre of the circle to each of the angles of the triangle.
3 A rectangle with diagonal lines joining opposite angles.
4 An octagon with equal sides. Draw an oval in the middle of the octagon.
5 A cube of roughly 3cm by 3cm by 3cm.



53 Time

A Periods of time – words and typical contexts

the Ice Age **the Stone Age** **the Middle Ages** **the computer age**
[major historical/geological periods]

After the war, a new **era** of stability began. [long period, perhaps several decades]
A **spell** of hot weather [indefinite but short period] He's had a couple of **spells** in hospital in the last two or three years.
The city went through several **stages** of development to become what it is today. [period of development or particular time in a process]
Most teenagers go through a **phase** of being lazy. [a period which is part of a longer period; *phase* can also mean the same as *stage*]

B Useful expressions with time

During the 1980s I lived in Barcelona **for a time**. [vague, indefinite period]
The doctor says you should stay in bed **for the time being**. [for now, not specific]
She can get a bit bad-tempered **at times**. [occasionally / now and then]
By the time we get home this pizza will be cold! (*Note:* followed by present tense, not future with *will*)
I'm not in regular contact with her; I just send her an email **from time to time**. [sometimes but not often]
One at a time, please! I can't deal with you all together.
We arrived just **in time** to hear the Prime Minister's speech. [at the right time / with enough time to do something]
Our plane was **on time** and she was waiting for us at the airport. [punctual / neither early nor late]
I've told you **time and time again** not to ring me at the office! [many times; very emphatic and usually in negative contexts]
The city has changed a great deal **over the course of time / over the course of the last two centuries**. (used about long periods of time)

C Verbs associated with time passing

2002 → 2012 Ten years had **elapsed** since they last saw each other. (normally used in the perfect or past, without adverbs; *fml*)
Time seems to **fly** as you get older. [pass very quickly]
This film **lasts** for three hours.
The meeting **went on** / **dragged on** for two hours. (suggests longer than expected or desired; **drag on** is stronger)

D Adjectives describing duration (how long something lasts)

There was a **momentary** loss of electrical power and the data was lost. [very brief]
I just got a **fleeting** glimpse of the President as his car drove past. [very short and quick]
Venice has a **timeless** beauty.

Common mistakes

Don't confuse *in time* and *on time*. *In time* means with enough time to do something or at the right time. *On time* means punctual, neither early nor late.
*We got there just **in time** for dinner.*
*I expect she will be late - the trains are never **on time**.*

Exercises

53.1 Fill the gaps with *age*, *era*, *period*, *spell*, *phase* or *stage*.

1 The Minister said that before the new law came into force there would be a *period* of six months when people could hand in firearms without being prosecuted.
2 The last two decades of the twentieth century will be seen by historians as the beginning of the computer ..... .
3 The new university will be built in three ..... , beginning with the opening of the science faculty in 2015.
4 These factories mark the beginning of a new ..... of industrial development for the country.
5 My son went through a ..... of not wanting to go to school when he was about nine or ten.
6 We had a very cold ..... in February. All the water pipes froze up.

53.2 Complete the sentences.

1 *Over* the *course* of a century, from 1900 to 2000, the population grew steadily.
2 The lecture ..... / ..... for almost three hours and everyone was totally bored. (*two answers*)
3 The archaeologists discovered some tools which dated from the Stone ..... .
4 Time seems to ..... when you're enjoying yourself.
5 A period of seven years ..... between the two earthquakes.
6 Shakespeare's plays have a ..... quality - they never grow old.
7 It was just a ..... visit. She only stayed for about ten minutes.
8 There was a ..... pause as the official considered her answer. Then she said she would try to help us.

53.3 Which phrases from B could you use in the following situations? Write exactly what you might say.

1 To a child who leaves the fridge door open despite being told off often.
I've told you time and time again not to leave the fridge door open!
2 To someone you're happy to see who arrives just as you are serving tea/coffee.
3 On a birthday card you expect will arrive at someone's address after you arrive in New York.
4 A large group of people want to talk to you but you'd prefer to see them individually.
5 Ask someone to use an old computer while the new one is being repaired.
6 Tell someone you'll do your best to arrive punctually at a meeting.
7 Explain to someone that the weather can be very hot in your city occasionally.
8 Tell someone you enjoy a game of tennis sometimes but not often.



53.4 Over to you

Your country/culture may have names for important periods of its history (for example, British people often refer to the years 1840-1900 as the 'Victorian era/period' because the monarch at the time was Queen Victoria). Make a list in English of important historical periods from your culture.

54 Distances and dimensions

A *Broad* and *wide* and *tall* and *high*

Wide is more common than **broad**, e.g. It's a very **wide** road/garden/room.

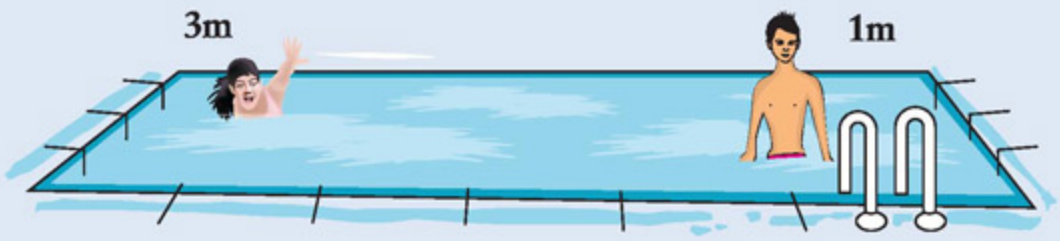
Make a note of typical collocations for **broad** as you meet them, e.g. Economics is a very **broad** subject. We came to a **broad** expanse of grassland. [big area]

Note the word order for dimensions, e.g. The room's **five metres long** and **four wide**.

Don't forget that **tall** is for people but can be used for things such as buildings and trees when they are **high** and **thin** in some way. Otherwise, use **high** for things.

She's very **tall** for a five-year-old.
Her office is in that **tall** building in the square.
There are some **high** mountains in the North.

B Deep ≠ shallow



The **deep** and **shallow** ends of a swimming pool.

C Derived words, phrases and compounds

long Let's measure the length /leŋθ/ of this rope.
I swam 20 **lengths** (of the swimming pool).
I've **lengthened** her skirt for her. [*opp* = **shorten**, see below]
Getting a visa can be a **lengthy** process. (usually refers to time; rather negative)
Tony has got a job as a **long-distance** lorry driver.

short The new road will **shorten** our journey by ten minutes.
There's a **shortcut** to the station. [quick way]

wide Let's measure the **width** /wɪdθ/ of the room.
They're **widening** the road.

broad I want to **broaden** my experience. (usually more abstract contexts)
She's very **broad-minded** and tolerant of others. [willing to accept other people's behaviour and beliefs; *opp* = **narrow-minded**]
I admire the **breadth** of his knowledge. (usually more abstract concepts)

high The **height** /haɪt/ of the wall is two metres.
The fog **heightened** the feeling of mystery. (usually used only for feelings and emotions)

low You can **lower** the microphone if it's too high. [*opp* = **raise**]

far He loves travelling to **faraway** places. [a long way away = **distant**]

distant What's the **distance** from Helsinki to St Petersburg? [= How far is it …?]

deep The **depth** of the river here is about three metres.
His death so soon after hers **deepened** our sadness. (often with feelings)

D Other verbs for dimensions and for changing them

Our garden **stretches** all the way to the river, so we have plenty of room to **extend** the house if we want to.
The cities are **spreading** and the countryside is **shrinking**. [getting bigger; getting smaller]
The business **expanded** considerably in the last decade. [grew in size; *opp* = **contract**]

Exercises

54.1 Complete B's replies using a suitable form of the dimension/distance words opposite and any other necessary words.

1 A: These trousers I've bought are too long.
  B: Well, why don't you get *them shortened?*
2 A: He's a big boy, isn't he? 1.90 metres!
  B: Yes, he's ..... .
3 A: Why are we going across the field?
  B: Just to get there a bit quicker; it's ..... .
4 A: We'll have to measure how high the room is.
  B: That's not necessary; we already know the ..... .
5 A: The traffic seems to move far quicker on this road since I was last here.
  B: Yes, well, they ..... .
6 A: Why do they have music on TV news programmes? It seems totally unnecessary!
  B: Well, I think they want to create a feeling of drama, and the music is supposed to ..... .

54.2 Give opposites for:

1 a length of the pool *a width of the pool*
2 to shorten
3 a very broad range of goods
4 a local call
5 deep water
6 nearby places
7 narrow-minded
8 raise your hand

54.3 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 The city's spread a lot;	[c]	a for miles along the river.
2 It takes ten weeks;	[ ]	b you should broaden it.
3 We extended the house	[ ]	c it's much bigger now.
4 You can choose;	[ ]	d there's a wide range.
5 Your experience is too narrow;	[ ]	e it's a lengthy business.
6 The forest stretches	[ ]	f to give us more room.

54.4 Use the verbs in the box to fill the gaps.

spread	expand	extend	stretch	shrink	contract

1 I'll *spread* ..... the rug out on the grass so we can both sit on it.
2 The steel industry ..... when the economy was strong, but now it has ..... and only employs 8,000 people.
3 This sweater of mine has ..... in the wash!
4 Our land ..... as far as those trees there.
5 The arts centre has recently ..... its opening hours.

54.5 Fill in the prepositions. If you are unsure, try looking up the word *distance* in a dictionary.

1 The car was parked *at* ..... a distance ..... about 150 metres from the scene of the robbery.
2 I saw you ..... the distance yesterday but didn't call out as you were with someone.
3 She's a great shot. She can hit an empty can ..... a distance of about 100 feet.
4 What's the total distance ..... here ..... Paris?

55 Obligation, need, possibility and probability

A Obligation



You will **be liable** /ˈlaɪəbl/ for any damage when you rent a car. [obliged to pay; *fml*/legalistic]
The company **is obliged** to give a refund if the tour is cancelled.
The bank robbers **forced** him at gunpoint to open the safe.
We **had no choice**/**alternative but** to sell our house; we owed the bank £100,000.
The death sentence is **mandatory** /ˈm□ndətəri/ for drug-smuggling in some countries. [automatic; there is no alternative]
Was sport **compulsory/obligatory** at your school? No, it was **optional**. [you can choose]
I am **exempt** from paying income tax as I'm a student. [free from obligation]

B Need



This plant is **in need of** water. (more formal than 'needs/wants')
There's a **need for** more discussion on the matter. [we feel a need; *fml*]
There is a **shortage** of teachers. [there are not enough]
She could not concentrate **through lack of** sleep. [she had none or not enough; *fml*]
A car is **an absolute necessity** if you live in the countryside and there is no public transport. [something you must have] You just can't **do without** one. [survive or live without]
What are the **requirements** for a Master's course in English? [things you must do or need]

C Possibilities

I've been given **an opportunity** to work in Berlin. [a real chance]
Is there any **chance**/**possibility** you'll be free next week? (**chance** is less formal than **possibility**)
A rise in oil prices is **inevitable** as oil supplies run out across the world. [is certain to happen]
It is doubtful whether the economy will improve next year. [it may not improve]
It is probable that the next government will change the tax laws.
Most scientists believe that climate change is no longer just a possibility but is now an absolute **certainty**.

Common mistakes

The correct preposition after the noun **need** is ***for***, not *of*. *There is a need **for** more qualified teachers*.
(NOT There is ~~a need of~~ ...)

Exercises

55.1 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 The club closed down	[e]	a of repairs and redecoration.
2 People could not heat their homes	[ ]	b for university entry on the website.
3 Most people cannot do	[ ]	c because of the oil shortage.
4 There is a real need	[ ]	d for better day care for young children.
5 There is a list of requirements	[ ]	e through lack of interest.
6 The whole house is in need	[ ]	f without a mobile phone these days.

55.2 Continue the sentences using obligation words and phrases from A opposite with the words in brackets.

1 They were losing £10 million a year, so the company *was forced/obliged to close down.* (close down)
2 You don't have to buy the travel insurance; it's ..... (extra charge)
3 You can borrow the camcorder, but you will ..... (for any damage to it)
4 We'll have to sell the house. I'm afraid we have ..... (otherwise, bankrupt)
5 He didn't want to give them the money, but they had guns; they ..... (hand it over)
6 No, he couldn't choose to pay a fine; a prison sentence is ..... (for dangerous driving)
7 I didn't want to do maths, but I had to. It's ..... (in all secondary schools)
8 If you're unemployed, you're ..... (paying tax)

55.3 Answer the questions.

1 If a fee or charge is mandatory, do you have to pay it or can you choose? *You have to pay it.*
2 If an event is inevitable, how certain is it that it will happen? 20%, 50% or 100%?
3 If a car is exempt from tax, how much tax do you have to pay for it?
4 If an exam is optional, are you obliged to take it?
5 If you are liable for something, is it your or someone else's responsibility?

55.4 Rewrite the words in bold using expressions from the opposite page.

1 Most people consider that a mobile phone is not a luxury but **something you absolutely must have**.
an absolute necessity / something you can't do without
2 I have been given a **chance** to work with a team of zoologists in East Africa.
3 Is there any **chance** that you will be free to join us at 4 pm tomorrow?
4 It's **not at all sure** whether there will be any change in the situation in the near future.
5 It's not just a possibility that food prices will go up, it's **absolutely certain to happen**.
6 **She will probably** arrive tomorrow.

55.5 Over to you

Name something which …

1 you think is inevitable.

2 there is a need for in your country.

3 was compulsory when you were at school.

4 you personally are in need of right now.

5 you own that you couldn't do without.

56 Sound and light

A General words to describe sound

I could hear the **sound** of voices/music coming from the next room. (neutral)
The **noise** of the traffic here is pretty bad. [loud, unpleasant sounds]
The children are making a terrible **racket** upstairs. Could you go and tell them to be quiet? [very loud, unbearable noise, often of human activity; *infml*]

Sound and **noise** can both be countable or uncountable. When they are of short duration or refer to different sounds/noises, they are countable. When they mean a lot of continual or continuous sounds, they are uncountable.
I heard **some** strange **sounds**/**noises** in the night. (countable)
I wish the children wouldn't make **so much noise** when I'm working. (uncountable)
The **sound** of the sea is very relaxing. (uncountable)

B Sound words and things that typically make them

All the words in this section can be used as nouns or verbs.
I could hear the rain **pattering** on the roof. We heard the **patter** of a little child's feet.

verb/noun	example(s) of what makes the sound
bang	a door closing in the wind, a balloon bursting
chime	a big public clock on a building sounding the hour
clang	a big bell ringing, a hollow metal object being struck
clatter	a metal pan falling onto a concrete floor
crash	a big, solid, heavy object falling onto a hard floor
hiss	gas/steam escaping through a small hole
hum	an electrical appliance when switched on, e.g. computer, freezer
rattle	small stones in a tin being shaken
ring	a small bell, a telephone
roar /r /	noise of heavy traffic, noise of a huge waterfall
rumble	distant noise of thunder, noise of traffic far away
rustle /ˈrʌsəl/	opening a paper/plastic bag, dry leaves underfoot
screech	a car's tyres when the brakes are suddenly applied
thud	a heavy object falling onto a carpeted floor

C Darkness

Here are some adjectives for **dark** conditions. (For adjectives describing brightness, see Unit 59.)
These brown walls are a bit **gloomy**. We should paint them white.
This torch is getting a bit **dim**. I think it needs new batteries.
It was a **sombre** /ˈsɒmbə/ room with dark, heavy curtains. [serious, imposing]

D Types of light

Note these collocations.
A torch gives out a **beam** of light. A diamond ring **sparkles**.
A camera gives a **flash** of light. Stars **twinkle**. A candle flame **flickers** in the breeze. White-hot coal on a fire **glows**.
The sun **shines** and gives out **rays** of light. A gold object **glitters**.



Language help

Many of the words relating to darkness and light can be used about people's expressions too. Light suggests happiness and darkness suggests unhappiness. *Kate's face was **glowing** with pleasure. Dan looks very **gloomy**. Has he had some bad news?*

Exercises

56.1 **Choose *sound, noise(s)* or *racket* to fill the gaps. You may use the words more than once.**

1 I could sit and listen to the *sound* of the river all day.
2 There was a terrible ..... outside the pub last night; it was a fight involving about six people.
3 My car's making some strange ..... . I'll have to have it checked.
4 Oh! What an awful ..... ! I think you should take up a different instrument; the violin's just not for you!
5 I can't sleep if there's ..... of any kind, so I use ear-plugs.

56.2 **Using the table in B opposite, what sound do you think each of these might make?**

1 A bottle of sparkling mineral water being opened. *hiss*
2 A box of saucepans being dropped down an iron staircase.
3 A mouse moving among dead grass and leaves.
4 A child falling over on a wooden floor.
5 A starting gun for a sporting event.
6 A train passing at high speed a few feet away from you.
7 A slow train passing, heard through the walls of a house.
8 A car coming to a halt very suddenly.

56.3 **Choose the best word from the box to complete each sentence. Put it in the correct form.**

chime	clang	hum	patter	~~rattle~~	ring

1 I woke up when a small earth tremor *rattled* the cups on the table.
2 I can hear my mobile ..... - I think it must be at the bottom of my bag.
3 It's cosy indoors with the rain ..... on the windows.
4 We live in the country but can still always hear a ..... of traffic from the road across the fields.
5 I couldn't sleep last night and heard the clock on the town hall ..... every hour.
6 Joe ..... the metal gate behind him as he left the garden.

56.4 **Pair up the sentences on the left with the ones on the right so they make sense.**

1 I saw a beam of light coming towards me.	b	a Then it died, leaving us in complete darkness.
2 The jewels sparkled in the sunlight.	☐	b It was a police officer holding a flashlamp.
3 The candle began to flicker uncertainly.	☐	c But blacks and greys do suit her.
4 The first rays of the sun shone into the room.	☐	d I'd never seen such a beautiful bracelet.
5 She always wears rather sombre clothes.	☐	e As we got nearer we realised it was a bush.
6 We could see a dim shape in the fog.	☐	f It was clearly time to get up.

56.5 **Which do you think is the correct meaning of the underlined words in these sentences?**

1 Her <u>eyes were shining</u> as she told me her news. a
a looked full of happiness b looked angry c looked afraid
2 Jessica <u>glowed</u> all through her pregnancy. ☐
a looked rather worried b looked pale c looked very happy
3 She <u>beamed</u> at him. ☐
a smiled b shouted c attacked
4 He has a <u>twinkle</u> in his eyes. ☐
a a grain of sand b a sign of humour/enjoyment c a sign of anger

57 Possession and giving

A Possession

All his **possessions** were destroyed in the terrible fire. [everything he owned]
Don't leave any of your **belongings** here; we've had a few thefts recently. [smaller things, e.g. bag, camera, coat; always plural]

Estate in the singular can mean a big area of private land and the buildings on it, or all of someone's wealth upon death.
They live on a **housing estate** / an **estate**. [area containing a large number of houses or apartments built close together at the same time]
She owns a huge **estate** in Scotland. [land, etc.]
After his death, his **estate** was calculated at 10 million euros. [all his wealth]

Property (uncountable) is used in a general sense for houses, land, etc.
He's only 14; he's too young to own **property**.
A **property** (countable) is a building (e.g. house, office block) or land.
She owns some valuable **properties** in the town centre.

B Words for people connected with ownership

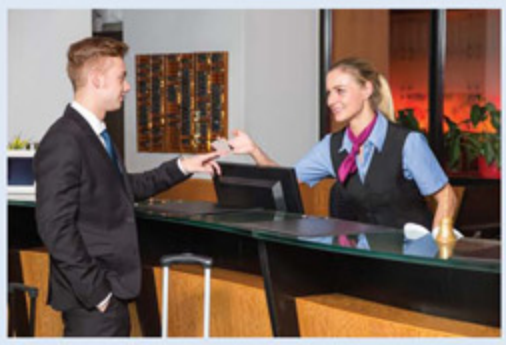
The **proprietor** /prə'praɪətə/ of this restaurant is a friend of mine. (used for shops, businesses, etc.; *fml*; **owner** is less formal)
The **landlord**/**landlady** has put the rent up. [owner of rented property]
Do you own this house? No, we're just **tenants**. [we rent it]
He **inherited** a big house in the country when his parents died. [became the owner after someone's death]

C Giving

The river **provides** the village **with** water / **provides** water **for** the village. (or **supplies**)
Jakes Ltd **supplies** our school **with** paper and other items. (often for 'selling' contexts)
It gives me pleasure to **present** you **with** this gift from us all.
His parents **supported** him while he was at college but now he's independent.
The school restaurant **caters for** 500 people every day. [looks after the needs of]
That uncle of mine that died **left** £3,000 to an animal shelter.
When she died she **donated** all her books to the library. (for large gifts to institutions)
I'm running a marathon next week for a cancer charity. Will you **sponsor** me? [give money if I complete the race]



Would you like to **contribute**/**donate** something to the children's hospital fund?



You've been **allocated** room 24. Here's your key.

D Phrasal verbs connected with giving

When I left the job I had to **hand over** the keys to my office to the new person.
I didn't really want to **let go of** my bike but I had no money so I had to sell it.
The people from the charity **handed out** / **gave out** stickers for everyone to wear. [distributed]
I had a banjo once, but I **gave it away**. [gave it free to someone]
This vase has been **handed down** from generation to generation in my family.

Exercises

57.1 Complete the missing words from A opposite.

1 He became a multi-millionaire and bought a huge e*state* in the country.
2 Some of the p ..... in this street have sold for more than five million euros this year.
3 I left some of my b ..... in the changing room at the gym and they were stolen.
4 On his death, Mr Carson's e ..... was valued at £400,000.
5 She sold all her p ..... and travelled around the world for a year.
6 It's often difficult for young couples to buy p ..... and they have to rent a place instead.

57.2 The verbs in the middle column have been jumbled. Put them in the right sentences.

1	A millionaire	inherited *donated*	his entire library to the school.
2	The director was	supported	the best parking place.
3	My mother's cousin	~~donated~~	me £5,000 in her will.
4	A farmer nearby	catered	us with logs for the fire.
5	When I retired they	left	me with a camera.
6	The restaurant	allocated	for vegetarians.
7	My parents	presented	me when I was out of work.
8	The oldest son	supplied	the house when his father died.

57.3 What questions using words from B and C opposite do you think were asked to get these answers?

1 *Are you the owner/proprietor of this restaurant?*
No, I'm not the owner. I just work here as a waiter.
2 ..... ?
Yes, he became the owner when his aunt died. It's a massive house.
3 ..... ?
OK, I'll give you one euro for every kilometre you run.
4 ..... ?
Yes, that's right. I pay rent every month.
5 ..... ?
Actually, I've already given something. Sorry.
6 ..... ?
No, I'm sorry, we don't. You have to buy your own pens and exercise books.

57.4 The rise and fall of Mr Fatcatt - a sad story. Fill the gaps with suitable words from the opposite page.

Toby Fatcatt began his career by buying old [1] *properties* in the city when prices were low. Soon he was one of the biggest private [2] ..... in the city, with around 1,000 [3] ..... renting houses and flats from him. He was also the [4] ..... of many shops and businesses. He became very rich and bought himself a huge [5] ..... in Scotland, but then there was an economic crisis and he had to sell all his [6] ..... and [7] ..... - everything. He was left with just a few personal [8] ..... and finally died penniless.

57.5 Over to you

Think of something that …

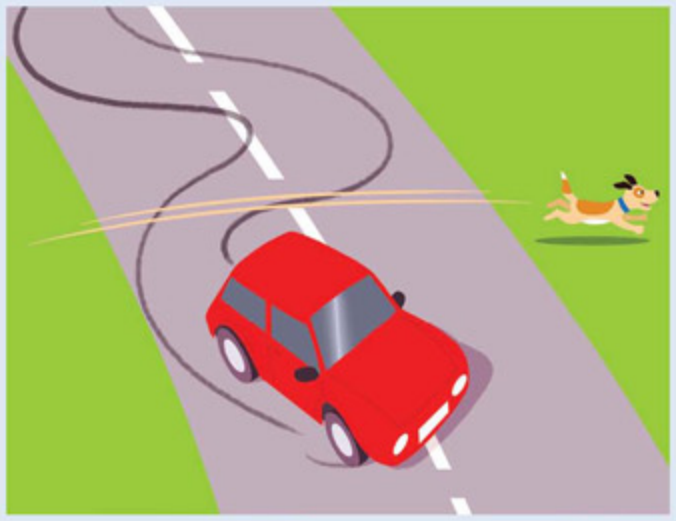
1 you would hand over to a mugger if threatened.
2 has been handed down in your family.
3 you have given away at some time in your life.
4 is often given out in classrooms.
5 you value and would not want to let go of.

58 Movement and speed

A Particular types of movement

Move is the basic verb for all movement, but don't forget it also means 'to move to a new house/flat', e.g. We've **moved**. Do you want our new address?
Cars, lorries, etc. **travel**/**drive** along roads.
Trains **travel** along rails.
Boats/ships **sail** on rivers / across the sea.
Rivers/streams **flow**/**run** through towns/villages.

Things often have particular verbs associated with their types of movement. You should learn these as typical collocations when you meet them, and record them with a phrase or sentence, for example:



The car **swerved** /swɜːvd / to avoid a dog which had run into the road. [moved suddenly to the side]
White clouds **drifted** across the sky. [moved slowly]
The flag **fluttered** in the wind. [moved gently from side to side]
The leaves **stirred** /stɜːd/ in the light breeze. [moved slightly]
The trees **swayed** back and forth as the wind grew stronger. [moved slowly from side to side]

B Verbs to describe fast and slow movement

The traffic was **crawling along** because of the roadworks. [moving very slowly]
Stop **dawdling**! /ˈdɔːdlɪŋ/ We'll be late! [moving more slowly than is necessary]
Suddenly a car came round the bend and **tore along** the road at high speed.
Seconds later, a police car **shot past** after it.
Everyone was **hurrying**/**rushing** to get their shopping done before closing time.
The train was just **creeping along** at about 20 miles per hour. I knew we'd be late. [moving very slowly]
The donkey was **plodding** along the road. [plodding suggests heavy, often tired, movement]
The plane was **cruising** at a height of 30,000 metres. [travelling at a steady speed]

C Nouns to describe speed and their typical contexts

speed is a general word used for vehicles, developments, changes, etc., e.g. We were travelling at high **speed**.
rate is often used in statistical contexts; the rate of increase/decrease, e.g. The birth **rate** is going down.
pace shows how you experience something as happening fast or slow, e.g. The lesson was going at a very slow **pace**.
velocity /vəˈlɒsɪti / is used in technical/scientific contexts, e.g. The **velocity** of a moving object.

Common mistakes

We say ***at*** *a speed/rate/pace*. (NOT ~~in~~ or ~~with a speed/rate/pace~~)
The train was travelling ***at a speed*** *of 120 kph*. (NOT The train was travelling ~~with a speed~~ of 120 kph.)

Exercises

58.1 **Pair up the sentences on the left with the ones on the right so they make sense.**

1 That tree was swaying back and forth in the wind. [c]
2 The cruise liner is leaving tomorrow. [ ]
3 A cat ran out in front of my car. [ ]
4 The most famous river in France is the Seine. [ ]
5 A train came off the rails yesterday. [ ]

a It sails at dawn.
b It flows through the capital city.
c It was moving so much I thought it would break altogether.
d It was travelling at 160 kph at the time.
e I had to swerve hard and nearly ended up in the river.

58.2 **What other things do you think could be described by each verb apart from the contexts given opposite? Use a dictionary, if necessary.**

1 **sway:** a tree, *someone dancing, someone walking on a ship in a rough sea, someone who's drunk*
2 **crawl:** traffic, ...
3 **shoot:** a car, ...
4 **flutter:** a flag, ...
5 **drift:** a cloud, ...

58.3 **Fill the gaps with *speed*, *rate*, *pace* or *velocity*. Use the guidelines opposite to help you.**

1 The *rate* of decline in this species is alarming.
2 I just couldn't stand the ..... of life in the city, so I moved to a small village.
3 The teacher asked the students to calculate the ..... of a series of objects dropped from a specific height.
4 A: What ..... were you doing at the time? B: Oh, about 60 kph, I'd say.
5 The company is showing an impressive ..... of growth.

58.4 **Correct the error in each sentence.**

1 Pierre ~~creeped~~ *crept* down the stairs making as little noise as possible.
2 We were making progress but only in a very slow pace.
3 The baby stired but didn't wake up.
4 The old man swerved a little but didn't fall over.
5 Trains can travel with a much faster speed than buses.

58.5 **Use a dictionary to make notes to help you learn the difference between these near synonyms. Make notes under the headings *usage* and *grammar*, as in the example.**

	usage	grammar
fast quick rapid swift	*e.g. fast car / fast train - refers to speed*	*adjective and adverb - 'she drove fast'*

58.6 Over to you

In what situations might you …

1 tear out of the house?
2 deliberately dawdle?
3 plod along at a steady pace?
4 not even dare to stir?
5 shoot past someone's office/room?
6 creep around the house?

59 Texture, brightness, weight and density

A Texture - how something feels when you touch it

adjective	typical examples
smooth /smuːð/	the paper in this book
polished	varnished wood; a shiny metal surface
silky	silk itself; fine, expensive tights or stockings
slippery	a fish just out of the water
furry /'fɜːri/	a thick sheepskin rug
rough /rʌf/	new, unwashed denim jeans; bark of a tree
coarse /kɔːs/	sand
jagged /'ʤ gɪd/	sharp, irregular edges of broken glass or metal
prickly	a thistle; a cactus; thorns on a rose

Your hair **has a** silky **feel**. This cotton is very smooth **to the touch**. The table had a beautiful polished **surface**. /'sɜːfɪs/ The ground was rough **underfoot**.

B Brightness



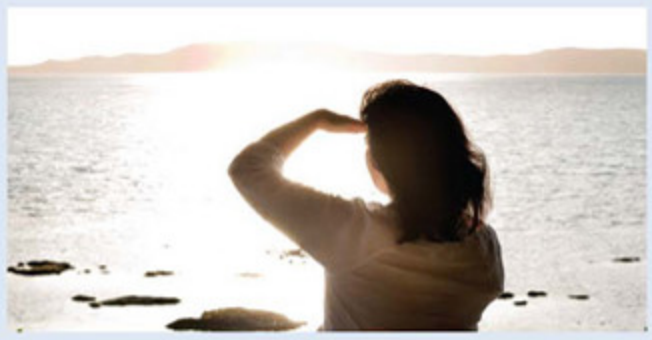
a **shady** corner of the garden



carnival costumes full of **vivid** colours



shiny leather shoes



a **dazzling** light

You wear such **dull** colours - why don't you start wearing **bright** colours for a change?
The light's too **dim** to read in here. We need another lamp.
I wear sunglasses when I drive because of the **glare** of the sun.

C Density and weight

A **solid** ≠ **hollow** object. She has **thick** ≠ **thin**/**fine** hair.
An area with **dense** ≠ **sparse** vegetation.
Your bag's **as light as a feather**! Have you brought enough clothes?
Your bag's **as heavy as lead**! What's in it? Bricks?
This suitcase is very **bulky**/**cumbersome**. /'kʌmbəsəm/ [difficult, big and heavy]

Exercises

59.1 **Which adjectives from A opposite could describe the texture of these things?**

1 A new cotton T-shirt. *smooth*
2 Heavy, stone-ground wholemeal flour. .....
3 A wet bar of soap. .....
4 The branches of a rose bush. .....
5 A gravel pathway. .....
6 The inside of a pair of sheepskin gloves. .....
7 The edge of a piece of broken, rusty metal. .....
8 The surface of a mirror. .....
9 A silk scarf. .....
10 An empty sack. .....

59.2 **Rewrite the sentences. Look at the words in bold and follow the instructions in brackets.**

1 The material **felt** metallic. (change to noun) *The material had a metallic feel.*
2 The cloth was rough when you **touched** it. (change to noun)
.....
3 We sat in a part of the garden where there was **shade**. (change to adjective)
.....
4 Suddenly there was a light which **dazzled** everyone. (change to adjective)
.....
5 The ground was very wet **under our feet**. (change to adverb)
.....
6 My suitcase **weighs very little**. (use *feather*) .....

59.3 **Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.**

1	We walked through the jungle vegetation,	[e]	a which was hollow.
2	We found it inside an old tree,	[ ]	b which was absolutely solid.
3	We loved the new colour,	[ ]	c which was as heavy as lead.
4	We examined the desert vegetation,	[ ]	d which was very vivid.
5	We tried to drill into the rock,	[ ]	e which was very dense.
6	We couldn't lift the box,	[ ]	f which was very sparse.

59.4 **What could you do if ...**

1 your reading lamp was rather dim? *get a brighter one*
2 you were fed up with the dull colour of the walls in your room? .....
3 you found the glare of the sun uncomfortable? .....
4 you wanted your shoes to be shiny? .....
5 your rucksack was too bulky or cumbersome? .....

59.5 **Over to you**

Look round your own home and find ...

1 something soft to the touch.
2 something rough underfoot.
3 something with a polished surface.
4 something furry.
5 something smooth.

60 Success, failure and difficulty

A Succeeding

We **succeeded in** persuad**ing** a lot of people to join our protest. (**in** + *-**ing***)
I **managed** to contact him just before he left his office.
I don't think I can **manage** the whole walk. I think I'll turn back. (**manage**, but not **succeed**; may have a direct object in this meaning)

We've **achieved** /ə ˈtʃiːvd/ / **accomplished** /əˈkɒmplɪʃt/ a great deal in the last year.
(both are used with quantity phrases such as 'a lot' and 'a little'; **accomplish** is rather formal)
The company has **achieved** all its **goals**/**aims**/**targets** for this year. (**achieve** is more common than **accomplish** with nouns expressing **goals** and **ambitions**)
Do you think his plan will **come off**? [succeed; *infml*]

Here is a matrix for some typical collocations with 'succeeding' verbs:

	reach	attain	secure	realise	fulfil	achieve
an ambition		✓		✓	✓	✓
a dream				✓	✓	
an agreement	✓		✓			
an obligation					✓	✓
a target	✓	✓				✓
a compromise	✓					

B Failing and difficulty

Plans and projects sometimes **go wrong** / **backfire**. [don't go as intended]
Companies, clubs and societies often **fold** / **go under** through lack of success. [close down; **go under** is informal]
A plan or project may **falter** /ˈfɒltə/, even if it finally succeeds. [have ups and downs]
All your plans and hard work / efforts may **come to nothing**.
I have great **difficulty** (in) getting up in the morning.
I **find it difficult** to remember the names of everybody in the class. (**hard** can also be used here; it is more informal)
It's hard/**difficult** to hear what she's saying.
I often **have trouble** starting the car on cold mornings. (more informal)
We've **had a lot of bother with** the neighbours lately. (very informal)
Can you **cope with** three more students? They've just arrived. [deal successfully with a difficult situation]
I've got no money and my girlfriend's left me. I need help; I **can't cope** any more.

C Word formation

verb	noun	adjective	adverb
succeed	success	successful	successfully
accomplish	accomplishment	accomplished	-
achieve	achievement	achievable	-
attain	attainment	attainable	-
fulfil	fulfilment	fulfilling	-
harden	hardness	hard	hard

Common mistakes

*Izzy **had great difficulty** finding somewhere to live in London*. (NOT ~~difficulties~~)
*Paul **had considerable success** with his first novel*. (NOT ~~successes~~)

Exercises

60.1 **Choose a suitable verb to fill the gaps. If the exact word in the sentence is not in the vertical column of the matrix on the opposite page, look for something that is close in meaning. More than one verb is often possible.**

1 The management have *reached* a no-strike agreement with the union.
2 Now I've ..... all my family responsibilities, I can retire and travel the world.
3 The school building fund has failed to ..... its target of £250,000.
4 I never thought I would ..... my ambition, but now I have.
5 Very few people ..... all their hopes and dreams in life.
6 We hope the two sides ..... a compromise and avoid war.
7 I'm afraid that little plan of mine didn't ..... off.

60.2 **Fill in the missing word forms where they exist.**

verb	noun	adjective
realise	*realisation*	
	difficulty	
	target	
fail		
	trouble	

60.3 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1 I find *it* very difficult to understand English idioms.
2 She ^ succeeded to rise to the top of her profession.
3 Do you ever have any trouble to use this photocopier? I always seem to.
4 I've accomplished to work quite hard this last month.
5 I'm amazed that you can cope all the work they give you.
6 Did you have many difficulties finding the book in the library?
7 Unfortunately, it seems as if all Johnny's plans have come at nothing.
8 I'm afraid I haven't had any successes in contacting Lara today.

60.4 **In what sorts of situations would you hear the following remarks?**

1 We'll have to get an au pair. I just can't cope.

You would probably hear it from a parent who is finding it too difficult to combine work and family life.

2 I can't believe it — £5,000. The company folded and now I've got nothing to show for it!

3 It went under, I'm afraid, and he's bankrupt now.

4 You can't manage all that. Let me help you.

5 Yes, her plan came off even though the odds were really against her.

60.5 Over to you

What would you do if …

1 you were having a lot of bother with your car?
2 you started a small business but it came to nothing?
3 you couldn't cope with your English studies?

61 Time: connecting words and expressions

A One thing before another

I had written to her **prior to** meeting the committee. (formal/written style)
It was nice to be in Venice. **Previously** I'd only been to Rome. (fairly formal, more informal would be **Before that, I** …)
I was in the office from 2.30. I was out **earlier on**. [before then; fairly informal]
The street is now called Treetop Avenue. **Formerly** it was Hedge Lane. (fairly formal, typically written; used when something has changed its name, state, etc.)
Dinner will be ready in about an hour. **In the meantime / Meanwhile**, relax and have a drink. [between now and the time of the meal]

B Things happening at the same time

She was entering **(at) the very time** / **the very moment** I was leaving. (these two are stronger and more precise than **as** or **just as**)
The two events happened **simultaneously**. [started and ended at exactly the same time]
During the war, she lived in Dublin. **Throughout** the war, they remained in the city.

Language help

During does not specify *how long* within a period of time. **Throughout** means *from the beginning to the end* of a period of time.

C One thing after another

Read this personal statement by someone hoping to work for an international corporation in China. The words in **bold** are rather formal.

Following[1] my first visit to Beijing, I read several books about China and **subsequently**[2] decided to take a six-month course in Mandarin Chinese. I revisited China on several occasions **thereafter**[3] and now feel that I have a good knowledge of the country and its culture.

[1] after [2] at some time after that [3] after finishing the course

Note also *immediate* (adjective), e.g. The government removed the price regulations and the **immediate** result was a 10% price rise. [which happened at once]

D Time when

The moment / **The minute** I saw his face I knew I'd met him before.
I stayed in that hospital **the time (that)** I broke my leg.
I met Paula at Mark's wedding. **On that occasion** she was with a different man. (more formal)

E Non-specific time expressions

We can discuss the budget now. **At a later stage** we can discuss the detailed arrangements.
At some point we will have to replace our computers, but we're OK for the moment.
[at an unspecified time in the future]

Exercises

61.1 **Look at these pages from the personal diary of Laura, a businesswoman who travels a lot, and then do the exercise.**

Mon 12	Paris – day 5 – Pompidou Centre then theatre.
Tue 13	Been away 6 days! Paris OK, but miss home.
Wed 14	Left Paris 10 am. Huge pile of emails waiting!
Thu 15	Manchester, then Glasgow. Met Manuela at Nick's.
Fri 16	Up early. Said goodbye to Nick and left. Saw bad accident on motorway.
Sat 17	Answered all the emails, then felt I could watch TV!
Sun 18	Lots of phone calls - Kate, Ellie and George all in a row! Lazy day!
Notes	Book tickets for Dublin 24th

Fill the gaps with time expressions from A and B opposite. You are given the first letter.

1 P*rior* ..... to going to Manchester, Laura was in Paris.
2 Her next trip after Glasgow is to Dublin on the 24th. I ..... t..... m....., she can relax at home.
3 She was away for a week. S ....., she had lots of emails to deal with.
4 She was in Glasgow on the 15th. E ..... o....., she had been in Manchester.
5 She went to the theatre in Paris on Monday. P ..... t..... that, she had been to the Pompidou Centre.
6 F ..... her visit to Nick, she saw a bad accident on the motorway.
7 On Sunday, she had a lot of phone calls d ..... the day.
8 The m..... she put the phone down it rang again. This time it was George.

61.2 **Rewrite the words in bold using words or phrases from opposite.**

1 I emailed James and got **a reply straight away**. *an immediate reply* .....
2 I will contact you **at a time I can't specify** to arrange to get together to discuss things. .....
3 The two committees were meeting **at exactly the same time**. .....
4 I was living in Budapest **when** I was offered the job in Paris. .....

61.3 **Read the comments and then answer the questions.**

Gunilla 'I was in Oslo throughout the summer. Josep visited me during that time.'

Edward 'I was in Athens for a week, then in Rome for two weeks thereafter.'

Kim 'At the very time I was in Rome, Edward was in Rome.'

Liba 'I was in Athens in October, but I didn't see Edward on that occasion.'

Josep 'I visited Hamburg; at a later stage I went to Berlin.'

1 Which two people were in the same place at the same time? *Kim and Edward* .....
2 Did Liba see Edward when she was in Athens? Yes/No .....
3 Did Gunilla spend part of the summer or all summer in Oslo? .....
4 Where did Josep go first – Berlin or Hamburg? .....
5 How many weeks in total did Edward spend in Athens and Rome? .....
6 Did Josep spend the whole summer in Oslo or probably just part of it? .....

61.4 **Over to you**

Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

1 The moment I wake up, I .....

2 Throughout my childhood I .....

3 I'm doing vocabulary right now. Earlier on, I was .....

4 Prior to going on holiday, I always .....

62 Condition

A Words connecting sentence parts

In addition to *if*, there are several other words and phrases for expressing condition.





1 You can't come in **unless** you have a ticket. [… if you do not have a ticket]

2 You can borrow the bike **on condition that** you return it by five o'clock.

3 **In case of** fire, dial 112. [When there is …; usually seen on notices; you can also say **in the event of**]

4 You can stay, **as**/**so long as** you don't mind sleeping on the sofa. (**as long as** is less formal than **so long as** and less formal and not so strong as **on condition that**)

5 **Provided**/**Providing** you don't mind cats, you can stay with us. (**providing (that)** or **provided (that)** can also be used in examples 2 and 4; they are less formal and not so strong as **on condition that** but stronger and more restricting than **as/so long as**)

Language help

Don't confuse **in case *of*** with **in case**. *Take your umbrella **in case** it rains* means 'It isn't raining but it might rain.'

B Supposing … and What if …

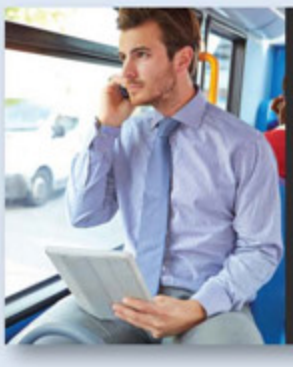
Note the use of **supposing** and **what if** (both usually found in spoken language) for possible situations in the future. **What if** is more direct.

Mick: Ethan's coming tomorrow. He'll help us.

Alice: Supposing / **What if** he doesn't turn up - what shall we do then?

C Conditions with -ever

The ***-ever*** su ix means 'it does not matter which …'. The stress is normally on *ever*.



What's the best way to travel in your country?

However you decide to travel in this country, it'll cost you a lot of money. For example, you'll end up paying at least 70 euros, whichever means of transport you take from the airport to the city centre - train or bus. Public transport is expensive wherever you go here. Whoever wins the next election should try to lower fares.

These sentences can also be expressed using **no matter**. Note the stress.
No matter *how* you decide to travel in this country, it will cost you a lot of money.
No matter *who* wins the next election, they should try to lower fares.

Common mistakes

With the condition phrases in A, B and C the present tense is used in the conditional clause. *Take a jacket in case it gets cold later on*. (NOT Take a jacket in case ~~it will get~~ cold later on.)

D Some nouns which express condition

Certain **conditions** must be met before the peace talks can begin. (rather formal)
A good standard of English is a **prerequisite** /priːˈrekwɪzɪt/ for studying at a British university. [absolutely necessary; very formal] What are the entry **requirements** /rəˈkwaɪəmənts/ for doing a diploma in Management at your college? [o icial conditions; rather formal] I would not move to London **under any circumstances**. (fairly formal)

Exercises

62.1 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word or phrase from A and B opposite.**

1 You can come to the party *as long as* ..... you don't bring that awful friend of yours.
2 ..... emergency in the machine room, sound the alarm and notify the supervisor at once.
3 ..... I hear from you, I'll assume you are coming.
4 A person may take the driving test again ..... they have not already taken a test within the previous 14 days.
5 ..... I lent you my car, would that help?

62.2 **Change the sentences with *-ever* to *no matter*, and vice versa.**

1 Wherever she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.
No matter where she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.
2 If anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, no matter who it is.
3 No matter what I do, I always seem to do the wrong thing.
4 It'll probably have meat in it, whichever dish you choose. They don't cater for vegetarians here.
5 No matter how I do it, that recipe never seems to work.
6 However hard you try, you'll never be able to do it all on your own.

62.3 **The pictures show conditions that must be met to do certain things. Make different sentences using words and phrases from the opposite page.**

EXAMPLE *1 You can have a passenger on a motorbike provided they wear a helmet. / Unless you wear a helmet, you can't ride on a motorbike.*



62.4 Over to you

What would your answers be to these questions?

1 Are there any prerequisites for the job you do or would like to do in the future?
2 Under what circumstances would you move from where you're living at the moment?
3 What are the normal entry requirements for university in your country?
4 On what condition would you lend a friend your house/flat?

63 Cause, reason, purpose and result

A Cause and reason

You probably know how to use words like **because**, **since** and **as** to refer to the **cause** of or **reason** for something. Here are some other ways to express cause and reason:

The collision was **due to** the icy conditions.
The collision **was caused by** ice on the road.
The cause of the collision was ice on the road.
The heavy rain **caused** the river **to** flood.
Owing to the icy conditions, the two cars collided.

Language help

If you use *owing to* with a clause, you must follow it with *the fact that*. In this example, the clause is underlined. ***Owing to the fact that*** *the conditions were icy, the two cars collided.* (NOT ~~Owing to the conditions were icy~~, …)

Here are some other 'cause' words and typical contexts. They are all rather formal, and more suitable for written use.

The rise in prices **sparked (off)** a lot of political protest. (often used for very strong, perhaps violent, reactions to events)
The President's statement **gave rise to** / **provoked** / **generated** a lot of criticism. (slightly less strong than spark (off))
The new law has **brought about** / **led to** great changes in education. (often used for political/social change)
This problem **stems from** the inflation of recent years. (explaining the direct origins of events and states)
The court case **arose from** / **out of** allegations made in a newspaper. (the allegations started the process that led to the court case)

B Reasons for and purposes of doing things

Her **reason for** not going with us was that she had no money. *or* **The reason (why)** she didn't go with us was that … (less formal)
The following sentences are all fairly formal, and more frequent in written English:
I wonder what his **motives** were **in** sending that email? (purpose)
I wonder what **prompted** her to send that message? (reason/cause)
She wrote to the press **with the aim of** exposing the scandal. (purpose)
I've invited you here **with a view to** resolving our differences. (sounds a bit more indirect than **with the aim of**)
He refused to answer **on the grounds that** his lawyer wasn't there. (reason)
The purpose of her visit was to inspect the equipment.

C Results

Most of these expressions are fairly formal, and more frequent in written English:
He did no work. **As a result** / **As a consequence** / **Consequently**, he failed his exams.
The **result**/**consequence** of all these changes is that no one is happy any more.
The examples with **consequence**/**consequently** sound more formal than **result**.

His remarks **resulted in** everyone getting angry. (verb + **in**)
The events had an **outcome** that no one could have predicted. [result of a process or events, or of meetings, discussions, etc.]
The **upshot** of all these problems was that we had to start again. (less formal than outcome) When the election results were announced, chaos **ensued**. (very formal)

Exercises

63.1 **Make two sentences into one using the 'reason and purpose' words in brackets. Look at B opposite if you aren't sure.**

1 There was a controversial decision. She wrote to the local newspaper to protest. (prompt)
The controversial decision prompted her to write to the local newspaper to protest.
2 I didn't contact you. I'd lost your phone number. (reason)
3 I will not sign. This contract is illegal. (grounds)
4 The government passed a new law. It was in order to control prices. (aim)
5 She sent everyone flowers. I wonder why? (motives)
6 The salary was high. She applied for the job. (prompt)

63.2 **Make full sentences using 'cause and reason' words from A opposite.**

1 closure of 20 mines → strikes in coal industry
The closure of 20 mines sparked (off) strikes in the coal industry.
2 The announcement of higher taxes → a strong attack from the opposition
3 The new Act of Parliament → great changes in industry
4 The failure of the electrical system → the train crash
5 A violent storm → the wall collapsed
6 Food shortages → serious riots in several cities
7 The food shortages → bad economic policies

63.3 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

1 My reasons *for* not joining the club are personal.
2 The purpose ..... this pedal is to control the speed.
3 I came here ..... the aim ..... resolving our dispute.
4 His stupidity has resulted ..... everyone having to do more work.
5 All this arose ..... one small mistake we made.
6 It was done ..... a view ..... lowering inflation.
7 That press article has given rise ..... a lot of criticism.

63.4 **Use the pictures to describe the *causes* and *results* of events in different ways.**



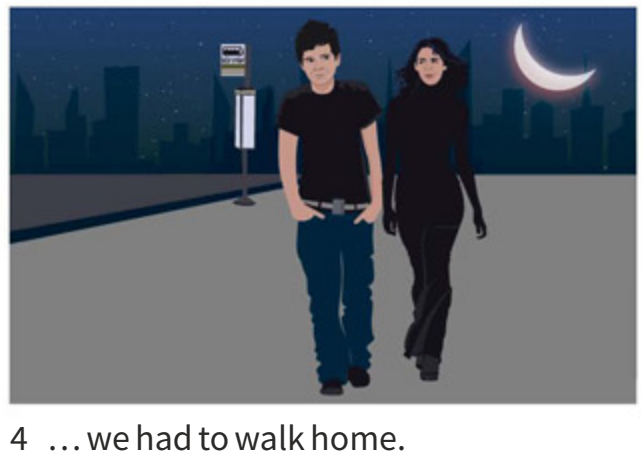
1 … the road was blocked. *There was heavy snow, which caused the road to be blocked.*



2 … everyone got a refund.



3 … the customers got angry.



4 … we had to walk home.

64 Concession and contrast

A Verbs of concession

Concession means accepting one part of an idea or fact, but putting another, more important argument or fact against it.
It can be expressed with a conjunction, e.g. ***Although*** *they were poor, they were independent*, or an adverb, e.g. *He is a bit stupid. He's very kind,* ***nevertheless***, or through verbs like those in the table below.

example	paraphrase and comments
I **acknowledge**/**accept** that he has worked hard but it isn't enough.	I agree but … (**accept** is less formal than **acknowledge**)
I **admit** I was wrong, but I still think we were right to doubt her.	I accept I'm guilty of what I'm accused of.
I **concede** that you are right about the goal, but not the method.	You have won this point in our argument. (rather formal, used in debates/arguments)

B Adverbs and other phrases showing contrast

These examples are fairly informal:
OK, you're sorry. **That's all well and good** / **That's all very well**, but how are you going to pay us back?
You shouldn't seem so surprised. **After all**, I did warn you.
It's all very well saying you love dogs, but who will take it for walks if we *do* get one?
He *is* boring, and he *is* rather cold and unfriendly, but, **for all that**, he *is* your uncle and we should invite him.

These examples are more formal:
Admittedly, she put a lot of effort in, but it was all wasted.
I thought she didn't like me. In fact, **the reverse was true**.
In Europe they use metric measurements. **In contrast**, the USA still uses many non-metric measurements.
It's not actually raining now. **On the other hand**, it may rain later, so take the umbrella.



We're not almost there at all. **Quite the opposite**: we've got five miles to go yet.

C Collocating phrases for contrast

When it comes to politics, Jamie and Isla are **poles apart**.
There's a **world of difference** between being a friend and a lover.
There's a **great divide** between city residents and people who live in the country.
A **yawning gap** divides the rich and poor in many countries.
There's a **huge discrepancy** between his ideals and his actions.

Language help

On the other hand means 'that is true *and* this is also true if we look at it from a different viewpoint', e.g. *Life in the country is nice and quiet.* ***On the other hand****, you have to go a long way to get to the shops*. ***On the contrary*** is a rather formal expression which means 'that is *not* true; the opposite is true', e.g. A: *You must be pleased with your exam results*. B: ***On the contrary****, I thought they would be much better.*

Exercises

64.1 **Rewrite these sentences using the most likely verb from A opposite (there is usually more than one possibility).**

1 I know that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take some responsibility.
I accept that you weren't solely to blame but you must take some responsibility.
2 OK, OK, I was wrong, you were right; he *is* a nice guy.
3 The company is prepared to accept that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability.
4 She didn't deny that we had done all we could, but she was still not content.

64.2 **Complete the sentences with phrases from B opposite.**

1 OK, you've cleaned the kitchen; *that's all very well* ..... , but what about the dining room?

2 No need to panic. ..... , it doesn't start till six.

3 She's bossy and sly, but ..... , she is a friend.

4 ..... saying you'll pay me back soon; when is what I want to know!

5 I know you've been very busy preparing for the school concert. ..... , but you still mustn't neglect your homework.

64.3 **Use the word in brackets in an appropriate collocation to make comments on these statements.**

1 Some people believe in nuclear weapons, some in world disarmament. (divide)
There's a great divide between those who believe in nuclear weapons, and those who believe in world disarmament.
2 She says one thing. She does quite the opposite. (discrepancy)
3 Toby believes in saving as much as possible. Catalina prefers to spend all the money they earn. (poles)
4 Being a student's one thing; being a teacher's quite another. (world)
5 People in the north of the country have a totally different standard of living from those in the south. (gap)

64.4 **Write a sentence before each of these sentences.**

1 *I expected Lydia to be tall and dark.* ..... The reverse was true; she was short, with fair hair.
2 ..... On the other hand, it does have a big garden, so I think we should rent it.
3 ..... On the contrary, the number of cars on the road is increasing yearly.
4 ..... In contrast, in Britain you drive on the lef.
5 ..... Quite the opposite; I feel quite full. I had a huge breakfast.

64.5 **Choose between *on the other hand* and *on the contrary* and explain what the speaker means.**

1 I'm not worried; *on the contrary* ..... , I feel quite calm. *It's not true that I'm worried.*
2 It's expensive, but ..... , we do need it.
3 In some ways I'd like to change my job, but ..... , I'd miss all my colleagues.
4 I don't think he's lazy; ..... , he puts in a great deal of effort.
5 She doesn't speak Japanese well; ..... , she only knows a couple of phrases.
6 This hotel looks very attractive; ..... , it's more expensive than the first one we looked at.

65 Addition

A Expressions for linking sentences/clauses

sentence/clause 1	and	sentence/clause 2
For this job you need a degree.	**In addition**, **Additionally**,	you need at least two years' experience.
Smartphones are becoming more sophisticated.	**Furthermore**, **Moreover**, **What's more***,	they are becoming cheaper.
Children should respect their parents.	**Equally**, **Likewise**,	they should respect their teachers.
We'll have all the stress of going to court and giving evidence.	**On top of (all) that****,	we'll have to pay the lawyers' bills.

* **furthermore** and **moreover** are normally interchangeable, and are both rather formal; **what's more** is informal; **what is more** is rather formal.

** emphatic: used mostly in informal spoken English.

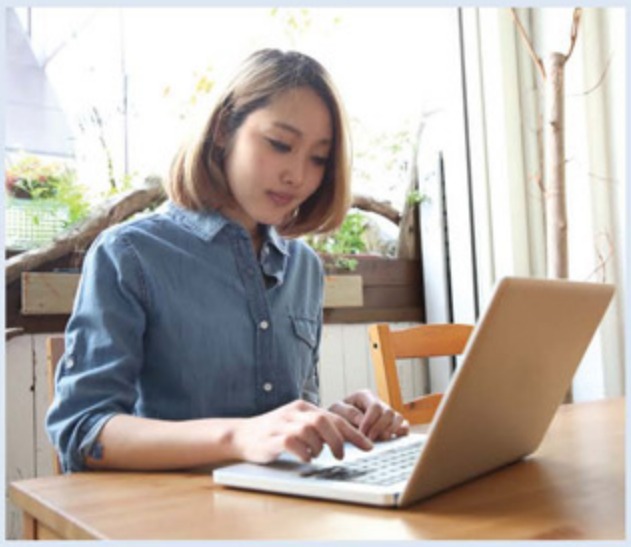
You can also use **plus**, e.g. To keep fit you need a good diet **plus** (you need) regular exercise. (normally used to connect noun phrases, but can connect clauses in informal speech)

B Expressions at the end of sentences/clauses

They sell chairs, tables, beds, **and so on** /et'setrə/. (**and so on** is more informal than **etc**.)
It'll go to the committee, then to the board, then to another committee, **and so on and so forth**. [suggests a long continuation; *infml*]
He was a good sportsman and an excellent musician **into the bargain / to boot**. [emphasises the combination of items; *infml*]

C Expressions that begin, or come in the middle of, sentences/clauses

Further to my telephone call to you yesterday, I am now writing to … (formal opening for a letter or email)
In addition to winning the gold medal, she also broke the world record.
In addition to his BA in History, he has a PhD in Sociology. (fairly formal)
Alongside her full-time job as a dentist, she does voluntary conservation work at weekends.
I have to go to the bank today, **as well as** getting my hair cut.
Besides / **Apart from** having a salary, he also has a private income.
Apart from her many other hobbies, she restores old racing cars.
Jo Evans was there, **along with** / **together with** a few other people who I didn't know.



Language help

The words and expressions in C are followed by nouns, noun phrases, or a verb plus *-ing*, e.g. ***As well as speaking*** *Japanese, she also speaks French.* (NOT ~~As well as she speaks~~ Japanese, she also speaks French.)

Exercises

65.1 **Fill in the gaps in this email with suitable addition words and phrases. Try to do it without looking at the opposite page.**

Dear Mrs Coldstream,

1 *Further to* ..... my letter of 16 March, I should like to give you more information concerning my qualifications and experience. 2 ..... holding a Diploma in Catering, I also have an Advanced Certificate in Hotel Management. The course covered the usual areas: finance, front services, publicity, space allocation 3 ...... I also wish to point out that 4 ..... holding these qualifications, I have now been working in the hotel trade for five years. 5 ....., my experience prior to that was also connected with tourism and hospitality. I hope you will give my application due consideration.

Yours sincerely,

Gemma Weaver

65.2 **Rewrite the sentences using the word or phrase in brackets at the end.**

1 Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers too. (equally) *Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Equally, excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers.*
2 My cousin turned up and some schoolmates of his came with him. (along with)
3 He owns a big chemical factory and he runs a massive oil business in the USA. (as well as)
4 I'm their scientific adviser and act as a consultant to the Managing Director. (addition)
5 It was raining and getting dark. We also had very little petrol left in the tank. (top)
6 He's a very good singer. He has a degree in music. (more)

65.3 **Correct the mistakes in the use of addition words and phrases in these sentences.**

1 I work part-time as well as ~~I am~~ *being* a student, so I have a busy life.
2 Besides to have a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
3 Alongside I have many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
4 In addition has a degree, she also has a diploma.
5 Likewise my father won't agree, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
6 To boot she's a good footballer, she's a good athlete.
7 He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance and so forth so on.

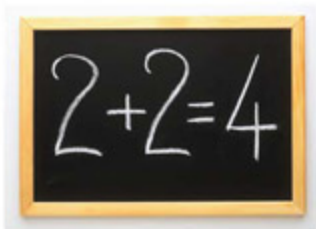
65.4 **What addition words/phrases can you associate with these pictures?**



1 to *boot* .....



2 into the .....



3 in .....



4 on .....

65.5 **Rewrite this text using alternatives to 'and' and the words in bold and as many expressions from the opposite page as possible.**

To become a successful athlete you will need to be fit ~~**and**~~ *plus* you will need to train hard every day. **And** you will need a very special type of determination **and** stamina. **And** you will need support from friends and family, financial support **and other things**. And a good coach will help a great deal, motivating you **and** setting goals for you. **And with all those other things** you will need that indefinable thing: talent.

66 Referring words

A Text-referring words

Text-referring words take their meaning from the surrounding text. For example, this sentence in isolation does not mean much: 'We decided to look at the problem again and try to find a solution.' What problem? The words **problem** and **solution** help organise the argument of the text, but they do not tell us the topic of the text. They refer to something somewhere else.

Here are some examples. The word in bold refers to the underlined words.

Pollution is increasing. The **problem** is getting worse each day.

Should taxes be raised or lowered? This was the biggest **issue** in the election. [topic causing great argument and controversy]

Whether the war could have been avoided is a **question** that interests historians.

Let's discuss crime. That's always an interesting **topic**. [subject to argue about or discuss, e.g. in a debate or in an essay]

Punishment is only one **aspect** of crime. [part of the topic]

B Problem-solution words

Text-referring words are often used with 'problem-solution' types of text, where a problem is presented and ways of solving it are discussed. In the following example, the words in bold concern a problem or a solution. Try to learn these words as a family.

> The **situation** in our cities with regard to traffic is going from bad to worse. Congestion is a daily feature of urban life. The **problem** is now beginning to **affect** our national economies. Unless a new **approach** is found to control traffic, we will never find a **solution** to the **dilemma**.

In the dialogue below, two politicians are arguing. Note how the words in bold refer to parts of the argument.

A: **Your claim** that we're doing nothing to invest in industry is false. We invested £10 billion last year. You've ignored **this fact**.

A: **That argument** is out-of-date in a modern technological society. **Our position** has always been that we should encourage technology.



B: But the investment has all gone to service industries. **The real point** is that we need to invest in our manufacturing industries.

B: But **that view** won't help to reduce unemployment.

The following problem-solution words are grouped in families associated with the underlined key words. The prepositions normally used with them are given in brackets.

situation: state of affairs, **position** (*with regard to*)
problem: difficulty (more formal), **crisis**, **matter**
response (*to*)**: reaction** (*to*), **attitude** (*to*), **approach** (*to*)
solution: answer (*to*), **resolution** (*to*), **key** (*to*), **way out** (*of*)
evaluation (of the solution): **assessment**, **judgment**

> Economically, the government is in a critical **position**. This **state of affairs** is partly a result of the financial **difficulties** currently being experienced globally. Our government's initial **response** to the **situation** was to impose higher taxes. This **approach** has not proved to be the **solution** to the problem. Economists' current **assessment** is that this may in fact be making **matters** worse.

Exercises

66.1 **Match the sentences on the left with a suitable label on the right.**

1 The earth is in orbit around the sun.	[c]	a problem
2 It has proved to be most efficient.	[ ]	b evaluation
3 People are essentially good.	[ ]	c fact
4 I've run out of cash.	[ ]	d belief
5 World poverty and overpopulation.	[ ]	e view
6 They should get married, to my mind.	[ ]	f issue

66.2 **Fill the gaps with an appropriate word to refer to the underlined parts of the sentences.**

1 So you were talking about <u>animal rights</u>? That's quite a big *issue* nowadays.
2 We are <u>running out of funds</u>. How do you propose we should deal with the ..... ?
3 <u>Is there life on other planets</u>? This is a ..... nobody has yet been able to answer.
4 (*teacher to the class*) You can write your essay on '<u>My best holiday ever</u>'. If you don't like that ....., I'll give you another one.
5 She thinks we should all <u>fly around in tiny little helicopters</u>. This ..... to the traffic problem in cities is rather new and unusual. I wonder if it is viable?

66.3 **These newspaper headlines have been separated from their texts. Put each one with a suitable text extract.**

a **NEW APPROACH TO CANCER TREATMENT**
b **NEW ARGUMENT OVER ECONOMIC RECESSION**
c **SCIENTIST REJECTS CLAIMS OVER FAST FOOD**
d **PRIME MINISTER SETS OUT VIEWS ON NATO**
e **SOLUTION TO AGE-OLD MYSTERY IN KENYA**
f **SITUATION IN SAHEL WORSENING DAILY**

1 she said if the world community failed to respond, thousands of children could die [f]

2 tests were being carried out to see if the new drug really did work [ ]

3 there was no proof at all that such things were harmful, and in [ ]

4 the bones proved beyond doubt that human beings had inhabited the region during [ ]

5 also said that he believed that most people had a similar vision of [ ]

6 the Minister denied that this was true and said instead that the evidence pointed to [ ]

66.4 **Over to you**

1 What aspect of your work/studies do you find most interesting?
2 Have you ever faced a dilemma? What was it? What was your response to the situation?
3 Can you think of an argument in favour of single-sex schools and an argument against? What are your own views on this issue?
4 What would you say is the main problem facing your country at the moment? Can you suggest a solution to this problem?

67 Discourse markers in spoken English

A What are discourse markers?

Discourse markers are expressions which organise, comment on or in some way frame what we are saying. An example is **well**.

A: So you live in Boston? B: **Well**, near Boston.

Well here shows that the speaker is aware he/she is changing the direction of the conversation in some way (not giving the expected 'yes' answer). Another example is how teachers use words like **Right** and **OK** to organise what is happening in a classroom:

Right/OK, let's have a look at exercise 3.

B Organising a conversation

Here are some common expressions which organise the different stages of a conversation.

Now, what shall we do next? **So**, would you like to come to the table now, please?

Good, I'll ring you on Thursday, then. **Well then**, what was it you want to talk about?

Now then, I want you to look at this picture. (said by someone in control of the conversation, e.g. a teacher)

Fine/**Great**, let's meet again next week, then, shall we? (often used to close conversations)

So, where was I? I was telling you about my aunt … (often used after an interruption or to come back to the main topic or story)

C Modifying and commenting on what you say

In these mini-dialogues, the expressions in bold *modify* or *comment on* what is being said.

A: It's cold, isn't it?
B: Yeah.
A: **Mind you**, it's November, so it's not surprising. (an afterthought, used like *however*)

A: What's her number?
B: **Let me see**, I have it here somewhere … (a hesitation - gaining time)

A: It's quite a problem …
B: **Listen/Look**, why don't you let me sort it out? (introducing a suggestion / an important point)
A: Would you? Thanks a lot.

A: And he said he was go-
B: Well, that's typical!
A: Hang on / Hold on! Let me tell you what he said! (preventing an interruption)

D Other useful discourse markers

I can't do that. **You see**, I'm not the boss here. (explaining)

He was, **you know, sort of …** just standing there. (hesitation)

He was wearing this, **kind of / like**, cowboy hat. (not sure of the best way to say something)

So that's what we have to do. **Anyway**, I'll ring you tomorrow. (the speaker thinks the topic can change or the conversation can now close)

It rained all day yesterday. **Still / On the other hand**, we can't complain, it was fine all last week. (contrasts two ideas or points)

We shouldn't be too hard on him. **I mean**, he's only a child. (making clear what you mean)

In informal spoken language, people often use the letters of the alphabet (usually no more than a, b and c), to list points they want to make.

STELLA: Why aren't you going this evening?
ADAM: Well, **a)** I haven't got any money, and **b)** it's too far anyway.

It is often difficult to hear these expressions when they are used in rapid speech, but when you are in a position to listen in a relaxed way to someone speaking English (for example, if you are not the person being spoken to, or you are listening to informal speech on radio or TV or in a film), it is easier to concentrate on listening for discourse markers.

Exercises

67.1 **Underline all the discourse markers in this monologue.**

'Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, sort of doing nothing much. Anyway, I looked up and … you see, we have this, kind of, long wall at the end of the garden, and it's … like … a motorway for cats. That big fat black one you saw, well, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, so … where was I? I was looking at that wall, you know, daydreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before. It wasn't an ordinary cat at all … I mean, you'll never believe what it was …'



67.2 **Here are some short dialogues where there are no discourse markers, which would be unusual in real informal conversation. Use markers from the box to fill the gaps. You can use the markers more than once, and more than one answer may be possible.**

good	I mean	hang on	well	let me see	right	still	listen	anyway	you know

1 **A:** Are you a football fan?
B: *Well* , I like it but I wouldn't say I was a fan.

2 **A:** I'll take care of these.
B: ..... .That's everything.
A: ..... , see you next week.
B: ..... . That was a very useful meeting.

3 **A:** It was last Monday. I was coming home from work. I saw this funny old man approaching me. I stopped him …
B: I bet it was Jim Dibble!
A: ..... ! Let me tell you what happened first.

4 **A:** Which number is yours?
B: ..... … it's that one there, yes, that one.

5 **A:** He's looking exhausted.
B: Really?
A: ..... , look at his eyes - he looks so tired.

6 **A:** What do you mean, 'cold'?
B: ..... , she's not friendly, very distant. Last week I gave her a nice smile and she scowled at me.
A: ..... , what do you expect? I've seen the way you smile at people; it puts them off.

7 **A:** Money isn't the most important thing in life.
B: ..... , you can't live without it!
A: I suppose that's true.

8 **A:** What are we going to do?
B: ..... , I've got an idea. Why don't we ask James to help? He's a lawyer.

67.3 **Which discourse marker fits best into the sentences? Rewrite the sentences with the markers included.**

on the other hand	great	a, b, c, etc.	~~anyway~~	look	now

1 Yes, there is a lot of work to do. *Anyway,* I must rush now, I'll call you tomorrow.
2 There are two reasons why I think he's wrong. People don't act like that, and Paul would certainly never act like that.
3 I want you to pay attention, everyone.
4 He loses his temper very quickly. He's got a great sense of humour.
5 You seem a bit sad today. Let me buy lunch for you to cheer you up.
6 A: So I'll pick you up at 6.30. B: See you then.

67.4

Over to you

Choose three expressions that appeal to you from this unit and try to use them in your spoken English. Be careful not to overuse them!

68 Linking words in writing

A Organising a formal text

First / **Firstly** / **First of all**, we must consider …
Next, it is important to remember that …
Secondly and **thirdly** are also used with first/firstly for lists.
Finally/**Lastly**, we should recall that … (coming to the final point on a list)
Turning to the question of foreign policy, … (changing to a new topic)
Leaving aside the question of pollution, there are also other reasons … (the writer will not deal with that question here)
In parenthesis, let us not forget that … (making a point that is a side issue, not part of the main argument)
In summary / **To sum up**, we may state that … (listing / summing up the main points)
In sum, the economic issues are at the centre of this debate … (listing / summing up the main points: much more formal)
In conclusion / **To conclude**, I should like to point out that … (finishing the text)

Common mistakes

Lastly is used when making a final point, e.g. **Lastly**, *let us consider what the future holds*. (NOT ~~At last let us consider~~ …) **At last** means finally after a long time, e.g. *At last I've finished my essay - what a relief!*

B Linking words for explaining, exemplifying, rephrasing, etc.

To learn new words properly a lot of recycling is needed; **in other words** / **that is to say**, you have to study the same words over and over again. (**that is to say** is much more formal)
Some English words are hard to pronounce, **for example** / **for instance**, 'eighth'.
It might be possible, **say**, to include the parents in the discussion. (similar to **for example**; note the commas before and after; **say** is also common in spoken English)
The Parliament has different committees. **Briefly**, these consist of two main types. [the explanation will be short and not comprehensive]
She is, **so to speak** / **as it were**, living in a world of her own. (makes what you are saying sound less definite/precise; **as it were** is more formal)

C Referring backwards and forwards in the text

The following points will be covered in this essay: … (used to introduce a list)
It was stated **above**/**earlier** that the history of the USA is … [earlier in the text]
See page 238 for more information. [go to page 238]
Many writers have claimed this (see **below**). [examples will be given later in the text]
A full list is given **overleaf**. [turn the page and you will find the list]
For **further** details/discussion, see Chapter 4. [more discussion/details]
May I **refer you to** page 3 of my last letter to you? [May I ask you to look at / read; *fml*]
With reference to your email of 12th March, … (often used at the beginning of a letter or email to link it with an earlier text; *fml*)

Exercises

68.1 **Match the linking words on the left with the appropriate function on the right.**

1 Leaving aside …	[c]	a change the topic
2 In parenthesis, …	[ ]	b read something earlier in the text
3 Turning to …	[ ]	c this will not be discussed
4 In conclusion, …	[ ]	d this document is about another one
5 With reference to …	[ ]	e to finish off
6 See above …	[ ]	f as an aside / as a secondary issue

68.2 **Fill the gaps with typical linking words or phrases used in writing. The first letter of each phrase/word is given.**

1 *Firstly* , it is important to understand why people commit crimes; [2]i ..... , what are the motives which make people do things they would never normally do? [3]F ..... , a young man steals clothes from a shop - does he do it because it is an exciting risk? [4]N ..... , it is essential to consider whether punishment makes any difference, or is it just, [5]a ..... , a kind of revenge? [6]L ..... , how can we help victims of crime? [7]I ..... , how can we get to the roots of the problem, rather than just attacking the symptoms?

68.3 **Which linking word or phrase(s) …**

1 is based on the verb 'to say'? *say (meaning 'for example')*
2 is based on the verb 'to follow'? .....
3 contain the word/syllable 'sum'? (*three answers*) .....
4 is a form of the word 'far'? .....
5 contains something you find on trees? .....

68.4 **Write a short formal email to the Editor of a newspaper about a report in the paper the previous week that a local hospital is going to close. You think the hospital should not close because:**

- The nearest other hospital is 50 kilometres away.
- 200 people work at the hospital; they will lose their jobs.
- The hospital makes an important contribution to the local economy.
- It is the only hospital in the region with a special cancer unit.
- It is being closed for political reasons, not genuine economic ones.

Try to include as many as possible of these linking words and phrases:

with reference to firstly, secondly, thirdly, etc.
leaving aside the following to sum up
that is to say finally

Dear Editor,

Yours sincerely,



69 Talking and communicating

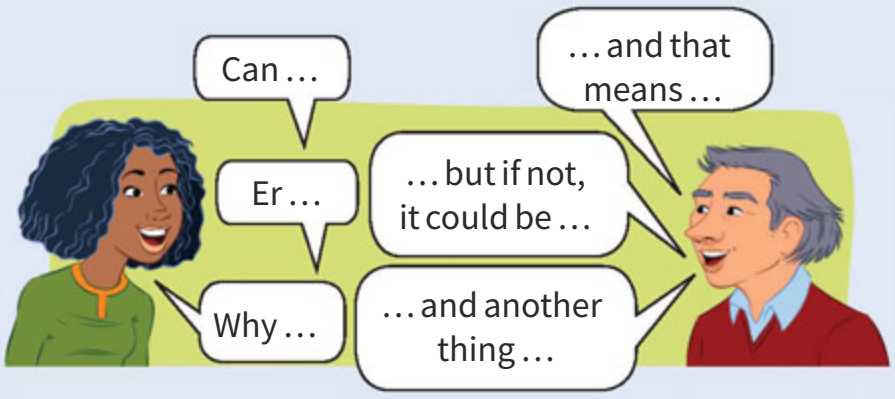
A Idioms connected with communication problems



They're **talking at cross-purposes**. [talking about different things without realising it]



He's got **the wrong end of the stick**. [not understood something in the correct way]



She **can't get a word in edgeways** /ed͡ʒweɪz/. [doesn't get a chance to speak because others are talking so much]



He **can't make head or tail of** what she's saying. [cannot understand at all]

B Good talk, bad talk

The boss always **talks down** to us. [talks as if we were inferior]
My workmates are always **talking behind my back**. [saying negative things about me when I'm not there]
It was just **small talk**, nothing more, I promise. [purely social talk, nothing serious]
Let's sit somewhere else; they always **talk shop** over lunch, and it bores me rigid. [talk about work]
Hey! Your new friend's become a real **talking point** among the staff! Did you know? [subject that everyone wants to talk about]
It's gone too far this time. I shall have to **give him a talking to**. [reproach/scold him / tell him off]

C Talk in discussions, meetings, etc.



[1] start the discussion [2] say it in few words [3] come to the important part of the matter
[4] say exactly what I think [5] finish the discussion [6] says intelligent, reasonable things
[7] says stupid things [8] says things in a long, indirect way

Exercises

69.1 Look at these dialogues and comment on them.

1 PAUL: £98 for a meal! That's outrageous!
EMMA: Not the meal, you idiot! The room!
Emma and Paul seem to be *talking at cross-purposes*.

2 JO: So that's what I'm going to do, take it all away.
MEENA: What about -
JO: And if they don't like it they can just go and do what they like.
MEENA: If she -
JO: Not that I have to consult them, anyway; I'm in charge round here.
It seems that Meena can't get .....

3 VOLODYA: I got very upset when you said I was childish.
GINA: I didn't! I just said you seemed to get on very well with the children. Honestly.
VOLODYA: Oh, I see. Oh, sorry.
It seems that Volodya got the .....

4 DAN: So, area-wise the down-matching sales profile commitment would seem to be high-staked on double-par.
KIM: Eh? Could you say that again? You've got me there.
It seems that Kim can't ..... what Dan is saying.

5 ALI: I don't expect someone with your intelligence to understand this document.
JUAN: Oh.
Ali seems to be talking ..... to Juan.

69.2 What idioms opposite do these drawings represent?



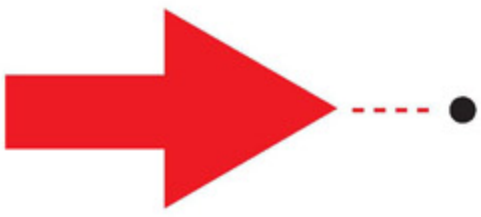
1 *wrap up the* ..... discussion



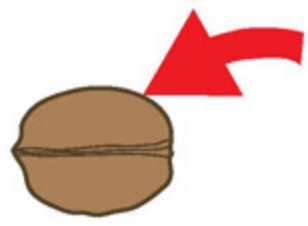
2 talk .....



3 start .....



4 get to / come to .....



5 to put .....



6 get hold of .....

69.3 Fill the gaps to complete the sentences.

1 She is very direct and always *speaks* ..... her mind.
2 He gets bored quickly with small ..... and always wants to get down to serious matters.
3 The boss gave me a real ..... to after that stupid mistake I made.
4 You're behind the times! George's girlfriend was *last* week's ..... point.
5 Paula's uncle is so long- ..... - it takes him ten minutes to make a point that anyone else could make in 30 seconds.
6 It was such a relief when James got up to speak - at last someone was talking ..... .
7 I hate going out with my boyfriend and his work colleagues - they spend all evening talking ..... .
8 You should tell him what you think to his face rather than talking behind his ..... .

70 Suffixes

A Common noun suffixes

-er / ə / is used for the *person* who does an activity, e.g. writ**er**, paint**er**, work**er**, shopp**er**, teach**er**. You can use **-er** with a wide range of verbs to make them into nouns.
Sometimes the **-er** suffix is written as **-or** (it is still pronounced / ə /). It is worth making a special list of these words as you meet them, e.g. act**or**, don**or** [person who donates something], operat**or**, sail**or**, supervis**or** [person whose job is to make sure that other people do their jobs correctly, safely, etc.].
-er/**-or** are also used for *things* which do a particular job, e.g. pencil sharpen**er**, bottle open**er**, grat**er**, project**or**, stapl**er**, coat hang**er**.
-er and **-ee** (pronounced /i ː/) can contrast with each other meaning 'person who does something' (**-er**) and 'person who receives or experiences the action' (**-ee**), e.g. employ**er**/employ**ee** /emplɔɪˈjiː/, send**er**, address**ee**, pay**ee** (e.g. of a sum of money).
-tion/-sion/-ion are used to form nouns from verbs, e.g. complicat**ion**, pollut**ion**, reduct**ion**, alterat**ion**, donat**ion**, promot**ion**, admiss**ion**, act**ion**.
-ist [a person] and **-ism** [an activity or ideology] are used for people's politics, beliefs and ideologies, and sometimes their profession (compare with **-er/-or** professions above), e.g. Marx**ist**, typ**ist**, physic**ist**, terror**ist**, Buddh**ism**, journal**ism**.
-ist is also often used for people who play musical instruments, e.g. pian**ist**, violin**ist**, cell**ist**.
-ness is used to make nouns from adjectives, e.g. good**ness**, readi**ness**, forgetful**ness**, happi**ness**, sad**ness**, weak**ness**. Note what happens to adjectives that end in **-y**.

B Adjective suffixes

-able/**-ible** / əbl/ with verbs means 'can be done', e.g.
drink**able** wash**able** read**able** forgiv**able** ed**ible** [can be eaten] flex**ible** [can be bent]

C Verbs

-ise (or **-ize**, which is more common in American English) forms verbs from adjectives, e.g. modern**ise** [make modern], commercial**ise**, industrial**ise**, computer**ise**.

D Other suffixes that can help you recognise the word class

-ment: (nouns) excitement, enjoyment, replacement [the act of putting sb or sth in the place of sb or sth else]
-ity: (nouns) flexibility [ability to change easily according to the situation], productivity, scarcity
-hood: (abstract nouns, especially family terms) childhood, motherhood, brotherhood
-ship: (abstract nouns, especially status) friendship, partnership, membership
-ive: (adjectives) active, passive (in language, the passive is when the receiver of an action becomes the subject, e.g. *The bank was robbed*), productive [producing a positive large amount of something]
-al: (adjectives) brutal, legal [related to or which follows the law], (nouns) refusal, arrival
-ous: (adjectives) delicious, outrageous [shocking and morally unacceptable], furious [very angry]
-ful: (adjectives) hopeful, useful, forgetful
-less: (adjectives) useless, harmless [which cannot hurt or damage anyone or anything], homeless
-ify: (verbs) beautify, purify, terrify [cause someone to be extremely afraid]

The informal suffix **-ish** can be added to most common adjectives, ages and times to make them less precise, e.g. She's thirty**ish**. He has redd**ish** hair. Come about eight**ish**.

Language help

Adding a suffix can sometimes change the stress in a word. Be sure to check in a dictionary.
Examples:
flexible → flexi**bil**ity pro**duct**ive → product**iv**ity pi**an**o → **pi**anist

Exercises

70.1 **These pictures show objects ending in *-er/-or*. Can you name them?**







1 *stapler* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

70.2 **Do these words mean a thing or a person, or can they mean both? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 a cooker *thing* 3 a ticket holder ..... 5 a cleaner ..... 7 a drinker .....
2 a grater ..... 4 an MP3 player ..... 6 a smoker ..... 8 an advisor .....

70.3 **Use the *-er/-or*, *-ee* and *-ist* suffixes to make the names of the following. If you need to use a dictionary, try looking up the words in bold.**

1 A person who plays jazz on the **piano**. *a jazz pianist*
2 A thing that **wipes** rain off your car windscreen.
3 A person who plays classical **violin**.
4 A person who takes professional **photographs**.
5 A person who **acts** in amateur theatre.
6 A person to whom a sum of money is **paid**.
7 A machine for **washing** dishes.
8 A person who **donates** their organs upon their death.
9 A person to whom a letter is **addressed**.

70.4 **Rewrite the underlined parts of the sentences using a suffix from the opposite page and making any spelling changes needed.**

1 Most of his crimes can be <u>forgiven</u>. Most of his crimes are *forgivable*.
2 The Club refuses to <u>admit</u> anyone not wearing shoes. The Club refuses ..... to anyone not wearing shoes.
3 Her only fault is that she is <u>lazy</u>. Her only fault is .....
4 This firm has <u>produced</u> a lot recently. This firm has been very ..... recently.
5 I found the book very <u>easy and pleasant to read</u>. I found the book very .....
6 I have lovely memories of <u>when I was a child</u>. I have lovely memories of my .....
7 You <u>can't wash</u> that jacket. That jacket isn't .....
8 The most important thing in life is <u>having friends</u>. The most important thing in life is .....

70.5 **Complete the table with the different parts of speech. Do not fill the shaded boxes.**

noun	verb	adjective
	eat	*edible*
fury		
		beautiful
		scarce
	refuse	
		modern
	forget	
	act	

70.6 **Over to you**

List six jobs you would like to have. How many different suffixes are there in your list? Do any of the job names not have a suffix (e.g. pilot, film star)?

71 Prefixes

A Negative prefixes on adjectives

Prefixes are often used to give adjectives a negative or an opposite meaning. For example, fair/**un**fair, experienced/**in**experienced and similar/**dis**similar are opposites. Other examples are '**un**natural', '**in**edible', '**dis**organised'. Unfortunately, there is no easy way of knowing which prefix any adjective will use to form its opposite.

in- becomes **im-** before a root beginning with 'm' or 'p', e.g. **im**mature, **im**patient, **im**moral, **im**possible, **im**probable. Similarly **in-** becomes **ir-** before a word beginning with 'r', e.g. **ir**regular, **ir**responsible, **ir**replaceable, and **il-** before a word beginning with 'l', e.g. **il**legal, **il**legible, **il**literate.

Language help

The prefix **in-** (and its variations) does not always have a negative meaning - often it gives the idea of inside or into, e.g. **in**ternal, **im**port, **in**sert, **in**come.

B Negative prefixes on verbs

The prefixes **un-** and **dis-** can also form the opposites of verbs, e.g. tie/**un**tie, appear/**dis**appear. These prefixes are used to reverse the action of the verb. Here are some more examples: **dis**agree, **dis**approve, **dis**believe, **dis**connect, **dis**courage, **dis**like, **dis**prove, **dis**qualify, **un**bend, **un**do, **un**dress, **un**fold, **un**load, **un**lock, **un**veil, **un**wrap, **un**zip.

C Other common prefixes

Some words with prefixes use a hyphen. Check in a dictionary if you're not sure.

prefix	meaning	examples
anti	against	anti-war antisocial antibiotic antiseptic
auto	of or by oneself	autograph auto-pilot autobiography
bi	two/twice	bicycle bilateral biannual bilingual
ex	former	ex-wife ex-smoker ex-boss
ex	out of	extract exhale excommunicate
micro	small	microbiology microchip microscopic microwave
mis	badly/wrongly	misunderstand mistranslate mislead
mono	one/single	monolingual monologue monogamous
multi	many	multinational multimedia multi-purpose
over	too much	overdo overtired oversleep overeat
post	after	post-war postgraduate post-impressionist
pre	before	preconceived pre-war pre-judge
pro	in favour of	pro-government pro-revolutionary
pseudo	false	pseudo-scientific pseudo-intellectual
re	again/back	rewrite regain rearrange repay replace renew
semi	half	semi-circular semi-final semi-detached
sub	under	subway submarine subdivision
under	not enough	underworked underused undercooked

Exercises

71.1 **Which negative adjective fits each of the following definitions?**

1 *unfair* means not being fair or right
2 ..... means impossible to eat.
3 ..... means unable to read or write.
4 ..... means not being well organised.
5 ..... means not having much sense of responsibility.
6 ..... means unable to be replaced.

71.2 **Use the word in brackets to complete the sentences. Add the necessary prefix and put the word in the correct form.**

1 The runner was *disqualified* after a blood test. (qualify)
2 Children (and adults) love ..... parcels at Christmas time. (wrap)
3 I almost always find that I ..... with his opinion. (agree)
4 I'm sure he's lying but it's going to be hard to ..... his story. (prove)
5 After a brief speech the President ..... the new statue. (veil)
6 It took the removal men an hour ..... our things from the van. (load)
7 His phone was ..... because he didn't pay his last bill. (connect)
8 Hannah ..... the letter and began to read it. (fold)

71.3 **Answer the following questions with words from the table opposite.**

1 What kind of oven cooks things particularly fast? *microwave*
2 How can you describe a cream, for example, that helps prevent infection? .....
3 What kind of company has branches in many countries? .....
4 How are aeroplanes often flown for easy stretches of a flight? on .....
5 What is a student who is studying for a second degree? .....
6 What word means 'underground railway' in the US and 'underground passage' in the UK? .....

71.4 **Write the opposites of the words underlined. Not all the words you need are on the opposite page. Use a dictionary to help you.**

1 He's a very <u>honest</u> man. *dishonest*
2 I'm sure she's <u>discreet</u>. .....
3 I always find him very <u>sensitive</u>. .....
4 It's a <u>convincing</u> argument. .....
5 That's a very <u>relevant</u> point. .....
6 She's always <u>obedient</u>. .....
7 She's <u>employed</u>. .....
8 He's very <u>efficient</u>. .....
9 The door is <u>locked</u>. .....
10 He seems <u>grateful</u> for our help. .....
11 I'm sure she's <u>loyal</u> to the firm. .....
12 He's a <u>tolerant</u> person. .....

71.5 **Using the table opposite, construct words or phrases to replace the underlined words.**

1 He's <u>in favour of the American approach</u>. *pro-American*
2 The BBC tries to avoid <u>pronouncing</u> foreign words <u>incorrectly</u>. .....
3 Most people say they <u>have to work too hard but are paid too little</u>. .....
4 Dan says that economics is <u>not really a science even if it claims to be one</u>. .....
5 She's still on good terms with <u>the man who used to be her husband</u>. .....
6 He made a mistake in the calculation and had to <u>do it again</u>. .....

72 Roots

A Verbs based on Latin words

Many words in English are formed from Latin roots. These words are often considered fairly formal in English. Here are some examples of the more common Latin roots, with some of the English verbs derived from them.

DUC, DUCT lead

He **conducted** the orchestra with great vigour. [led]
Nothing would **induce** me to join their organisation. [persuade / lead]
The railway goes over a high **viaduct**. [a high bridge across a river or valley]

PONE, POSE place, put

The meeting has been **postponed** until next week. [put off to a later date]
The President was **deposed** by his own son. [put out of office]
The government have **imposed** a sizeable tax increase. [put into force]
Beethoven **composed** some beautiful pieces of music. [created, put together]
She **deposited** some money in her bank account. [placed, put in]

PORT carry, take

How are you going to **transport** your things to the States? [send across]
Britain **imports** cotton and **exports** wool. [buys in] [sells out]
Our opinions are **supported** by a considerable amount of research. [held up / backed]
Foreigners who commit crimes are usually **deported**. [taken/sent away to another country]

PRESS press, push

She was **impressed** by his presentation. [filled with admiration and respect]
This weather **depresses** me. [fills me with miserable feelings]
She always **expresses** herself very articulately. [puts her thoughts into words]

SPECT see, look

You should **respect** your parents / the laws of a country. [look up to]
The police officer **inspected** the mysterious package. [looked into / examined]
Many pioneers travelled west in America to **prospect** for gold. [look for / search]

VERT turn

I tried the new make of coffee but I soon **reverted** to my old favourite brand. [went back]
Can you **convert** this document to a pdf? [change from one form to another]
The police **diverted** the traffic because there was a demonstration. [sent it a different way]

B Nouns based on Latin words

The examples above are of verbs only. Note that for all the verbs listed, there is usually at least one noun, sometimes a different one for a person and an idea. Here are some examples.

verb	person noun	abstract noun
inspect	inspector	inspection
advertise	advertiser	advertisement
deport	deportee	deportation
introduce	introducer	introduction
oppress	oppressor	oppression
compose	composer	composition

Exercises

72.1 **Complete the table with other forms of some of the words presented in B opposite. Use a dictionary if necessary. Do not fill the shaded boxes.**

verb	person noun	abstract noun
convert		*conversion*
conduct		
impress		
support		
compress		

72.2 **Fill the gaps in the sentences below using words based on the root given in brackets at the end of the sentence.**

1 The bad news *depressed* everyone. (PRESS)
2 He was ..... from the USA for not having a visa. (PORT)
3 The magazine seems to have nothing in it but ..... for cosmetics. (VERT)
4 The new manager ..... a lot of new rules on the staff when she took over. (POSE)
5 The tax ..... wrote to tell me I owed a lot of money. (SPECT)
6 Because of the flood, the traffic was ..... and we had to drive a long way. (VERT)
7 Thank you for ..... me to Dino last week. (DUC)
8 Tchaikovsky ..... some wonderful ballet music. (POSE)
9 Grey, wet weather always ..... me. I love the sun. (PRESS)
10 I think we should ..... our tennis game till tomorrow. It's going to rain. (PONE)

72.3 **Can you work out the meanings of the underlined words in the sentences below? To help you, here are the meanings of the main Latin prefixes:**

intro: ***within, inward***	**o, ob:** ***against***	**in, im:** ***in, into***	**re:** ***again, back***
de: ***down, from***	**ex:** ***out***	**sub:** ***under***	**trans:** ***across***

1 She's a very <u>introspective</u> person and her husband's also a quiet, thoughtful person.
thinks privately about her own thoughts and feelings instead of talking about them to others
2 He always seems to <u>oppose</u> everything I suggest. Why can't he agree sometimes?
3 I don't think it's healthy to <u>repress</u> your emotions too much. You should just behave naturally.
4 Perhaps you can <u>deduce</u> what the word means from the way it's formed. Otherwise, use a dictionary.
5 The documentary <u>exposed</u> corruption in high places. Now everyone knows the truth.
6 She just thought he looked so funny. She tried hard to <u>suppress</u> a laugh but couldn't.

72.4 **Below are some words based on Latin roots and their two-part verb equivalents. Match each word with its synonym. Which in each pair is more formal?**

support *hold up* postpone ..... oppose ..... inspect ..... deposit ..... divert .....

put off	look at	~~hold up~~	turn away	go against	put down

72.5 **Over to you**

Choose any four words from A opposite. Write sentences which will help you to remember their meanings.

73 Abstract nouns

A What are abstract nouns?

An abstract noun represents an idea, experience or quality rather than an object that you can touch. For example, **advice**, **happiness**, **intention** and **(in)justice** are abstract nouns but *pen*, *bed* and *trousers* are not.

B Suffixes in abstract nouns

Certain suffixes (see Unit 70) are used frequently in abstract nouns. The most common are **-ment**, **-ion**, **-ness** and **-ity**. The suffix **-ion** sometimes becomes **-tion**, **-sion**, **-ation** or **-ition**. The suffixes **-ment** and **-ion** are usually used to make verbs into abstract nouns. The suffixes **-ness** and **-ity** are added to adjectives.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns using those suffixes.

achievement	affection	carelessness	activity
adjustment	collection	consciousness	authority
amazement	combination	eagerness	creativity
disagreement	expectation	friendliness	curiosity
improvement	frustration	kindness	generosity
investment	limitation	laziness	hostility
replacement	recession	politeness	popularity
retirement	reduction	weakness	sensitivity

C Less common suffixes forming abstract nouns

-ship, **-dom**, **-th** and **-hood**

The suffixes **-ship** and **-hood** are usually added to other nouns to form abstract nouns. The suffix **-th** is added to an adjective to form an abstract noun and **-dom** can combine with either a noun or an adjective.

Here are some examples of abstract nouns using those suffixes.

boredom	breadth	adulthood
freedom	depth	brotherhood
kingdom	length	childhood
martyrdom	strength	motherhood
stardom	warmth	neighbourhood
wisdom	width	(wo)manhood

When he left school, Rolf trained as an electrician with a large company. There were two other boys in a similar position and he enjoyed their **companionship**. They developed such a good **relationship** that, once they'd completed their **apprenticeship**, they decided to go into **partnership** together. Now they have set up a business under joint **ownership**. They have taken out **membership** of the Association of Electricians and are beginning to attract a great deal of work.



D Abstract nouns with no suffix

anger	belief	calm	chance
faith	fear	humour	idea
luck	principle	rage	reason
sense	sight	speed	thought

Common mistakes

The definite article is not normally used before an abstract noun, e.g. *Love is blind.* (NOT ~~The~~ love is blind.) *I can resist everything except temptation.* (NOT I can resist everything except ~~the~~ temptation.)

Exercises

73.1 **What is the abstract noun related to each of the following adjectives?**

1 friendly *friendliness*
2 amazed .....
3 frustrating .....
4 kind .....
5 hostile .....
6 strong .....
7 angry .....
8 generous .....
9 polite .....
10 happy .....
11 popular .....
12 weak .....
13 wise .....
14 reasonable .....
15 wide .....

73.2 **Which verbs are related to these abstract nouns? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 collection *collect*
2 recession .....
3 belief .....
4 relationship .....
5 strength .....
6 boredom .....
7 activity .....
8 sight .....
9 production .....
10 ownership .....
11 expectation .....
12 adjustment .....

73.3 **Find a synonym with the suffix in brackets for each of the following nouns. Use a thesaurus if necessary.**

1 animosity (-ity) *hostility*
2 astonishment (-ment) .....
3 inquisitiveness (-ity) .....
4 fraternity (-hood) .....
5 possibility (no suffix) .....
6 substitution (-ment) .....
7 fame (-dom) .....
8 decrease (-tion) .....
9 community (-hood) .....
10 vision (no suffix) .....
11 liberty (-dom) .....
12 fury (no suffix) .....
13 wealth (-ity) .....
14 maternity (-hood) .....
15 possession (-ship) .....

73.4 **Complete each of the quotations with one of the words in the box.**

imitation	advice	injustice	kingdom	darkness

1 *Imitation* is the highest form of flattery.

2 Do not ask ..... of the ignorant.

3 Better to suffer ..... than to commit it.

4 Better to light a candle than to curse the ..... .

5 It's easy to govern a ..... but difficult to rule one's family.





73.5 **Over to you**

Write your own quotations to describe the following abstract nouns. Perhaps you know a saying in your own language that you could translate into English?

1 freedom .....
2 love .....
3 life .....
4 curiosity .....
5 imagination .....

74 Compound adjectives

A Form and meaning

A compound adjective has two parts. It is usually written with a hyphen, e.g. **well-dressed, never-ending**, **sky-blue**. Its meaning is usually clear from the combined words. The second part of the adjective is often a present participle (ending in *-ing*) or past participle (ending in *-ed*, except for irregular verbs).

Language help

Some compound adjectives use a hyphen before a noun but not after a verb (e.g. *a well-dressed man* but *He is always well dressed*).

B Personal appearance

A number of compound adjectives describe personal appearance. Here is a rather **far-fetched** description of a person starting from the head down. [hard to believe]

Tom was a **curly-haired**, **suntanned**, **blue-eyed**, **rosy-cheeked**, **thin-lipped**, **broad-shouldered**, **left-handed**, **long-legged** young man, wearing an **open-necked** shirt, **brand-new**, **tight-fitting** jeans and **open-toed** sandals.



C Personality and character

Other compound adjectives describe a person's character.

Melissa was **absent-minded** [forgetful], **easy-going** [relaxed], **good-tempered** [cheerful], **warm-hearted** [kind] and **quick-witted** [quick-thinking/sharp], if perhaps a little **big-headed** [proud of herself], **two-faced** [not sincere], **self-centred** [always thinking about herself instead of others] and **stuck-up** [thinks she's better than other people (informal)] at times.

D Prepositions and particles

Another special group of compound adjectives has a preposition or particle in its second part.
The workers' declaration of an **all-out** strike forced management to improve conditions. [total]
Once there were fields here but now it's a totally **built-up** area.
That student's parents are very **well-off** [rich] but they don't give him much money and he is always complaining of being **hard-up**. [poor]
I love these shoes and, although they're **worn-out**, I can't throw them away.
This area was once prosperous but it now looks very **run-down**. [in a very bad condition]

E Collocations

Here are some other compound adjectives with typical noun collocations.

air-conditioned rooms **bullet-proof** windows on the President's car **business-class** ticket **cut-price** goods in the sales **duty-free** items **handmade** furniture **interest-free** credit **last-minute** revision for an exam **long-distance** lorry driver **long-standing** relationship **off-peak** train travel [at a time which is less busy] **part-time** job **so-called** expert **sugar-free** diet **time-consuming** writing of reports **top-secret** information **world-famous** film star

F Changing compound adjectives

You can vary the compound adjectives listed by changing one part of the adjective.
For example, **curly-haired**, **long-haired**, **red-haired** and **wavy-haired**; **first-hand** (knowledge), **first-class** (ticket) and **first-born** (child).

Exercises

74.1 What compound adjectives from the opposite page can describe …

1 a problem that never ends? a(n) *never-ending* problem
2 a shirt whose neck is open and which fits tightly? a(n) ..... , ... shirt
3 a girl who has long legs and brown eyes? a(n) ..... , ... girl
4 very new sandals that have open toes? ..... , ... sandals
5 a boy who dresses well and is brown from the sun? a(n) ..... , ... boy
6 a person who is very relaxed and kind? a(n) ..... , ... person
7 a boy who has curly hair and is sharp? a(n) ..... , ... boy
8 a story that is difficult to believe? a(n) ..... story

74.2 Fill the gaps with the words from the box to form new compound adjectives. Use a dictionary if necessary.

tight	~~blue~~	man	broad	brown
bullet	fire	water	loose	green
hand	sugar	second	narrow	business
right	home	absent	duty	left

1 *blue* .....
..... -eyed
.....
2 .....
..... -proof
.....
3 .....
..... -class
4 .....
..... -minded
.....
5 .....
..... -made
.....
6 .....
..... -free
7 .....
..... -fitting
8 .....
..... -handed

74.3 Complete the sentences using compound adjectives from D and E opposite.

1 It was an old, run- *down* hotel that needed modernising. None of the rooms were air-..... and the so- ..... restaurant was just a coffee bar. Our room had an old, ...-out carpet that was dirty.
2 It's a very .....-up coast, with hotels and villas everywhere.
3 We managed to get a .....-minute booking for a Mediterranean cruise.
4 Off-..... train travel is much cheaper than travelling at busy times, but long-..... travel by train can sometimes be more expensive than flying.
5 The route of the President's drive to Parliament was ..... secret and he was driven in a bullet-..... limousine.
6 The workers went on .....-out strike over a long- ..... pay dispute and the airport was closed for three days.
7 She used to be quite well- ..... but she lost a lot of money and now she has a ..... -up look about her. She got a part- ..... job to help pay the bills.
8 She has to have a sugar- ..... diet but it's very time- ..... trying to make sure everything she buys has no sugar in it.

74.4 Over to you

Which of the adjectives from this unit could you use to describe yourself or your friends or members of your family?

75 Compound nouns 1: noun + noun

A What are compound nouns?

A compound noun is a fixed expression which is made up of more than one word and functions as a noun. Such expressions are frequently combinations of two nouns, e.g. **car park**, **human being** [person], **science fiction** [fiction based on some kind of scientific fantasy]. A number of compound nouns are related to phrasal verbs and these are dealt with in Unit 76.

B How are compound nouns written?

If you understand both parts of the compound noun, the meaning will usually be clear. Compound nouns are usually written as two words, e.g. **tin opener** [an opener for tins], **bank account** [an account in a bank], **pedestrian crossing** [a place for people to cross a road], but sometimes they are written with a hyphen instead of a space between the words, e.g. **self-control** [control over your own emotions and reactions]. Sometimes they may be written as one word, e.g. **earring, trademark** [the symbol of a product], **babysitter** [someone who stays with a baby/child while parents are out].

Note that there are no strict rules about which compound words should be written in which way. There is a lot of variation even between dictionaries.

C Stress in compound nouns

Usually the main stress is on the first part of the compound but sometimes it is on the second part. In the common compound nouns below, the word which contains the main stress is underlined.

alarm clock	contact lens	mineral water	voice mail
blood donor	credit card	package holiday	windscreen
burglar alarm	heart attack	steering wheel	windscreen wiper
bus stop	light bulb	tea bag	youth hostel

D Grammar of compound nouns

Compound nouns may be countable, uncountable or only used in either the singular or the plural. The examples given in C are all countable compound nouns. Here are some examples of common uncountable compound nouns.

air traffic control	computer technology	food poisoning	junk food
birth control	cotton wool	hay fever [allergy to pollen]	mail order
blood pressure	data processing	income tax	pocket money

Here are some examples of common compound nouns used only in the singular.

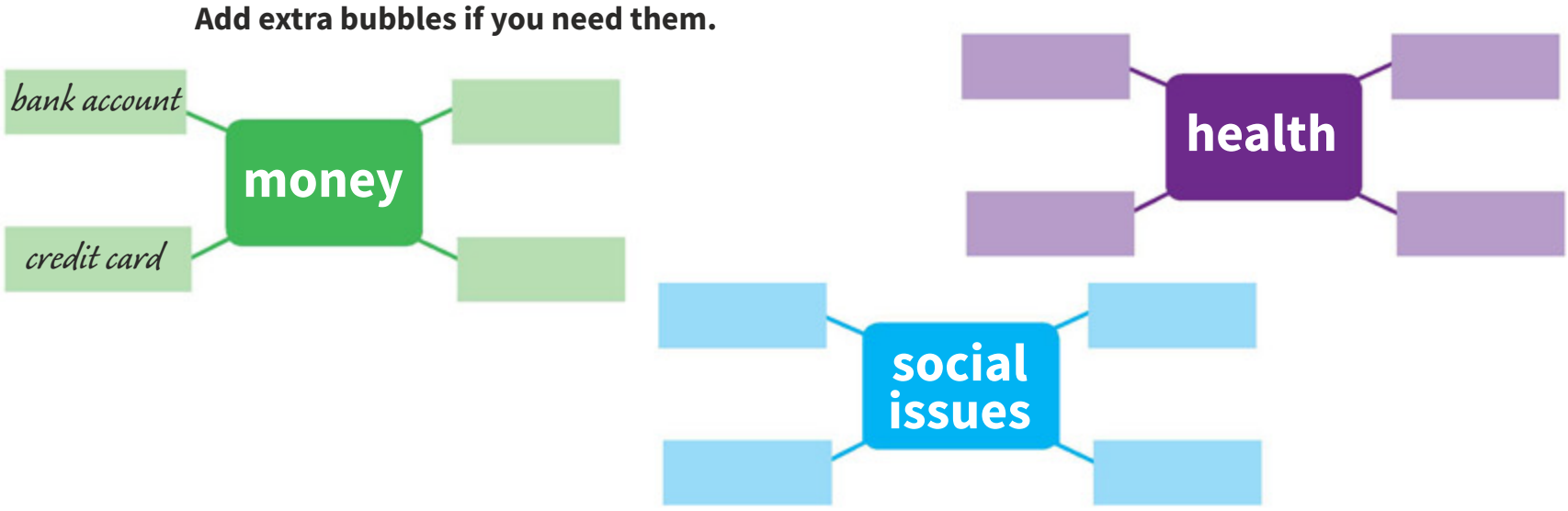
arms race [two or more countries competing to have the most powerful military]	generation gap
climate change	labour force
death penalty	sound barrier
	welfare state

Here are some examples of common compound nouns used only in the plural.

grass roots	kitchen scissors	race relations	sunglasses
headphones	luxury goods	roadworks	traffic lights

Exercises

75.1 **Complete these bubble networks with any appropriate expressions from the opposite page. Add extra bubbles if you need them.**



75.2 **Here are some compound expressions you have looked at in this unit. Explain what the significance of the nouns used in the compound is.**

1 windscreen *A screen that protects a driver from the wind.*
2 burglar alarm
3 food poisoning
4 generation gap
5 climate change
6 kitchen scissors
7 luxury goods
8 pocket money
9 welfare state
10 voice mail

75.3 **What are they talking about? In each case the answer is a compound noun opposite.**

1 I had it taken at the doctor's this morning and he said it was a little high for my age. *blood pressure*
2 It's happening through man-made pollution and is causing more extreme weather.
3 She always has terrible sneezing fits in the early summer.
4 I can't understand why they spend so much on devising ways of killing people.
5 They say that working there is much more stressful than being a pilot.
6 The worst time was when one fell out at the theatre and I spent the interval searching around on the floor. I can't see a thing without them.
7 I don't think it should ever be used whatever the crime.
8 It's much easier not to have to make your own travel arrangements.
9 It's not difficult to access mine on my mobile.
10 You really shouldn't cross the road at any other place.
11 I didn't like the low-energy ones at first because they're so slow to get going.
12 I had it very badly once when I ate some chicken that wasn't properly cooked.

75.4 **In some cases more than one compound noun can be formed from one particular element. For example, *blood pressure* and *blood donor*; *air traffic control*, *birth control* and *self-control*. Complete the following compound nouns using nouns from the box.**

bite	country	fast	inheritance	level
mail	pot	rat	ties	word

1 junk *mail*
2 sound .....
3 blood .....
4 tea .....
5 mother .....
6 ..... tax
7 ..... -processing
8 ..... crossing
9 ..... food
10 ..... race

75.5 **Now make up some sentences like those in exercise 75.3 relating to the new compound nouns you made in exercise 75.4.**

EXAMPLE 1 *I get a ridiculous amount of this through my letter box every day.* (junk mail)

76 Compound nouns 2: verb + preposition

A Compound nouns based on phrasal verbs

An example of a compound noun based on a phrasal verb is a **takeover** [when one company takes control of another] from *to take over*. In sections B to E you will see these types of nouns in context. The meaning of the compound noun is given in brackets. To form the plural, 's' is added to the end, e.g. **workouts** [exercise sessions, e.g. at the gym].

B Journalism

Nouns based on phrasal verbs often have an informal feel to them and they are particularly common in newspaper reporting.

In response to the pay offer, there was a **walkout** at the factory. [strike]
There is going to be a **crackdown** on public spending. [action to stop/reduce]
An inquiry into the recent **breakout** from the local prison has recommended measures to tighten security there. [escape]
Last month saw a tremendous **shake-up** in personnel. [change]
Last week we reported on the **break-up** of the mayor's marriage. [collapse]

C The economy

The **takeover** of one of our leading hotel chains has just been announced. [purchase by another company]
We're trying to find some new **outlets** for our products. [places to sell]
Take your things to the **check-out** to pay for them. [cash desk]
Cutbacks will be essential until the recession is over. [reductions]
Our profit was £1,000 on a **turnover** of £10,000. [money passing through a company]
The banks were given a huge **bailout** by the government. [money given to a company to save it from failure]

D Aspects of modern life

What the computer produces depends on the **input**. [information that is put in]
Output has increased thanks to new technology. [production]
We have a rather rapid staff **turnover**. [change]
Just after leaving school he went through a stage of being a **dropout**. [person who rejects society]
The consequences of **fallout** from the explosion at the nuclear reactor were felt for many years. [radioactive dust in the atmosphere]
I can easily get you a **printout** of the latest figures. [paper on which computer information has been printed]
A **breakthrough** has been made in AIDS research. [important discovery]

E General

The following words can be used in more general circumstances.
Many of the problems were caused by a **breakdown** in communications. [failure]
The **outlook** for tomorrow is good - sunny in most places. [prospect]
There are **drawbacks** as well as advantages to every situation. [negative aspects]
The **outcome** of the meeting was not very satisfactory. [conclusion]
TV companies always welcome **feedback** from viewers. [comments]
It was clear from the **outset** that the **set-up** would cause problems. [start; situation]
We parked in a **lay-by** on the **bypass**. [parking space at the side of a road; road avoiding the centre of a town]
The **outbreak** of war took many people by surprise. [start of something unpleasant]

Exercises

76.1 **Which of the words on the opposite page would be most likely to follow the adjectives given below?**

1 radioactive *fallout*
2 nervous .....
3 computer .....
4 annual .....
5 final .....
6 sales .....
7 positive .....
8 city .....

76.2 **Match the compound nouns on the left with the synonyms on the right.**

1 breakdown	[e]	a result
2 break-up	[ ]	b beginning
3 cutback	[ ]	c production
4 drawback	[ ]	d strike
5 feedback	[ ]	e failure
6 outcome	[ ]	f disadvantage
7 output	[ ]	g payment
8 outset	[ ]	h comments
9 walkout	[ ]	i reduction
10 bailout	[ ]	j collapse

76.3 **Fill in the gaps with an appropriate word from the opposite page.**

1 AKC make *takeover* bid for FEDCO
2 Prime Minister announces cabinet .....
3 Transport union threatens .....
4 Police plan ..... on vandalism
5 Two prisoners escape in jail .....
6 Football star injured in pre-game .....
7 Flu ..... in Ireland
8 ..... staff at supermarket announce strike

76.4 **Here are some compound nouns based on phrasal verbs. Guess the meaning of the underlined word from its context. Show how it relates to its verb.**

1 Because of the accident there was a three-mile tailback along the motorway.
queue of traffic (it tails back from a vehicle at the head of the queue)
2 Police are warning of an increased number of break-ins in this area. .....
3 The papers are claiming the Prime Minister organised a cover-up. .....
4 Unfortunately, our plans have suffered a setback. .....
5 I'm sorry I'm late. There was a terrible hold-up on the bridge. .....
6 The robbers made their getaway in a stolen car. .....
7 There was a surprisingly large turnout at the concert. .....
8 I love having a lie-in on Sundays. .....
9 The lecturer distributed handouts before she started speaking. .....
10 I'm giving my office a major clear-out this week. .....

76.5 **These words are made up of the same parts but they have very different meanings. Explain the meaning of each of the words. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

1 outlook / look-out
Outlook means prospect, whereas a look-out is a person watching out for an enemy or danger.
2 set-up / upset
3 outlet / let-out
4 outlay / layout

77 Binomials

A What are binomials?

Binomials are expressions (often idiomatic) where two words are joined by a conjunction (usually 'and'). The order of the words is normally fixed. For example:

odds and ends: small, unimportant things, e.g. Let's get the main things packed - we can do the **odds and ends** later. (NOT ends and odds)

give and take: a spirit of compromise, e.g. Every relationship needs a bit of **give and take** to be successful.

You can often tell something is a binomial because of the sound pattern, which may be a repetition of the same first sound or a rhyme.

Tears are **part and parcel** of growing up. [an important part of / belong to]
The boss was **ranting and raving** /'reɪvɪŋ/ at us. [shouting / very angry]
The old cottage has gone to **rack and ruin**. [is ruined / has decayed]
He's so **prim and proper** at work. [rather formal and fussy]
The hotel was a bit **rough and ready**. [poor standard or quality]
She has to **wine and dine** important clients. [entertain / take out to restaurants]
They stole my wallet. I was left **high and dry**, with no money. [in a very difficult situation]

B Pairs of near synonyms

At other times, the clue is that the words are near synonyms.

You can **pick and choose** - it's up to you. [have a wide choice]
My English is progressing in/by **leaps and bounds**. [big jumps]
It's nice to have some **peace and quiet** now that the children have lef. [a peaceful/calm situation]
The doctor recommended some **rest and recreation** / **R and R**. [relaxation]
First and foremost, you must work hard. [first and most importantly]

C Binomials composed of grammar words

Many grammar words combine to form binomials.

There are cafés **here and there** along the sea front. [scattered round / in different places]
We've had meetings **on and off / off and on**. [occasionally]
I've been running **back and forth / to and fro** all day. [to and from somewhere]
She's better now, and **out and about** again. [going out]
She ran **up and down** the street. [in both directions]

Language help

Your language probably has many binomials. Check that the ones which look similar in English have the same word order as your language. These three are very neutral binomials and can be used in formal or informal situations. Try translating them.

*an old **black and white** photograph*
***Ladies and gentlemen**, your attention, please!*
*She ran **back and forth**.*

D Binomials linked by words other than and

You've got your sweater on **back to front**. [the wrong way]
He won't help her - she'll have to **sink or swim**. [survive or fail]
Slowly but surely, I realised the boat was sinking. [gradually]
Sooner or later, you'll learn your lesson. [sometime in the future]
She didn't want to be just friends - it had to be **all or nothing**.
Well, I'm sorry, that's all I can offer you - **take it or leave it**.
It's about the same distance as from here to Dublin, **give or take** a few miles. [perhaps a mile or two more, or a mile or two less]

Exercises

77.1 **Here is a list of words that can combine to form binomials. Use similarities in sound to join them with *and*. Look at A opposite to check that you have the right word order and meaning. Use the binomials to fill the gaps in the sentences which follow.**

~~prim~~	dine	high	parcel	ruin	rough	dry
rack	part	ready	~~proper~~	rave	rant	wine

prim and proper ....

....

1 The receptionist is always so terribly *prim* and *proper*; the whole atmosphere always seems so very formal.
2 I was left ..... and ....., with no one to help me.
3 The room's a bit ..... and ..... but you're welcome to stay as long as you like.
4 She was in a bad temper and was ..... and ..... at everybody.
5 My hosts ..... and ..... me at the best restaurants.
6 That old house in the country has gone to ..... and ..... ; nobody looks after it now.
7 Working hard and being very disciplined is ..... and ..... of training to be a top athlete.

77.2 **Use binomials from B and C to rewrite the words in bold. Your new sentences will often sound more informal than the original ones.**

1 I'm hoping to get some **time without noise or interruption** at the cottage I've rented.
peace and quiet
2 **Most importantly of all**, I want to get a good, steady job. .....
3 I've bumped into Karen **occasionally** but I don't meet her regularly. .....
4 Her violin playing seems to be progressing **very rapidly**. .....
5 I've been running **from one place to another and back again** all morning. .....
6 The doctor said I needed a few weeks of **relaxation without activity**. .....
7 We'll have to stay in a cheap hotel. We can't afford to **choose what we'd like best**.
.....
8 There are some nice hotels **in different places** along the coast. .....
9 Mrs James was ill for a while, but now she's **going out and doing things** again. .....
10 Robin's office is on the next floor to mine, so we have to go **from one floor to another** all day. .....

77.3 **Some of the binomials in these sentences are in the right order and some are wrong. Correct the wrong ones.**

1 I spent a long time going forth and back between different offices to get my visa.
wrong: back and forth
2 You look very tired and stressed. You need some rest and recreation.
3 I love those old white and black Hollywood films from the 1940s.
4 Later or sooner you will learn that he is not a true friend of yours.
5 Gentlemen and ladies, would you like to take your seats now, please?
6 Slowly but surely my English got better and soon I felt fairly fluent.

77.4 **These binomials do not have *and* in the middle. What do they have? Check the opposite page if you are not sure.**

1 sooner *or* later
2 all ..... nothing
3 back ..... front
4 sink ..... swim
5 slowly ..... surely
6 give ..... take

78 Abbreviations and acronyms

A Abbreviations pronounced as individual letters

Most abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters.

Abbreviations for groups or organisations:

BBC British Broadcasting Corporation
CIA Central Intelligence Agency (US government agency collecting information about other countries)
EU European Union
FBI Federal Bureau of Investigation
MI6 Military Intelligence 6 (UK equivalent of CIA)
WHO World Health Organisation

Other abbreviations pronounced as individual letters:

ID Identity (an identity card or passport)
GM genetically modified
DNA deoxyribonucleic acid (chemical at the centre of living cells)
FAQ frequently asked questions
AKA also known as
IOU I owe you
ATM automated teller machine (cash machine usually outside a bank)
ASAP as soon as possible

Language help

When these abbreviations are stressed words in the sentence, the stress falls on the last letter, e.g. *She works for the CI<u>A</u>. I heard it on the BB<u>C</u>.*

B Abbreviations pronounced as words

Abbreviations pronounced as individual words are called acronyms.

NATO /neɪtiəʊ/ North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
PIN /pɪn/ Personal Identity Number (e.g. for a bank or credit card)
SAD seasonal affective disorder (lacking energy and enthusiasm in winter in latitudes where there is little sunlight at that time)
AWOL /eɪwɒl/ absent without leave [permission; usually used in military contexts]

Some acronyms have become so normal as words that people do not think of them as abbreviations any longer, and so they are not written in capital letters.

laser **radar** **scuba** **sonar**

C Clippings

Some words are often used in an abbreviated form in informal situations. We say, for example, **kilo** instead of 'kilogram' or **gig** for 'gigabyte'. Other examples include:
air con (air conditioning) **satnav** (satellite navigation system)
uni (university) **mobile** (mobile phone) or (US) **cell** (cellphone)
carbs (carbohydrates) **sci-fi** (science fiction) **high-tech** (high-technology)

D Written abbreviations

Some abbreviations are most frequently used in writing.

PTO Please turn over (turn to the next page)
PS post script (written at the end of a message or letter, when you want to add something else)
RSVP Répondez s'il vous plaît (French, meaning 'please answer') (written at the end of an invitation, to indicate that you should reply)
RIP Rest in peace (often written on a headstone where someone is buried after they have died)

Exercises

78.1 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1	Wherever I am in the world I listen to the	c	a ID.
2	Most websites have a page dealing with		b PIN.
3	Holly took some money out of my wallet and left me an		c BBC.
4	What kind of people we are depends on our		d SAD.
5	They won't let you into the club without any		e FAQs.
6	You won't be able to use the ATM if you've forgotten your		f AWOL.
7	I don't know where John can be - he's gone		g DNA.
8	I always feel lethargic in December - I think I suffer from		h IOU.

78.2 Find abbreviations from A, B or C opposite to fit these categories.

1 Find two that relate to measurement. *kilo* *gig*
2 Find four that relate to food and health. ....
3 Find three that relate to money. ....
4 Find one that relates to sport. .....
5 Find three that are political organisations. ....
6 Find two that relate to equipment using sound or radio waves. ....

78.3 Fill each gap with an appropriate abbreviation or acronym.

1 Please could you buy me a *kilo* of apples?
2 William Barclay ..... James Stubbs has been charged with burglary.
3 The surgeons used ..... technology to carry out the operation.
4 My sister works in a very ..... office using all the most up-to-date hardware and software.
5 Bats cannot see and use a kind of ..... to find their way around.
6 When you're driving it's much easier to use a ..... rather than a road atlas.

78.4 Complete the texts with the correct abbreviations from D opposite.

1

Party!
At Sam and Beth's house
Saturday 14 August
8 till late
..... by 28 July

2

I've gone shopping with Ana. Back around six.
See you later. Emma
..... Tom phoned for you. Can you call him back?

3

In loving memory of
James Goodman
1945 - 2015
.....

4

Patients should arrive ten minutes before their appointment time, and must inform their doctor if they are unable to come to an appointment.....

78.5 Over to you

1 What's the nearest uni to the place where you live?
2 Have you ever tried scuba diving?
3 Would you be happy to eat GM food?
4 Do you know anyone who has SAD?
5 What is the main source of carbs in your diet?
6 How common is air con in your country?

79 Multi-word expressions

A Learning and remembering multi-word expressions

Fixed expressions, also known as idioms, often have meanings that are not clear or obvious. For example, the expression **to feel under the weather**, which means 'to feel unwell', is typical. The words do not tell us what it means, but the context usually helps.

Think of multi-word expressions as units, just like single words; always record the whole expression in your notebook, along with information on grammar and collocation, e.g. This tin opener **has seen better days**. [it is rather old and broken down; usually of things, always perfect tense form]

Multi-word expressions of this type are often rather informal and include a personal comment on the situation. They are sometimes humorous or ironic. As with any informal words, be careful how you use them. Never use them just to sound 'fluent' or 'good at English'. In a formal situation with a person you do not know, don't say:

'How do you do, Mrs Watson? Do **take** the **weight off your feet**.' [sit down]

Instead say: 'Do sit down' or 'Have a seat.'

B Organising multi-word expressions

Multi-word expressions can be grouped in a variety of ways. It is probably best to use whichever way you find most useful to help you remember them.

Grouping by grammar

get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick [misunderstand]
pull a fast one [trick/deceive someone]
poke your nose in(**to**) [interfere]
} verb + object

be over the moon [extremely happy/elated]
feel down in the dumps [depressed/low]
be in the red [have a negative bank balance]
} verb + prepositional phrase

Grouping by meaning, e.g. expressions describing people's character/intellect

He's **as daft as a brush**. [very stupid/silly]
She **takes the biscuit**. /ˈbɪskɪt/ [is the extreme / the worst of all]
They'**re a pain in the neck**. [a nuisance / a difficult person]
Little Sam's **as good as gold**. [behaves very well - usually used about children]

Grouping by a verb or other key word, e.g. expressions with **make**

Why do you have to **make a meal out of** everything? [exaggerate the importance of everything]
I think we should **make a move**. It's gone ten o'clock. [go/leave]
Most politicians are **on the make**. I don't trust any of them. [wanting money/power for oneself]
I'm afraid I'm **making heavy weather** of my essay. [making slow and difficult progress]

C Grammar of multi-word expressions

It is important when using these expressions to know just how flexible their grammar is. Some are more fixed than others. For instance, **barking up the wrong tree** [be mistaken] is always used in continuous, not simple form, e.g. I think you're **barking up the wrong tree**.
(NOT I think you ~~bark up~~ the wrong tree.)

A good dictionary may help, but it is best to observe the grammar in real examples.
Note how Units 89-94 group expressions in different ways.

For more information on multi-word expressions, see *English Idioms in Use* by Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell.

Exercises

79.1 Complete the expressions from A and B opposite.

1 When I passed all my exams, I felt over *the moon*.
2 This printer isn't working again! It's a pain .....
3 It's almost midnight! I'd better be making .....
4 I spent too much money last month and now I'm in .....
5 It's time to change my laptop. It's five years old and has seen .....
6 She is the absolute limit! She really takes .....
7 Oh dear, Matthew completely misunderstood me. He always seems to get .....
8 I'm sorry. I do some really stupid things. You must think I'm as daft .....
9 I wonder what's wrong with Ursula? She looks down .....
10 I don't trust politicians. Most of them are just on the .....

79.2 Which expressions from the opposite page do these pictures remind you of?



1 *be over the moon*



3 .....



2 .....



4 .....

79.3 Which is correct, (a) or (b)? Check with A and B opposite.

1 Sit down and (a) *get* (b) *take* the weight off your feet. *b*
2 Why does she always have to (a) *poke* (b) *peek* her nose into other people's affairs? .....
3 I was feeling (a) *under* (b) *below* the weather, so I didn't go to work. .....
4 Zoe pulled a (a) *quick* (b) *fast* one and didn't pay for her share of the meal. .....
5 All right, all right! You don't have to (a) *cook* (b) *make* a meal out of it! .....
6 He's really making (a) *heavy* (b) *bad* weather of what should be a simple task. .....

79.4 Without using a dictionary, try to work out the meaning of the underlined expressions from the context.

1 It's midnight. It's time to <u>hit the sack</u>. *go to bed*
2 This is just <u>kid's stuff</u>. I want something more difficult and challenging!
3 I feel <u>fit as a fiddle</u> ever since I started going regularly to the gym.
4 I can't understand why he's <u>giving me the cold shoulder</u>. He's usually so friendly.
5 I haven't seen Simone for ages. We only get together <u>once in a blue moon</u>.
6 I think I've <u>got the hang of</u> this photo-editing program now, though it was complicated at first.

79.5 Over to you

Try a grouping exercise with six expressions from the opposite page, using any of the methods suggested in B. Which type of grouping works best for the expressions you chose?

80 Words commonly mispronounced

A Vowels

The phonetic transcription is provided for some of the words below. Check you understand the symbols, which are used by most good dictionaries (see page 258).

To master English pronunciation it is helpful to learn the 22 phonemic symbols for English vowel sounds. These are important because the vowel letters can be pronounced in many different ways:

a c**a**t /□/ **a**bout /ə/ w**a**nder /ɒ/ l**a**st /aː/ l**a**te /eɪ/
i al**i**ve /aɪ/ g**i**ve /ɪ/
u p**u**t /ʊ/ c**u**t /ʌ/ c**u**pid /juː/
ie f**ie**nd /iː/ fr**ie**nd /e/ sc**ie**nce /aɪə/
ei r**ei**n /eɪ/ rec**ei**ve /iɪ/ r**ei**nforce /iːɪ/

e m**e**t /e/ m**e**ter /iː/ /ə/
o s**o**rry /ɒ/ g**o** /eʊ/ l**o**ve /ʌ/ t**o** /uː/
ea h**ea**d /e/ t**ea**m /iː/ r**ea**ct /iː□/
ou our /aʊ/ r**ou**te /uː/ w**ou**ld /ʊ/
oo c**oo**l /uː/ c**oo**k /ʊ/ c**oo**pt /əʊp/

B Silent letters

The letters below in **bold** are silent in the examples:

p **p**sychic /ˈsaɪkɪk/ **p**sychiatry **p**neumatic receip**t** **p**seudonym **p**sychology
b com**b** /kəʊm/ dum**b** num**b** tom**b** clim**b** wom**b** lam**b**
b dou**b**t /daut/ su**b**tle de**b**t de**b**tor
l cou**l**d /kʊd/ shou**l**d ca**l**m ha**l**f ta**l**k pa**l**m wa**l**k sa**l**mon cha**l**k
h **h**onour /ɒnə/ **h**onourable **h**onest **h**our **h**ourly **h**eir **h**eiress
t whis**t**le /ˈwɪsəl/ cas**t**le lis**t**en fas**t**en sof**t**en Chris**t**mas
k **k**nee /niː/ **k**nife **k**now **k**nob **k**nowledge
knot **k**nit
r car**d** /kaːd/ par**k** far**m** bur**n** wor**k**
sto**r**m ta**r**t
(unless followed by a vowel) mothe**r** /ˈmʌðə/ siste**r**
teache**r** wate**r**

Language help

The letter 'r' is not silent in some varieties of English, for example American, Irish, Scottish.

C Changing stress

Some two-syllable words in English have the same form for the noun and the verb. The stress is on the first syllable of the word when it is a noun and the second syllable when it is a verb, e.g. *Wool is a major Scottish export. Scotland exports a lot of wool*. Here are some other words like this.

conduct	conflict	contest	decrease	suspect	record
desert	import	increase	insult	transfer	reject
permit	present	progress	protest	transport	upset

Multi-syllable words in English tend to put their main stress on the third syllable from the end, e.g. *photograph, telephone, arithmetic*. As a result, as a long word adds suffixes its word stress does not stay on the same syllable, e.g. *photographer, telephony, arithmetical*. Note that, although this rule is useful, it does have plenty of exceptions.

Common mistakes

These words are often mispronounced.

apostrophe /əˈpɒstrəfi/
recipe /ˈresɪpi/
ought /ɔːt/
catastrophe /kəˈt□ strəfi/
vegetables /ˈvedʒtəblz/
muscle /ˈmʌsəl/
cupboard /ˈkʌbəd/
sword /ˈsɔːd/
interesting /ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/

Exercises

80.1 **Underline all the silent letters in the following sentences.**

1 They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb.
2 The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as she was walking home.
3 He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt.
4 You could have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

80.2 **Which word is the odd one out in each of these groups?**

1 worry, sorry, lorry *worry*
2 sword, cord, word
3 come, some, dome
4 head, plead, tread
5 doubt, could, shout
6 cough, rough, tough
7 land, wand, sand
8 soot, root, foot

80.3 **What word could a poet use to rhyme with each of the words below? Use your dictionary to check the pronunciation.**

1 enough ..*stuff*..
2 plough .....
3 through .....
4 cough .....
5 though .....



80.4 **Circle or highlight the stressed syllable in each of the underlined words.**

1 They paid a £1 million transfer fee to transfer the player to their team.
2 Although they suspected several people were partly involved, the police decided to concentrate on Jo as the main suspect.
3 There are conflicting views as to the cause of the conflict.
4 All this upset over the wedding has really upset them.
5 The cost of living has increased while there has been a decrease in wages.
6 A work permit permits you to work for a period of six months.
7 I wish I could record a hit record!
8 Despite the disgraceful conduct of the audience, James went on conducting the orchestra.

80.5 **Write out the words below using the normal English alphabet.**

1 /'mʌsl/ *muscle*
2 /kə'tɒstrəfi/
3 /'hɒŋketʃiːf/
4 / kem kəl/
5 /'sʌtel/
6 /r siːt/
7 /haɪt/
8 / res pi/

80.6 **Underline the stressed syllable in each of the words below.**

1 photograph photography photographer photographically
2 zoology zoologist zoological
3 arithmetic arithmetical arithmetician
4 psychology psychologist psychological
5 psychiatry psychiatric psychiatrist

80.7 **Find words on the opposite page to match each definition. Say them aloud.**

1 cooking instructions *recipe*
2 between warm and cold
3 an old weapon
4 a punctuation mark
5 the opposite of descend
6 describes a sea that isn't rough

81 Onomatopoeic words

A What are onomatopoeic words?

Onomatopoeic words are those which seem to sound like their meaning. The most obvious examples are verbs for the noises which animals make.



cows **moo**



cats **meow** and **purr**



lions **roar**



bees **buzz**



small birds **tweet**

B Letters, sounds and their associations

Certain combinations of sounds have particular associations in English.

- **gr-** at the beginning of a word can suggest something unpleasant or miserable, e.g.
  She was **groaning** with pain. [make a deep sound forced out by pain or despair]
  Everyone was **grumbling** about the quality of the food. [complain in a bad-tempered way]
  Don't be so **grumpy**! [bad-tempered]
  The teacher **growled** angrily at the boys. [make a deep, threatening sound, like an angry dog]
- **cl-** at the beginning of a word can suggest something sharp and/or metallic, e.g.
  Click on 'log in' to enter the website. [make a short sharp sound]
  There was a loud **clang** as the metal bar hit the stone floor. [make a loud ringing noise]
  Horses go **clip-clop** on the road.
- **sp-** at the beginning of a word can suggest water or other liquids or powders, e.g.
  She **splashed** water over her face to wake herself up. [cause a liquid to fly about in drops]
  The meat was horrible and she **spat** it **out**. [send liquid or food out from the mouth]
  I never use hair **sprays**. [to spray = send liquid through the air in tiny drops either by the wind or some instrument]
  He **sprinkled** sugar on his breakfast cereal and ate it quickly. [scatter small drops]
  Water was **spurting** out of the broken pipe. [come out in a sudden burst]
- **wh-** at the beginning of a word often suggests the movement of air, e.g.
  He **whistled** and the horse ran towards him. [a high-pitched noise made by forcing air or steam through a small opening]
  Suddenly a large insect **whizzed** over my head and scared me. [make the sound of something rushing through air]
  Old Mr Banks **wheezed** as he climbed the stairs. [breathe noisily especially with a whistling sound in the chest]
- **-ash** at the end of a word can suggest something fast and violent, e.g.
  smash [break violently into small pieces] **dash** [move fast or violently] **crash** [suddenly strike violently and noisily] **bash** [strike heavily so as to break or injure] **mash** [make soft or pulpy by beating or crushing] **gash** [a long deep cut or wound]



a **smashed** window



a car **crash**



sausages and **mashed** potato

Exercises

81.1 Match the verbs and the animals which make the sound. Some of the verbs are not given on the opposite page.

1	cat	d	a roar
2	hen		b growl
3	sheep		c buzz
4	snake		d purr
5	dog		e tweet
6	bee		f hiss
7	small bird		g cluck
8	lion		h bleat





81.2 Look at B opposite and insert the missing letters.

1 The plant looked very dry, so I .....*sp*..... rayed some water on the leaves.
2 Old Mrs Jenks had bronchitis and was .....eezing all the time.
3 I heard the sound of a horse .....ip-..... opping along the road.
4 Brightly coloured insects .....izzed around our heads as we walked through the jungle.
5 Stop .....umbling about everything and try to enjoy yourself!
6 She d.....ed out of the door and ran down the street.
7 After the accident, oil .....urted from the pipe and polluted the river.
8 As I was carrying my computer to my new office, I b.....ed it against the door and damaged it.

81.3 Fill the gaps with words from the opposite page.

1 The cat was .....*meowing*..... because it wanted food. After it had eaten, it ..... with contentment and fell asleep.
2 ..... on the 'copy' symbol, then you can copy the text to a new file.
3 Everyone ..... in despair when they heard the bad news.
4 The car had ..... into a wall and was badly damaged, but luckily no one was hurt.
5 Do you like your potatoes fried or shall I ..... them for you?
6 The boy had a ..... on his knee and blood was pouring from it.

81.4 Answer the questions.

1 What things do people normally sprinkle on food? .....*sugar, salt, pepper, spices, herbs*.....
2 Which would make a clang if it hit a hard surface, a piece of wood or a piece of metal?
.....
3 If someone growls at you, are they probably happy or angry with you?
.....
4 Can you whistle? If so, when would you do it? .....
5 What things make you grumpy? .....
6 What might you do if you put some food into your mouth and it tasted very bad?
.....

81.5 Over to you

Which of the sounds listed opposite exist in your language? Do they have similar associations?

82 Homophones and homographs

A Homophones and homographs

Homophones are words with different meanings which are pronounced in the same way but are spelt differently, e.g. **row** as in 'at the end of the **row**' and **roe** [fish eggs].

Homographs are words which are written in the same way but have different meanings and may be pronounced differently. Compare **row** in 'we had a **row** /raʊ/ about who should pay for the tickets' [argument] and 'he sat at the end of the **row**'/rəʊ/ [line of seats].

B Homophones

air/heir	mail/male	raise/rays	tea/tee
aloud/allowed	meat/meet	read/reed	there/their/they're
break/brake	mown/moan	rein/rain/reign	through/threw
fare/fair	our/hour	right/rite/write	tire/tyre
faze/phase	pair/pear/pare	sale/sail	toe/tow
flu/flew	pale/pail	scene/seen	waist/waste
grate/great	pane/pain	sight/site	wait/weight
groan/grown	peal/peel	so/sew	weak/week
hoarse/horse	place/plaice	sole/soul	weather/whether
its/it's	practise/practice	some/sum	whine/wine
lays/laze	pray/prey	steak/stake	would/wood

C Homographs with differing pronunciations

Check the pronunciation of the words in bold. You can use the list of phonemic symbols on page 258.

I **live** in the north of England. /l v/
My favourite rock group is singing **live** on TV tonight. /la v/
I **read** in bed each night. /ri d/
I **read** *War and Peace* last year. /red/
The **lead** singer in the group is great. /li d/
Lead pipes are dangerous. /led/ [metal, chemical element]
The **wind** blew the tree down. /w nd/
Wind the rope round this tree. /wa nd/
She **wound** the string round the parcel and tied it up. /waʊnd/
He suffered a terrible **wound** in the war. /wu nd/
This book is called *English Vocabulary in* ***Use***. /ju s/
You must know how to **use** words as well as their meaning. /ju z/
They lived in a large old **house**. /haʊs/
The buildings **house** a library and two concert halls as well as a theatre. /haʊz/
The **sow** has five piglets. /saʊ/ [female pig]
The farmers **sow** the seeds in the spring. /səʊ/ [plant seeds]
Bathing the baby at night may help her to fall asleep. /ba ŋ/
(*on a sign at a beach*) No **bathing**. /be ŋ/

Common mistakes

I don't know ***whether*** *to go or not*. (NOT I don't know ~~weather~~ to go or not.)

Exercises

82.1 **Each underlined word rhymes with, or sounds similar to, one of the words in brackets. Choose the matching word.**

1 The girl I live *give* with knows a good pub with live *five* music. (five / give)
2 The main house ..... houses ..... a collection of rare stamps. (mouse / browse)
3 It's no use ..... . I can't use ..... this gadget. (snooze / juice)
4 You sow ..... the seeds while I feed the sow ..... . (cow / go)
5 The violinist in the bow ..... tie made a bow ..... . (now / so)
6 He's the lead ..... singer in the group 'Lead ..... piping'. (head / deed)
7 What a row ..... from the last house in the row ..... ! (plough / though)
8 Does he still suffer from his war wound .....? (found / tuned)
9 I wound ..... the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the gale. (round / spooned)
10 It's hard to wind ..... in the sails in this wind ..... . (find / tinned)

82.2 **Write the word given in phonemic script in the correct spelling for the context.**

1 I really must do some more exercise or I'll never lose /weɪt/. *weight*
2 Watching TV game shows is such a /we st/ of time.
3 There's a hole in the /səʊl/ of my shoe.
4 He broke a /pe n/ of glass in the kitchen window.
5 The eldest son of the monarch is the /e / to the throne.
6 You are not /ə'laʊd/ to talk during the test.
7 Look at that lovely yacht with the red /se l/.
8 He's going / ru / a rather difficult /fe z/ at the moment.
9 Don't throw away that orange /pi l/. I need it for a recipe.

82.3 **Write one sentence using both of the words which correspond to the phonemic script.**

1 /peɪl/ *She was quite pale after the exertion of carrying such a heavy pail of water.*
2 / we / 7 /sa t/
3 /'pr kt s/ 8 /pre /
4 /greɪt/ 9 /h s/
5 /wa n/ 10 /re z/
6 /bre k/

82.4 **Homophones and homographs are at the root of many jokes in English. Match the first part of each of these children's jokes with the second part and then explain the play on words involved in each.**

1 What do you get if you cross a sheep and a kangaroo? [c] a Let's play draughts.
This plays on two meanings of jumper - a sweater and a person or animal that jumps.
2 What did the south wind say to the north wind? [ ] b A drum takes a lot of beating.
3 Why did the man take his pencil to bed? [ ] c A woolly jumper.
4 Why is history the sweetest lesson? [ ] d He wanted to draw the curtains.
5 What's the best birthday present? [ ] e Because it's full of dates.

82.5 **Choose pairs of words from B opposite to describe the pictures below.**






1 *rain and reign* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 .....

83 Uncountable nouns

A What are uncountable nouns?

Countable nouns can be used with **a**/**an** and made plural (e.g. **a hat**, **two hats**). Uncountable nouns are not normally used with a(n) or the plural, e.g. **information** (NOT ~~an information~~ or ~~some~~ informations). You can learn uncountable nouns in groups associated with the same subject or area. Here are some useful headings.

B Travel



luggage
baggage (more common than *luggage* in AmE)



accommodation



money
currency



information



transport

C Food

The word **food** is usually uncountable, and so are many food names. Other uncountable food words can be added to this list.

sugar **rice** **spaghetti** **butter** **bread** **flour** **soup**

Language help

Travel is an uncountable noun, e.g. ***Travel*** *broadens the mind*. If you want to refer to an individual occasion of travel, use **journey** or **trip**, e.g. *It was a very long* ***journey***. (NOT ~~a very long travel~~) *She was away on a business* ***trip*** *for three days*. (NOT ~~a business travel~~)

D Abstract uncountable nouns and nouns for activities

She gave me some **advice** on how to study for the exam.
I picked up some interesting **knowledge** on that course.
She's made a lot of **progress** in a very short time.
She has done some **research** on marine life.
They've done a lot of **work** on the project.
The teacher always gives us **homework** at the weekend.
Do you have any **experience** of working with children?
Wealth [state of being rich] does not guarantee happiness, but neither does **poverty**. [state of being poor]

E Material and resources

For making clothes, furniture, etc.: **cloth** (e.g. silk) **leather** For energy: **coal** **oil**
For buildings: **stone** **brick** **plastic** General: **equipment** **software**

F Other common uncountable nouns

I have some **news** for you: Henry is getting married.
What lovely **weather**! Let's go for a walk.

Common mistakes

Although you may have learnt these words and their meanings before, it is very easy to continue making mistakes with them.
We say: *What* ***terrible weather****! I have* ***some news*** *for you. We bought* ***some new furniture***.
(NOT What ~~a terrible weather~~! I have ~~a news~~ for you. We bought ~~some new furnitures~~.)
See Unit 86 for ways of making uncountable nouns countable.

Exercises

83.1 **Complete each sentence in two ways using the nouns in brackets.**

1 He gave me *(some) advice / some tips* about applying for university courses. (advice / tip)
2 I'm sorry, I can't come. I have ..... to do. (job / homework)
3 She's doing ..... teenage slang in English for her university project. (research into / study of)
4 You'll need ..... if you want to make a Chinese meal. (rice / noodle)
5 I have ..... for you: you're going to meet the President next week! (news / surprise)
6 They make ..... for the furniture industry in this factory. (textile / cloth)

83.2 **List these words under the headings in the table: *uncountables* and *countables*. Then pair up the words which have related meanings.**

recommendation	~~money~~	bread	case	information	job	advice	travel
coin	trip	work	baggage	fact	loaf		

uncountables	*money*
countables	*coin*

83.3 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There may be more than one.**

1 We had such ~~a~~ terrible weather that we left the campsite and found ~~an~~ *some* accommodation in town instead.
2 In the south of England, most houses are made of stones, but in the north, bricks are more common.
3 I love antique furnitures, but I would need an advice from a specialist before I bought any. My knowledges in that area are very poor.
4 Her researches are definitely making great progresses these days. She has done a lot of original works recently.
5 What equipments do you need to go skiing? If you can give me any informations, I would be grateful.
6 Oil exports have produced a great deal of wealths for the country.
7 Package holidays often include transports from the airport to your accommodations.
8 I don't have any experiences of working in education, but I would like to do some voluntary works in a school.
9 A poverty is the biggest problem in many countries.
10 I bought a new software that shows you the kind of weathers every country has each month of the year.

83.4 **Can you add more items to the lists in C and E opposite?**

Food: *olive oil, salt, milk, honey* .....

For making clothes, furniture, etc.: .....

For buildings: .....

For energy: .....

83.5 **Over to you**

Imagine you are going away for a week's holiday and you pack a suitcase with everything you need. Make a list of what you would pack. Which items on your list are *uncountable* nouns in English?

84 Words that only occur in the plural

A Tools, instruments, pieces of equipment


scissors


pliers


earphones


tweezers


tongs


headphones


binoculars


scales


handcuffs


shears


glasses/ spectacles


goggles

B Things we wear


clothes


pyjamas


knickers/pants


underpants/pants


jeans


tights


overalls

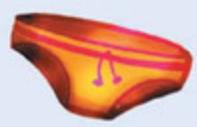

leggings


dungarees


shorts


trousers


braces


(swimming) trunks

C Other useful words

The **graphics** in this game are amazing! [pictures produced on a computer]
When will the **goods** be delivered? [articles/items]
The architect inspected the **foundations** [under the building] before declaring that the **premises** were safe. [the building itself]
The military **authorities** have established their **headquarters** in the old Town Hall.
The **acoustics** in the new opera house are near perfect. [quality of the sound]
The **contents** /ˈkɒntents/ of the house were sold after her death.
Looks are less important than personality in a partner.
As you come to the **outskirts** of the village, there are **traffic lights**. Turn left there. [the beginning or end of the village]
The **stairs** are a bit dangerous - be careful.
The **proceeds** of the concert are going to the children's fund. [money from selling tickets]
A terrorist has escaped from prison. Her **whereabouts** are unknown. [where she is]

D Words with plural form but used mostly with singular verbs

Names of some games: **billiards** **dominoes** **draughts** **darts** **bowls** **cards**
Names of subjects/activities: **physics** **economics** **classics** **gymnastics** **athletics**

Common mistakes

Some words look plural, or may be thought of as plural, but are not, e.g. **news**, **spaghetti** (an Italian plural form), **series**, **means**. *The news **is** good*. (NOT The news ~~are~~ good.) *The spaghetti was* **delicious**. (NOT The spaghetti ~~were~~ delicious.) *There was a **series** of programmes on TV about Japan. Is there a cheap* **means** *of transport I could use to get there?*

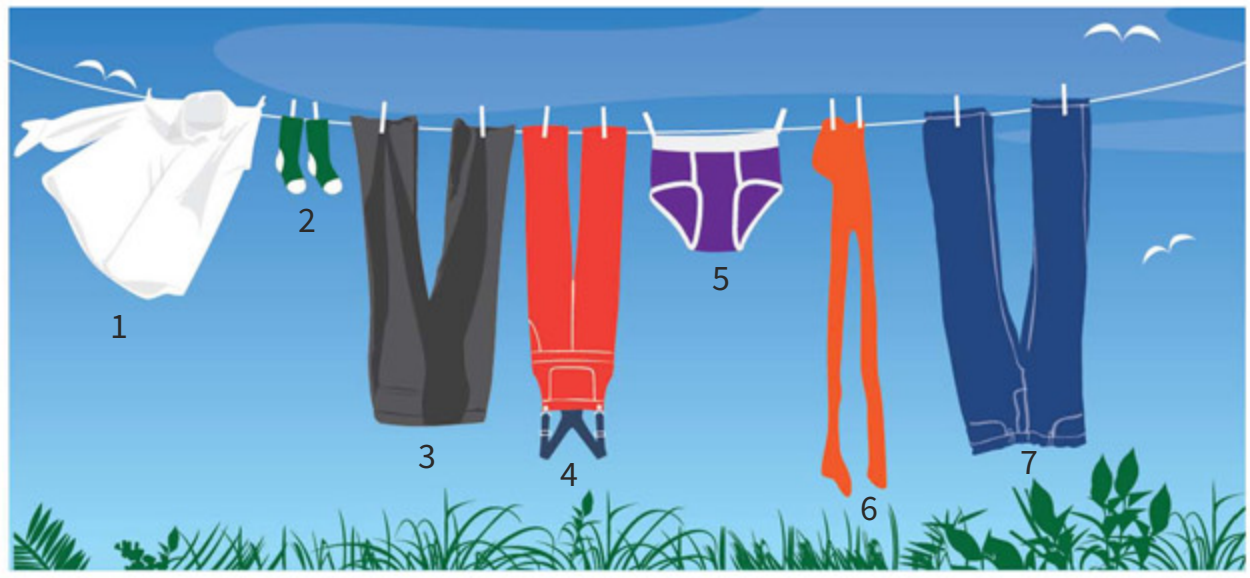
Exercises

84.1 **Make a list of subjects you studied at school or elsewhere. How many of the words are plural? Use a dictionary if necessary.**

84.2 **Which things listed on the opposite page can be used to:**

1 cut a hedge? *shears*
2 help you to read small print?
3 cut paper?
4 hold your trousers up?
5 protect your clothes if you're repairing a car?
6 look at distant objects?
7 get a nail out of a piece of wood?
8 keep a prisoner's hands together?

84.3 **Name the items on the clothes line and tick the words that are only used in the plural.**



1 *shirt* 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 ..... 7 .....

84.4 **Fill the gaps with an appropriate plural-form noun.**

1 (*to a child*) Come on! Get your *pyjamas* on! It's time to go to bed.
2 The ..... of the rock concert are going to two charities.
3 The ..... in the new concert hall are superb. I've never heard such clear sound.
4 The escaped prisoner is tall, dark and has a beard. His ..... are unknown.
5 You must use ..... or ..... if you want to listen to your music on a train.
6 The ..... have forbidden the import of all foreign .....
7 Computer ..... were first used in films in the 1970s.

84.5 **Odd one out. In each group, one of the nouns is always used in the plural. Which one?**

1 sock, trouser, slipper - *trousers*
2 billiard, squash, tennis
3 knife, scissor, razor
4 tracksuit, costume, dungaree

84.6 **In this silly story, change the singular nouns to plural where appropriate. Change the verbs where necessary.**

I decided that if I wanted to be a pop star I'd have to move to London. I finally got a room, but it was on the outskirt of the city. The owner didn't live on the premise, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The acoustic in the bathroom was fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the foundation! I went to the headquarter of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have the right looks to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

85 Countable and uncountable nouns with different meanings

A Countable and uncountable nouns

When we use a countable noun we are thinking of specific **things** that can be counted (e.g. two **glasses**). When we use an uncountable noun we are thinking of **stuff** or **material** or the **idea of a thing in general** (e.g. this door is made of **glass**).

stuff/materials	things
glass 	**a glass / glasses** 
cloth 	**a cloth** 
fish 	**a fish** 
work 	**a work** 

Be careful - there's broken glass on the road. I need **a cloth** to wipe the table.
We had **fish** for dinner. *Hamlet* is one of Shakespeare's most famous **works**.

Here are some more nouns that can be used in both ways with different meanings.

countable	uncountable
There's a **black hair** in my soup; it must be yours!	She has beautiful red **hair**.
Did you buy **a paper** this morning? [a newspaper]	The printer has run out of **paper**.
They are campaigning to help indigenous **peoples** of South America.	I love meeting **people** from different countries. [individuals]
Can I borrow your **iron**? My shirt is a bit creased. [instrument]	People used to think ships made of **iron** would sink. [metal]
I had some interesting **experiences** during my trip to Latin America. [things that happened to me]	She has little work **experience**. [knowledge or skill obtained from doing something]
The city has a yearly **arts** festival. [music, theatre, etc.] He studied **arts** not sciences at uni. [subjects such as languages or history; always plural and without *the*]	Have you been to the modern **art** museum? It's wonderful. [usually refers to painting, drawing and sculpture]
I've seen that film three **times**. [occasions] We had some good **times** at university. [experiences]	**Time** passes very slowly if you have a boring job. [clock time, calendar time]

B Food

The names of food items often have a different meaning depending on whether they are used as countable or uncountable nouns (see **fish** above).

coffee/tea  → **a coffee** and two **teas** 

potato  → Just two **potatoes**, please! 

Would you like **some chocolate?**  → Would you like **a chocolate**? 

salt and **pepper**  → **a pepper** 

a hot dog with **onion**  → **an onion** 

Exercises

85.1 **Would you normally expect to find these things in most people's houses, flats, garages or gardens? In which room or place? Answer for both meanings (countable and uncountable).**

1 an iron / iron *Yes, most people have an iron to iron their clothes; they might keep it in the kitchen somewhere. Most people don't normally keep iron (the metal) at home, but they might have things made of iron (e.g. a frying pan) in the kitchen.*
2 a cloth / cloth
3 a fish / fish
4 glass / a glass
5 a wood / wood
6 pepper / a pepper
7 paper / a paper

85.2 **Which question would you ask? *Could I have/borrow a(n) …?* or *Could I have/borrow some …?***

1 cake *Could I have some cake?*



2 iron



3 pepper



4 chocolate



5 paper



6 rubber



7 glass



85.3 **Complete the answers using the word in brackets. Use *a(n)* or *the* if the meaning is countable.**

1 Oh dear! I've spilt water on the floor! (cloth) Never mind. Here's *a cloth – just wipe it up.*
2 How did you get that puncture in your car tyre? (glass) I drove .....
3 (*child*) Daddy, what are car tyres made of? (rubber) They're made .....
4 Have you worked in a primary school before? (experience) No, I don't .....
5 I wonder who won the general election in Sweden? (paper) We could buy .....
6 (*child*) Mum, what's the Mona Lisa? (work) It's .....
7 What's your favourite ice-cream flavour? (chocolate) My favourite .....

85.4 **What is the difference between (a) and (b) in each pair? Check in a dictionary if you're not sure.**

1 a She was always a great lover of the arts.
b Are you an art lover?
a **Arts** here means *theatre, music, etc.* b **Art** here means .....
2 a (*road sign*) PLANT AND HEAVY MACHINERY CROSSING
b I've bought you a house plant.
a **Plant** here means ..... b **A plant** here means .....
3 a There was a lot of damage to the car as a result of the accident.
b The film star won $500,000 in damages because the story in the newspaper was untrue.
a **Damage** here means ..... b **Damages** here means .....
4 a I've had some bad times at the dentist's!
b How many times have you been to the dentist's this year?
a **Times** here means ..... b **Times** here means .....

86 Making uncountable nouns countable

A Bit and piece

You can make many uncountable nouns singular and countable by adding **a piece of** or **a (little) bit of**. Similarly, you can make such nouns plural with **pieces of** or **bits of**. **Bit** is less formal than **piece** and they are not always interchangeable. **Bit** can be used with all types of nouns. **Piece** tends to be used more with uncountable nouns. **Bit** suggests a smaller amount than **piece**.

How many **pieces of** luggage have you got with you?
The police collected **bits of** information from different sources.
Chopin wrote some wonderful **pieces of** music.
Before you go to England I should give you two **bits of** advice …
He spends all his money buying new **bits of** computer equipment.

Common mistakes

We say: *What an attractive piece of **furniture**!* (NOT What ~~an attractive furniture~~!)

B Words that go with specific uncountable nouns

Weather

FORECAST


rain


sun


lightning


wind

Today's weather will be variable. In the north there are likely to be heavy **showers (of rain)**. The **sunny spell (of weather)** that we have had this last week will continue in much of the south although there may be occasional **rumbles of thunder** and **flashes of lightning** in some areas with some quite loud **claps of thunder** in one or two areas. These will be followed by a few **spots of rain** but **gusts of wind** should soon blow them away and the sunshine will then return.

See Unit 6 for more weather words.

Groceries

'I need a **loaf of** bread, a couple of **slices of** ham, two **bars of** chocolate, a **tube of** toothpaste, two **cartons of** milk and three **bars of** soap.' (**slice** can also be used with *toast*, *bread*, *meat* and *cheese*)

Nature

Look at the ladybird on that **blade of** grass!
What's happened? Look at that **cloud of** smoke hanging over the town!
We could see little **puffs of** smoke coming out of the volcano.
Let's go out and get a **breath of** fresh air.
Put another **lump of** coal on the fire, please. (**lump** can also be used with *sugar*)

Other words

I had an amazing **stroke of** luck this morning.
I've never seen him do a **stroke of** work. (only in negative sentences, more emphatic than **a bit of work**)
I've never seen him in such a **fit of** temper before.
The donkey is the basic **means of** transport on the island.
Jeans must be the most useful **article**/**item of** clothing ever invented.
There was an interesting **item of** news about France on TV last night.

C A state of

Nouns used with **a state of** are usually abstract and include **chaos**, **tension**, **confusion**, **health**, **disorder**, **uncertainty**, **poverty**, **agitation**, **disrepair** and **flux** [continuous change], e.g. The transport system is in **a state of** chaos.

Exercises

86.1 **Match the words on the left with the words they collocate with on the right.**

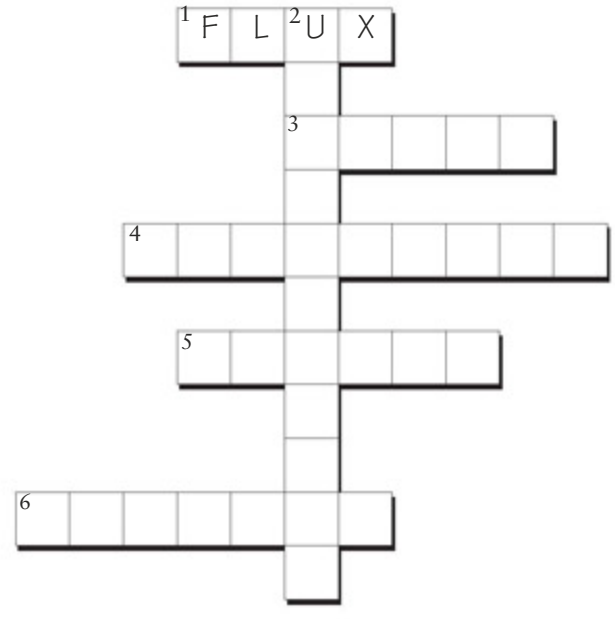
1	a stroke	[h]		a lightning
2	a shower	[ ]		b coal
3	an article	[ ]		c grass
4	a lump	[ ]	of	d news
5	a flash	[ ]		e rain
6	a blade	[ ]		f clothing
7	an item	[ ]		g thunder
8	a rumble	[ ]		h luck

86.2 **Change the uncountable nouns to countable nouns in the following sentences by using *piece, bit* or one of the more specific words from B.**

1 Could you buy me some bread, please? *Could you buy me a loaf of bread, please?*
2 My mother gave me some advice that I have always remembered.
3 Suddenly the wind almost blew him off his feet.
4 We had some terribly windy weather last winter.
5 Would you like some more toast?
6 He never does any work at all in the house.
7 Let's go to the park - I need some fresh air.
8 I can give you some important information about that.
9 We could see smoke hovering over the city from a long way away.
10 I need to get some furniture for my flat.

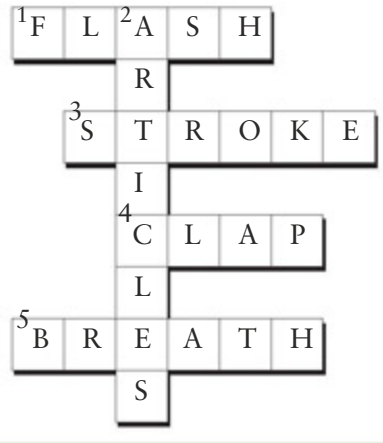
86.3 **Use words from C opposite to fit the clues for the puzzle below.**

1 The reforms mean that the country's education system is in a state of ..... at the moment but hopefully things will soon settle down.
2 We are still in a state of ..... as to who has won the election.
3 The country's infrastructure is in a state of ..... after the earthquake.
4 We fell in love with the house although it was in a dreadful state of .....
5 My granny wouldn't be in such a bad state of ..... now if she hadn't smoked all her life.
6 Although this is supposed to be an affluent society, many people are still living in a state of .....



86.4 **Over to you**

Make up sentence clues like those in 86.3 to match this puzzle.



87 Collective nouns

A People

Collective nouns are used to describe a **group** of the same people or things.



a **group** of people
(smaller number)



a **crowd** of people
(large number)



a **gang** of thieves
(rather negative)

B Words associated with certain animals

A **flock** of sheep or birds, e.g. geese/pigeons; a **herd** of cows, deer, goats; a **shoal** of fish (or any particular fish, e.g. a **shoal** of herring/mackerel - note the use of singular here); a **swarm** /sw m/ of insects (typically flying ones, e.g. a **swarm** of bees/gnats).
A **pack** of … can be used for dogs, hyenas, wolves, etc. as well as for (playing) cards.

C People involved in the same job/activity

These nouns are used with singular or plural verbs, depending on your point of view.
A **team** of reporters/rescue workers was/were at the scene of the disaster.
The **crew** was/were saved when the ship sank. [workers on a ship/ambulance/plane]
The **company** is/are rehearsing a new production. [group of actors]
The **cast** is/are all amateurs. [actors in a film or theatre production]
The **public** has/have a right to know the truth. [the people as a whole]
The **staff** are on strike. (normally used with a plural verb; general word for groups who share a place of work, e.g. teachers in a school, people in an office)

D Physical features of landscapes

In the picture we can see a **row** of cottages near a **clump** of trees with a **range** of hills in the background. Out on the lake there is a small **group** of islands.



E Things in general

a **pair** of birds sitting on a branch [two of anything that are the same]
a **couple** of strawberries [vague way of saying two, not necessarily exactly the same]
a **pile**/**heap** of papers (or clothes, dishes, toys, etc.)
a **bunch** of flowers (or grapes, bananas, etc.)
a **stack** of chairs (or tables, boxes, logs, etc.)
a **set** of tools (or pots and pans, dishes, etc.)



Exercises

87.1 **Fill each gap with a suitable collective noun.**

1 There are *swarms* of mosquitoes in the forests in Scandinavia in the summer.
2 As we looked into the water, we saw a ..... of brightly coloured fish.
3 There was a ..... of youths on the corner; they didn't look very friendly.
4 There's a ..... of cards on the bookshelf. Will you fetch them for me, please?
5 A ..... of biologists is studying marine life in this area.
6 Look at that ..... of birds on that tree. Both of them have beautiful markings. I wonder what they are?
7 Could you put a ..... of spoons of sugar in this coffee for me, please? It's very bitter. Yes, just two, that's fine. Thanks.

87.2 **In each case, one of the examples is wrong. Which one? Put a line through it.**

1 Company is often used for *actors* / *~~swimmers~~* / *opera singers*.
2 Cast is often used for people in *a play* / *a book* / *a film*.
3 Crew is often used for the staff of *an ambulance* / *a plane* / *a hospital*.
4 Pack is often used for *cats* / *dogs* / *wolves*.
5 Flock is often used for *sheep* / *pigeons* / *pigs*.
6 Herd is often used for *cows* / *fish* / *goats*.

87.3 **Match the collective nouns on the left with the words on the right.**

1 a clump of	[c]	a houses
2 a range of	[ ]	b flies
3 a gang of	[ ]	c fir trees
4 a swarm of	[ ]	d deer
5 a row of	[ ]	e grapes
6 a heap of	[ ]	f mountains
7 a herd of	[ ]	g criminals
8 a bunch of	[ ]	h bed linen

87.4 **Rewrite these sentences using collective nouns. Don't forget to change the verb to singular or plural where necessary.**

1 There are some tables on top of one another in the next room.
There is a stack of tables in the next room.
2 There are a large number of people waiting outside. .....
3 The people who work there are very well paid. .....
4 A large number of sheep had escaped from a field. .....
5 She gave me six identical glasses. .....
6 She gave me five or six beautiful roses. .....

87.5 **Some collective nouns are associated with words about using language. Underline any you can see in this text, check their meanings in a dictionary and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook.**

> THE journalists raised a host of difficult questions about the actions of the police during the demonstration. There had been a barrage of complaints about police violence. The Chief of Police replied that he was not prepared to listen to a string of wild accusations without any evidence. In the end, he just gave a series of short answers that left everyone dissatisfied.

88 Containers and contents

A



B

More information about these containers

container	usually made of	typical contents
bag	cloth, paper, plastic	sweets, shopping, mail
barrel	wood and metal	oil, wine, beer
basket	wicker, metal	shopping, clothes, waste paper
bottle	glass, plastic	milk, lemonade, wine
bowl	china, glass, wood	fruit, soup, sugar
box	cardboard, wood	matches, tools, toys, chocolates
bucket	metal, plastic	sand, water
can	tin	cola, beer
carton	card	milk, juice
case	leather, wood, cardboard	jewellery, spectacles, wine
crate	wood, plastic	bottles
glass	glass	milk, water, wine
jar	glass, pottery	jam, honey, olives, instant coffee
jug	pottery	milk, cream, water
mug	pottery	tea, coffee, cocoa
pack	card	cards, six cans of cola/beer
packet	card, paper, plastic	tea, biscuits, cereal, crisps
pan	metal	food that is being cooked
pot	plastic, metal, pottery	yoghurt, plant, paint
sack	cloth, plastic	coal, rubbish
tin	tin	tomatoes, sardines, fruit
tub	wood, plastic, card	flowers, rainwater, ice cream
tube	soft metal, plastic	toothpaste, paint, ointment

Exercises

88.1 **Complete the blanks in the shopping list without looking at the opposite page.**

1 a *tube* of toothpaste
2 two ..... of milk
3 four ..... of cola
4 a ..... of tuna
5 a ..... of chocolate biscuits
6 a ..... of yoghurt
7 a large ..... of matches
8 a ..... of honey
9 six ..... of crisps

88.2 **Try the following quiz about the words on the opposite page.**

1 Which two of the containers listed would you be most likely to find holding flowers in a garden?
a pot, a tub
2 Which three are you most likely to find in a cellar? .....
3 Which five of these would you be most likely to see in the drinks section of a large supermarket?
.....
4 Which five would you be most likely to see on the breakfast table? .....
5 Which two containers might a postman carry the post in and which is bigger? .....
6 Which two are often used for carrying shopping? .....

88.3 **Name the containers and their contents.**













1 *a jar of peanut butter*
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....










7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....
11 .....
12 .....

88.4 **Think of other words which are often used with the following containers.**

1 *shopping, wastepaper, linen* basket
2 ..... box
3 ..... bottle
4 ..... bag
5 ..... jug
6 ..... glass
7 ..... pot

89 Expressions with do and make

A Phrasal verbs with do and make

phrasal verb	meaning	example
do without	manage without	We'll have to do without a holiday this year as money is so short.
do away with	abolish, get rid of	It should be our ambition to do away with poverty in the world.
make for	move in the direction of	Let's make for the city centre and look for a restaurant there.
make of	think (opinion)	What do you make of the new software?
make off	leave hurriedly	He made off as soon as he heard their car turn into the drive.
make up for	compensate for	The superb food at the hotel made up for the uncomfortable rooms.

B Meanings of phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs have a number of different meanings, e.g. **do up** can mean not only 'fasten' but also 'renovate' and 'put into a bundle'. Similarly, **make out** can mean 'claim', 'manage to see' and 'understand'; **make up** can mean 'compose' or 'invent'; it can also mean 'constitute' or 'form', 'put cosmetics on', 'prepare by mixing together various ingredients' and 'make something more numerous or complete'.

C Collocations with *do* and *make*

There are a lot of other common collocations based on **do** and **make**. Note that most combinations referring to activities, work or duty use **do** whereas those which lead to an end product (e.g. tea, a cake, a noise, a toy boat, a profit) use **make**.



You **do**: your homework / the housework / some gardening / exercise / the washing-up / your best / the shopping / the cooking / business with … , and so on.

You **make**: a cup of tea / arrangements / an agreement / a suggestion / a decision / war / an attempt / a phone call / the best of … / an effort / an excuse / a mistake / a profit / a loss / love / the most of / a noise / a good or bad impression / a success of … / allowances for …[1] / a gesture / a face / fun of … / a fuss of …[2] / a go (a success) of … , and so on.



[1] consider someone's situation and not judge them harshly
[2] give someone a lot of attention and treat them well

Common mistakes

We say: *When I **do** my **homework**, I try not to **make** too many **mistakes***. (NOT When I ~~make~~ my homework, I try not to ~~do~~ too many mistakes.)

Exercises

89.1 **Here are some different ways in which *do up*, *make up* and *make out* can be used. What is the meaning of the phrasal verb in each case?**

1 Take this prescription to the chemist and she'll make it up for you. *prepare it so you can use it*
2 Can you make out the little white house on the mountain side? .....
3 A human being is made up of many, often conflicting, desires. .....
4 The present was beautifully done up in gold paper. .....
5 I just can't make Joe out. He's so strange. .....
6 Let's advertise the talk and hope we make up the numbers a bit. .....
7 He made out that he had never loved anyone else. She believed him. .....
8 We're planning to do up our bathroom at the weekend. It's looking rather old and dull.
.....

89.2 **Add the necessary prepositions or particles to complete this story.**

Last weekend we decided to start doing [1] *up* our bedroom. We agreed that we could do [2] ..... the old fireplace in the corner. As we began to remove it from the wall we found some old photographs done [3] ..... in a bundle behind a loose brick. At first we could not make [4] ..... what they were but we wiped them clean and realised they were all of the same young man. We spent an enjoyable evening making [5] ..... stories to explain why the pictures had been hidden.

89.3 **In each sentence below, there is an error with choice of particle. Correct the mistakes.**

1 I'm going to do ~~out~~ *away* with my old laptop and buy a new one. It's too old and too slow.
2 This weekend we are planning to make to the seaside.
3 Vast amounts of money do not always make of happiness.
4 Your shoelaces are untied. Do them in or you'll trip over.
5 They like to make away that they are very important people.
6 Thieves robbed the bank and made out with £1,000,000.

89.4 **Complete the following sentences using an appropriate expression from C.**

1 Pacifist posters in the 1960s used to say 'MAKE LOVE NOT *WAR*!'
2 It doesn't matter if you pass the exam or not, as long as you do .....
3 Companies that once made a huge ..... are now going bankrupt.
4 I don't like doing ..... but someone has to clean, wash, iron and cook!
5 You must make ..... the fact that he's only seven years old.
6 Dressing smartly for an interview helps you to make .....
7 Her company does a lot of ..... in East Asia selling educational software.
8 Do you do much ..... ? Yes, I go to the gym three times a week.

89.5 **Over to you**

Which of these things do you think you could do without and why?
mobile phone TV sunglasses laptop or tablet

How often do you do the shopping, the cooking, the washing-up?

90 Expressions with bring and take

A Phrasal verbs with bring

Each example is a typical spoken sentence and a more formal equivalent is provided in brackets.

My father's parents **brought** him **up** in the country because they thought that country life was better for children. [raised]
Don't give up. I'm sure you'll **bring** it **off** in the end. [succeed]
Cold winds always **bring on** her cough. [cause to start]
The strike **brought about** a change of government. [caused to happen]
Ford Motors are **bringing out** an interesting new model in the spring. [introducing]
I hope they don't **bring back** capital punishment. [re-introduce]
They promised to **bring down** taxes but they have actually raised them. [lower]
Inflation will probably **bring down** the government. [destroy, remove from power]
Keep trying to persuade him and you'll **bring** him **round** to your point of view. [persuade]

B Phrasal verbs with take

Doesn't he **take after** his father! They even sound the same. [resemble]
I wish I could **take back** what I said to her. [withdraw]
It's hard to **take in** his lectures - he speaks in such an abstract way. [absorb, understand]
She was completely **taken in** by him and agreed to give him all her money. [deceived]
Sales have really **taken off** now - we should make a good profit this year. [started to improve]
The plane **took off** two hours late. [left the ground]
She's very good at **taking off** her teacher - she sounds just like her. [imitating]
We'll have to **take on** more staff if we're to **take on** more work. [employ] [accept]
Nelson is going to **take over** as manager in July. [start doing a job]
She **took to** him at once and they soon became close friends. [formed an immediate liking for]
When did you **take up** golf? [start (a hobby)]

C Common expressions with *bring* and *take*

The new regulations will **be brought into force** in May. [become law]
His research **brought** some very interesting facts **to light**. [revealed]
Matters **were brought to a head** when Lily was sacked. [reached a point where changes had to be made]
It's better that everything should be **brought into the open**. [made public]
His new girlfriend has really **brought out the best in** him. [been good for him]

Don't let him **take advantage of** you. [unfairly use superiority]
After 20 years of marriage he **takes** her **for granted**. [doesn't appreciate her qualities]
I **took it for granted** you'd come - you always do. [assumed]
She immediately **took control** of the situation. [started organising]
His unkind words **took my breath away**. [surprised]
The story **takes place** in Mexico. [happens]
Leaving his job before he's found a new one is **taking a risk**. [doing something risky]
It's impossible to **take** such a silly suggestion **seriously**. [consider as serious]
Don't forget to **take travel costs into account** in the budget. [consider]
He doesn't seem to **take pride in** his work. [draw satisfaction from]
You must **take the opportunity** to visit the castle while you're here. [use the chance]

Exercises

90.1 **Complete these sentences with the appropriate preposition or particle.**

1 The school reforms which plan to bring *back* a more traditional style of exams for children are generally unpopular.
2 The bumpy journey brought ..... labour and the baby was born on the bus.
3 I think the strikes will bring ..... some changes in management.
4 If anyone can bring it ....., he can.
5 He won't agree to it for me but she can always bring him .....
6 She brought ..... six children all on her own.

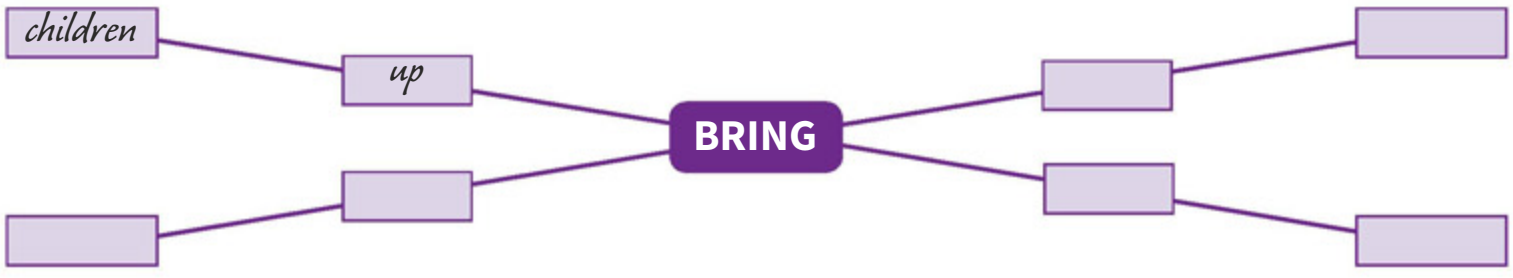
90.2 **Complete the bubble network below with phrasal verbs based on *take*.**



90.3 **Reword these sentences using expressions from C opposite.**

1 The story of the film happens in Casablanca during the war.
The story of the film takes place in Casablanca during the war.
2 Today's newspaper has revealed some fascinating information about the President.
3 The situation reached crisis point when the union called for a strike.
4 You need to consider the historical context of the novel in your essay.
5 The view from the top of the hill was astonishing.
6 He capitalised on her weakness at the time and she gave it to him.
7 If you're going to succeed in business you must be prepared to not always do the safe thing.
8 You shouldn't assume that anyone or anything will always be the same.

90.4 **Make a bubble network like the one in 90.2, based on phrasal verbs with *bring*.**



90.5 **Which of the expressions in C mean the opposite of:**

1 to keep quiet *to bring into the open*
2 to laugh at
3 to be as expected
4 to drop an old law
5 to be careless about
6 to be subordinate to

90.6 **Over to you**

Answer the questions using one of the phrasal verbs in A or B opposite.

1 Where were you brought up? *I was born and brought up in Scotland.*
2 If you had time to take up a new sport or other leisure activity, what would it be?
3 Who do you take after more - your mother or your father?
4 What new law has been brought into force recently in your country?
5 What kind of teacher do you find brings out the best in you?
6 What changes would you like your country's current government to bring about?
7 Can you think of someone who you've immediately taken to?
8 Have you ever taken on too much work?

91 Expressions with *get*

A Meanings of *get*

Get is used frequently in spoken English. It has the following basic meanings:

- receive, obtain or buy something, e.g. Please **get** me a sandwich when you're in town. I **got** a text from John today. She **got** top marks in her exam.
- change position - move or be moved, e.g. How are you **getting** home tonight?
- change state - become or make, e.g. She's ill but she's **getting** better.

B Specific meanings of *get*

Get also has many other more specific meanings.
It's my turn to **get dinner** tonight. [prepare a meal]
I don't **get it**. Why did he speak like that? [understand]
His behaviour really **gets** me at times. [annoy]
I saw Harry's new girlfriend at the party but I didn't **get to** speak to her. [manage]
Once we **got to know** each other, we became great friends. [became acquainted]
The phone's ringing and there's someone at the door! You **get** the phone and I'll **get** the door. [answer, respond to]

C Phrasal verbs based on get

phrasal verb	meaning	example
get across	successfully communicate an idea	It was difficult to get my point of view across to the committee.
get at	reach, find	I hope the inquiry will get at the truth.
get behind with	fail to do something by a certain time	I've got terribly behind with my work.
get down	depress	This weather is getting me down.
get down to	begin to give some serious attention to	It's time you got down to some work.
get into	be successful with an application (e.g. to a college/school)	She did well in her exams and got into university.
get on	manage	However will we get on without you?
get on	advance, develop	Jo is getting on very well at school.
get out of	avoid a responsibility	I'll try to get out of my next lesson.
get over	recover from	She's getting over a bad attack of flu.
get round	spread	The news soon got round the village.
get round to	do something you've intended to do for a long time	I need to buy a new desk but I can't get round to it. I'm so busy.
get through	come to a successful end	I'm glad she got through all her exams!
get through	use up all of	He got through his month's salary in just one weekend.
get up to	to do (especially something bad)	The children are very quiet. I wonder what they're getting up to?

D Other expressions based on *get*

You seem to have **got out of bed on the wrong side** today. [be in a bad mood]
The meeting **got off to a good/bad start** with Elliot's speech. [started well/badly]
I'm organising a little **get-together**. I hope you can come. [informal meeting/party]
When they broke up he **got rid of** everything of hers. [threw away / destroyed]
I'm going to **get my own back** on her somehow. [take my revenge]

Exercises

91.1 Replace the underlined *get* expressions with another way of expressing the same idea. Note that by doing this you are changing the text from being very informal to being slightly more formal.

I don't often *receive* get interesting junk mail. However, an unusual item came this morning. It was headed 'Are things getting you down? Do you feel you'll just never get to do all those things you dream of?' And it went on, 'If so, get this great new book today: *Manage Your World* by Simon Triksta. It will teach you how to get over those daily upsets, and will ensure that you get the contentment in your work that you long for and that you fulfil your dreams. Send €25 today to get *Manage Your World* and your key to success within ten days.'
Maybe I should get it!



91.2 Fill the gaps in the sentences below in the most appropriate way.

1 Although they had only told their parents about their engagement, the news soon got *round* the village.
2 She must have made a good impression last week because she has got ..... to the second round of interviews for the job.
3 I have an essay to write but I'm finding it hard to get ..... it.
4 I've been meaning to redecorate my room for ages but I just can't get ..... it.
5 What have you been getting ..... since we last met?
6 Surely you haven't got ..... all the biscuits already?
7 The new political party was finding it difficult to get its message ..... to the public.
8 I was ill last semester and I got seriously ..... with my studies. If this continues, I probably won't get ..... university this year.
9 We're having a get-..... on Friday to celebrate Jan's birthday. Would you like to come?
10 His progress on the guitar was slow at first, but he's getting ..... well now.

91.3 Match the situations on the left with the appropriate responses on the right.

1 Someone has been very impolite to one of your friends.	[e]	a You always try to get out of things!
2 Someone is about to throw something away.	[ ]	b You wait! I'll get my own back on you one day!
3 Someone is being negative about everything you suggest.	[ ]	c Don't get rid of that yet!
4 Someone has done something very cruel to you.	[ ]	d You got out of bed on the wrong side this morning!
5 Someone says they can't help with the clearing up after a party.	[ ]	e Your rudeness really gets me!

91.4 Over to you

Complete the following sentences in a way that is true for you.

1 I would hate to get rid of …
2 My … got off to a bad start because …
3 I find it very hard to get down to …
4 I wish I could get out of …
5 … is really getting me down.

92 Expressions with *set* and *put*

A Phrasal verbs based on set

Since his daughter's birth, Robert had been **setting aside**[1] money for her wedding. Now he and his wife were **setting off**[2] to meet Carl, her new fiancé. Carl was a mountaineer who had **set out**[3] several times to climb Mount Everest but had had to turn back because bad weather had **set off**[4] avalanches. Now he was trying to **set up**[5] a sports equipment business. Robert didn't altogether like the sound of Carl but he was doing his best to **set aside**[6] his negative feelings.

[1] reserving [2] beginning a journey [3] begun something with a particular aim in mind [4] caused
[5] establish [6] ignore (not think about)

B Phrasal verbs with put

Note: It would not normally be natural to use all of these expressions together.

Emma **put** her own name **forward**[1] for election to the staff committee. Ten other people had also **put in**[2] proposal forms but Emma was elected because she is very good at **putting** her ideas **across**[3]. She also has a talent for **putting** her opponents **down**[4]. At the first meeting she was largely silent though occasionally she would **put in**[5] a remark.

At the next meeting she was more involved. She supported the proposal that central heating should be **put in**[6] in the staff canteen and agreed to help **put together**[7] some new flat-pack furniture for the canteen. She also voted for the local school being allowed to use the staff club to **put on**[8] a play. She insisted that the play would not **put** staff **out**[9] at all provided that the school **put** all their props **away**[10] after each performance. She said that she would **put up**[11] relatives coming from other towns to watch the play. She argued that the committee should **put off**[12] making their decision about **putting up**[13] staff club membership subscriptions until they had found out how staff felt about this. She agreed to **put up**[14] posters encouraging all staff to come to the next committee meeting.

Later that evening Emma made her mother laugh as she imitated other committee members - she's good at **putting on**[15] all sorts of accents. 'The chairperson really **put** me **off**[16] with his constant sniffing,' she said, 'and I don't know how they **put up with**[17] the secretary's rudeness.'

[1] proposed [2] submitted [3] communicating [4] making someone look small [5] say something
[6] installed [7] assemble [8] present [9] inconvenience [10] tidied [11] give accommodation to
[12] postpone [13] raising [14] display [15] pretending to have [16] distracted [17] tolerate

C Expressions with set and put

He has **set his heart/sights on** becoming a ballet dancer. [longs to become]
I've **set** myself **a target** of losing five kilos by the end of the year. [am aiming to lose]
They sat up till the small hours **setting/putting the world to rights**. [discussing important problems]
Did someone **set fire to** the house deliberately? [put a match to]
The prisoner will be **set free** tomorrow. [released]
Lottie had never **set foot in** Italy before. [been to]
The Egyptian runner has **set a** new world **record**. [established an achievement record]
Teachers have to try to **set a good example** for young people. [be a good example]
to put your foot down: to be firm about something
to put pressure on someone: to try to force someone to do something
to put your mind to: to direct all your thoughts towards
to put two and two together: to draw an obvious conclusion
to put an end / a stop to something: to cause something to stop
to put someone's back up: to irritate someone
a put-up job: something arranged to give a false impression

Exercises

92.1 **Put the following sentences into slightly more formal English by replacing the phrasal verbs with their formal equivalents.**

1 They have recently set up a committee on teenage smoking.
They have recently established a committee on teenage smoking.
2 We try to set aside some money for our holiday every week.
3 Set aside all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
4 If we hadn't set off so late, we would have arrived on time.
5 The government's unpopular proposals set off a wave of protests.

92.2 **Write three nouns which could follow each of the verbs. Remember that their meanings might be different depending on the noun which follows.**

1 put in *money / a comment / an effort*
2 put forward .....
3 put off .....
4 put across .....
5 put up .....
6 put on .....
7 put away .....
8 put up with .....

92.3 **Write responses to the following statements or questions using any appropriate phrasal verb from A or B opposite.**

1 He's always so rude. *I wouldn't put up with it if I were you.*
2 This room is in a terrible mess.
3 What time do we have to leave for the airport tomorrow?
4 Any chance of a bed on your floor this weekend?
5 Why have you suddenly lost interest in the project?
6 What is Adam planning to do when he gets his business degree?
7 How should we publicise our play?
8 I've taken all the bits for my new desk out of the pack but now I don't know where to start.

92.4 **Using the expressions in C opposite, reword the following sentences without changing their meaning.**

1 They have promised to liberate the hostages at noon.
They have promised to set the hostages free at noon.
2 He's bound to draw the obvious conclusion if you keep on behaving like that.
3 Her aim is to become Prime Minister.
4 I find her terribly irritating.
5 If you try to make her change her mind it'll make her even more determined.
6 Please concentrate on the problem in hand.
7 She is determined to get a seat in Parliament.
8 She threw petrol on the rubbish and put a match to it.
9 It's time the teacher told the children to stop making so much noise.
10 The man has officially eaten more burgers in one hour than anyone else.
11 This is the first time I've ever been to the southern hemisphere.
12 We spent most of our evenings discussing the problems of the world rather than studying.
13 You really should be firm with him or there'll be trouble later.
14 If the teacher doesn't behave properly, the children certainly won't.
15 His goal is to run the Athens marathon next year.

93 Expressions with *come* and *go*

A Phrasal verbs based on *come*

Did the meeting you were planning ever **come off**? [take place] When do the exam results **come out**? [be published, made public] I must tell you about an important point which **came up** at the meeting. [was raised] Please **come round** and see me sometime. [pay an informal visit] Nothing can **come between** him and football. [separate, be a barrier between] I **came across** a lovely old vase in that junk shop. [found by chance] How did you **come by** that bruise / that car? [receive, obtain] Computer prices have **come down** recently. [decreased] Sofia **came up with** a really good idea to raise money for charity. [thought of / suggested a plan or solution to a problem]

B Collocations with *come to* and *come into*

Come to often refers to the idea of 'arriving at'. **Come into** often refers to the idea of starting or acquiring.

come to + collocations		examples
an agreement a conclusion a standstill [stop] an end	a decision terms with [acknowledge and accept psychologically]	The two sides have at last come to an agreement. Traffic came to a standstill because of the snow. The war finally came to an end in 2005.
***come into* + collocations**		**examples**
contact (with) a fortune [receive when someone dies] operation [start working] sight/view	existence fashion	He came into a fortune when his uncle died. The new motorway will come into operation next March. After two hours at sea, the island came into sight/view.

C Phrasal verbs based on *go*

Some of these have a number of different meanings.

go on: What is **going on** next door? [happening] They **went on** working despite the noise. [continued] As the weeks **went on**, things improved. [passed] You **go on**, we'll catch you up later. [go in advance] He's always **going on at** me about my untidy hair. [criticising, complaining]

go through: I wouldn't like to **go through** that again. [experience, endure] Let's **go through** the plans once more. [check] Unfortunately, the business deal we were hoping for did not **go through** in the end. [was not completed or approved]

go for: He really **went for** her when she dared to criticise him. [attacked] Which course have you decided to **go for**? [choose]

go with: Those shoes don't **go with** that dress. [suit, match]

D Other expressions based on *go*

I hope they'll **make a go of** the business but they are taking a big risk. [make a success of]

He's been **on the go** all day and he's exhausted. [very busy, on the move]

It **goes without saying** that we'll support you. [clear without being said]

Your work is good, **as far as it goes**. [but is limited or insufficient]

The story goes that they were once very close friends. [It is said that … / It seems that …]

They **went to great lengths** to keep it a secret. [took a lot of trouble]

The business has **gone bankrupt**. [not got enough money to pay debts]



Exercises

93.1 Which meanings do these underlined verbs have?

1 He went on composing music till his eighties. *continued*
2 She was so suspicious that she used to go through his pockets every night.
3 The dog went for the postman.
4 We had planned a meeting but it never came off.
5 I came across a photo of my grandmother the other day. I look just like her.
6 I wish you'd stop going on at me!
7 I was sure he'd go for a holiday in Greece rather than stay at home.
8 Does this top go with these trousers?
9 Nobody has come up with a solution to the problem so far.

93.2 Choose one of the expressions in B to complete each of the sentences.

1 I found it really hard to make up my mind but in the end I came *to a decision.*
2 When his grandmother dies, he'll come .....
3 After four years of fighting, the civil war finally came .....
4 Halfway up the steep hill, the bus came .....
5 They say that long skirts are coming ..... again.
6 The telephone first came ..... nearly 150 years ago.
7 I found it very difficult to come ..... my failure.
8 As we drove round the corner the house came .....

93.3 Replace the underlined expressions with one of the expressions in D.

1 I don't need to say that we wish you all the best in the future. *It goes without saying*
2 They took a lot of trouble to avoid meeting each other.
3 I've been extremely busy all day and I'm longing for a shower now and to relax.
4 I do hope he will be successful in his new business.
5 Everyone says that they were together that night.
6 The film is good up to a point but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

93.4 Match questions on the left with the responses on the right.

1 Why don't you and Ollie go on?	[c]	a Any time after eight.
2 How did he come by so much money?	[ ]	b The firm went bankrupt.
3 Did the plan go through?	[ ]	c We'll catch you up.
4 What's the worst pain you've ever gone through?	[ ]	d A rich aunt of his died.
5 Why did that factory close down?	[ ]	e No, people voted against it.
6 When should I come round to your place?	[ ]	f It looks like a demonstration.
7 What's going on over there?	[ ]	g When I broke my wrist.

93.5 Over to you

Complete the sentences in a way that is true for you.

1 I hope I make a go of .....
2 My exam results will come out .....
3 My … shoes go with my .....
4 I never want to go through ..... again.
5 As my English course goes on, ...
6 It's not easy to come to terms with .....
7 I've come to the conclusion that learning English .....
8 I came across a new English word recently. It was .....

94 Expressions with other common verbs

A Look

I **look forward to** hearing from you at your earliest convenience. (at end of formal letter)
The police are **looking into** the matter. [investigating]
They need to **look at** all the evidence before reaching a decision. [examine]
She **looks down on** anyone she thinks is inferior to her. [despises; *opp* look up to = admire]
It's hard to be positive but do try to **look on the bright side**. [be optimistic]

B See

Sue tries to **see about**/**to** arrangements for the conference at least a year ahead. [deal with]
We all went to **see** Jana **off** at the airport. [accompany someone who is leaving]
It didn't take Tom long to **see through** her. [understand she was trying to deceive]
That can't be Hamid. He's in Paris this week. I must be **seeing things**. [imagining it]

C Run

I **ran into** an old friend yesterday - I had no idea she was in town. [met by chance]
Her patience has **run out** and she has told him she won't help him any more. [come to an end]
We've **run out of** milk. [there is none left]
Let's **run over** the plans again to make sure we've thought of everything. [quickly go through]
Things may be hard now but it'll be worth it **in the long run**. [in the distant future]
The trains have stopped **running** because of the avalanche. [operating]

D Turn

Everyone was very surprised when she **turned down** the promotion and explained that she was leaving the company. [rejected]
Naoko **turned up** last night. I haven't seen her for years! [appeared]
I'm going to **turn over a new leaf** this year and answer all my letters the day I get them! [start doing something in a better way]
The fire bell **turned out** to be a false alarm. [was discovered]

E Let

He has been **let down** so many times in the past - I hope he won't be disappointed again.
Don't **let go of** the rope or she'll fall and hurt herself.
The accused was **let off** with a fine. [received a small punishment for a crime]
When she **let it slip** that she had been given a pay rise, the other workers were very angry. [say something, sometimes without meaning to]

F Break

No one likes people who **break their promises**. [don't do what they say they'll do]
The speaker **broke off** in the middle of a sentence. [suddenly stopped talking]
I'm dreading **breaking the news** to him. He's going to be very upset.
[telling someone something]
When he left her, he **broke her heart**. [made her very sad]
The sprinter **broke the record** for the 100 metres. [ran faster than anyone had run before]

Exercises

94.1 **Use the expressions on the opposite page to help you fill in the gaps in the text below. Use one word only in each gap.**

Let's run [1] *over* the plans for tomorrow's disco just once more. First, I must see [2] _____ the food arrangements while you make sure that none of the people who've said they'll help are going to break their [3] _____. I don't imagine that many people will turn [4] _____ until later but Beata and Roshan said they'll come early and I'm sure they won't let us [5] _____



94.2 **Rewrite the following sentences. Use an expression containing the word in brackets in an appropriate form.**

1 Eva is always optimistic. (look) *Eva always looks on the bright side.*
2 I met Julio by chance at the station yesterday. (run)
3 Nadia didn't tidy her room yesterday even though she said she would. (break)
4 I thought I was hallucinating when I saw a monkey in the garden. (see)
5 The police didn't charge the boy, only giving him a warning. (let)
6 Stupidly, I mentioned that Sabrina was planning to move abroad. (let)
7 An enormous crowd came to hear the President speak. (turn)
8 My aunt despises people who don't have a good job. (look)
9 Dan has promised to improve his behaviour. (turn)
10 Natalie has always admired her older cousin. (look)

94.3 **Complete the sentences in an appropriate way.**

1 I look forward *to hearing from you soon.*
2 It can be hard to see through someone's lies if they _____
3 Halfway up the mountain he let go _____
4 It'll be better in the long run if you _____
5 He felt terribly let down when _____
6 She didn't turn up _____
7 I'm afraid we've run out _____
8 In my last year at school I decided to look into _____
9 I agreed to see about _____
10 It's your turn _____

94.4 **Over to you**

1 Have you ever turned down an offer or invitation that you later regretted?
2 If you were about to buy a house, what sort of things would you want to look at first?
3 Have you ever done something because you felt it might be useful in the long run?
4 What - if anything - stops public transport from running in your country?
5 Do you think it is possible for someone's heart to be broken?
6 Have you ever resolved to turn over a new leaf? In what way(s)?
7 Do you have any particular jobs that you must see to today? If so, what?
8 Has your home ever been broken into? What happened?
9 Can you think of something that has happened to you recently that turned out very differently from how you had expected?

95 Formal and informal words 1

A What is formality?

Formality is all about your relationship with the person you're speaking or writing to. If you use formal language, it may be because you wish to show respect, politeness, or to put yourself at a distance (for example, 'official' language, or academic language). Informal language can show friendliness, equality or a feeling of closeness and solidarity with someone. You should *never* use informal language just to sound fluent or clever.

B Scales of formality

Some groups of words can be put on a scale from formal to neutral to informal.

formal →	neutral →	informal
offspring	children	kids
abode / residence	house / flat / home	place
goodbye	bye	bye-bye / cheerio
go amiss	go wrong	go pear-shaped

C Words of Latin and Greek origin

Many longer words that come from Latin and Greek are quite formal. Here are some with their neutral and/or informal equivalents, which are often shorter words.

I'll go and email Kieran **immediately**. [neutral equivalent: **at once**; informal equivalent: **right away**]
The researchers **utilise** the most modern equipment. [neutral equivalent: **use**]
This problem **frequently occurs** with older software. [neutral equivalent: **often happens**]
The study **established** a link between stress and ill-health. [neutral equivalent: **showed/proved**]
This book **provides** us **with** a picture of ordinary life in the Middle Ages. [neutral equivalent: **gives**]
The government **attempted** to reduce unemployment by supporting new businesses. [neutral equivalent: **tried**]
Physicists **seek** answers to **fundamental** questions about the universe. [neutral equivalents: **search for** / **look for**; **basic**]

D Formal phrases

Many phrases are typical of formal contexts such as academic or official language.

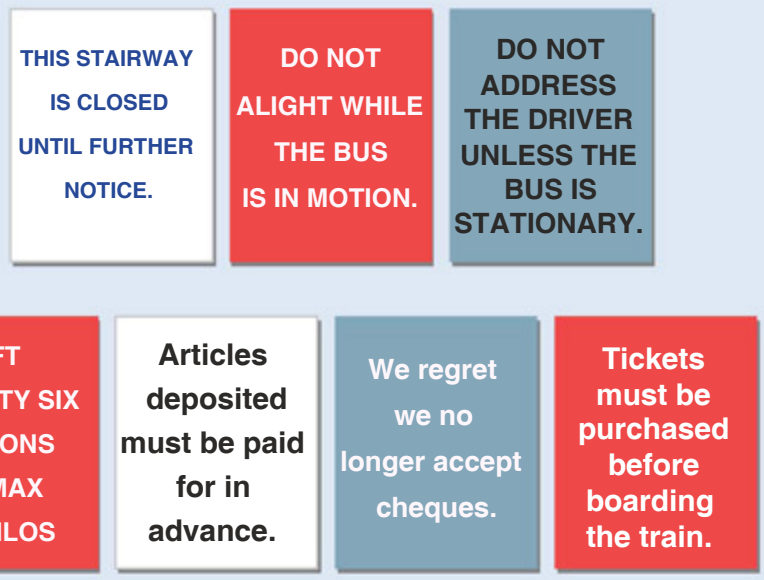
What should the government do **in terms of**[1] helping young people? Students, **in particular**[2], need support to complete their studies, **on account of**[3] the high fees and living costs they have to meet. Should students be given financial support **on the basis of**[4] their family circumstances? And how should the government act **in relation to**[5] youth unemployment?

The definitions give less formal or neutral equivalents.

[1] as regards, about [2] especially [3] because of [4] according to [5] as regards, about, in connection with

E Formality in notices, instructions, etc.

You will often see rather formal words in signs, notices and directions. Make sure you know the meaning of the words used so that you could tell someone what the notice says using less formal words.



Exercises

95.1 **Make the underlined words neutral, using words from B opposite.**

1 She had no <u>offspring</u> and left all her money to her niece. *children*
2 The plan went <u>pear-shaped</u> and they abandoned the idea. .....
3 His <u>abode</u> was a small, rather old building on the edge of town. .....
4 <u>Cheerio</u> for now. I'll call you again tomorrow at 9.30. .....
5 Where are the <u>kids</u>? Are they in the garden? .....

95.2 **Make the underlined words more formal, using words from C opposite.**

1 The link between smoking and lung cancer was <u>shown</u> decades ago. *established*
2 Anyone <u>looking for</u> employment in the film industry faces a tough time. .....
3 Social scientists often <u>use</u> official statistics in their research. .....
4 How <u>often</u> does the temperature fall to below zero? .....
5 If there is a fire, sound the fire alarm <u>right away</u>. Do not <u>try</u> to put the fire out. .....
6 Poverty is a <u>basic</u> issue in the world today. .....
7 This problem <u>happens</u> when the computer's hard drive becomes full. .....
8 The doctor <u>gave</u> the patient a new drug that had not been fully tested. .....

95.3 **Complete the sentences with words from the opposite page.**

1 It would be wrong to make a decision *on* the basis *of* incomplete information.
2 The Internet can be a dangerous place. Children, in ....., need to be protected.
3 What do we need ..... terms ..... equipment to do this experiment?
4 Several questions arose during the discussion ..... relation ..... the economy.
5 He had to cancel his lecture on ..... of illness.

95.4 **Find words on the opposite page for the following.**

1 the opposite of **stationary** *in motion*
2 the opposite of **to board** .....
3 a) to be sorry ..... b) to buy ..... c) to speak to .....
d) get on .....
4 a formal word for **people** .....
5 a formal word for **stairs** .....

95.5 **If you look up an informal word in a monolingual dictionary, you will often find a neutral equivalent as part of the definition or explanation. For example, the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary of English* entry for *kid* says: 'informal: a child or young person'.**

Use a dictionary to find neutral or more formal words for these:

1 kip *sleep*
2 a pal .....
3 a mate .....
4 swot .....
5 ta! .....
6 brainy .....
7 gross .....
8 dodgy .....

95.6 **Over to you**

How do you mark whether a word is formal or informal in your vocabulary notebook? If possible, compare your way with someone else's.

See also Unit 96 for other formal and informal words and expressions.

96 Formal and informal words 2

A Monosyllabic informal words

Informal versions of words are often short and monosyllabic (consist of one syllable).





The **cops** have arrived. [police]
The house has two **loos**. [toilets]
It cost me ten **quid**. [pounds]
I'll help you peel the **spuds**. [potatoes]
My **bike**'s been stolen. [bicycle]
I always go by **tube**. [word used for the London Underground]
His dad spent ten years in the **nick**. [prison]
I'll get a **cab** from the station. [taxi]

B Clippings

Shortening a word tends to make it less formal, though these forms are acceptable in a wide range of contexts.

I'll meet you in the **lab**(oratory).
She works for a **tech**(nology) company.
What's on **telly** tonight? [television]
Have you seen that **mag**(azine)?
We should put an **ad**(vertisement) / an **advert**(isement) in the (news)**paper**.
Can I use your **mobile** (phone)? I need to (tele)**phone** my brother.
There's milk in the **fridge**. [refrigerator]
Her sister's a **vet**(erinary surgeon).
Would you like to be a **celeb**(rity)? [famous person]

C Slang

Slang is extremely informal language. Slang helps to make speech vivid, colourful and interesting but it can easily be used inappropriately. Slang is mainly used in speech but it is also often found in the popular press and in literature. Slang changes very quickly, so some words go out of fashion, but you may meet them in novels and films. Some slang expressions may cause offence to some people. Here are some examples you may hear or read.
Expressions for money: **dosh readies moolah**
Expressions for food and drinks: **nosh grub sarnie** [sandwich] **cuppa** [cup of tea]
People obsessed with computers or other equipment: **nerd geek anorak**
Jobs: **quack** [doctor] **shrink** [psychiatrist] **the old bill** [the police] **squaddie** [soldier of a low rank]

Language help

If you are interested in slang, you can find more examples in films or in the tabloid press but it is probably safest to keep it in your passive rather than your active vocabulary.

Exercises

96.1 **Make this conversation more *informal* by changing some of the words. Refer to the opposite page if necessary.**

JIM: Annie, can you lend me ten ~~pounds?~~ *quid*

ANNIE: What for?

JIM: I've got to go and see my parents, and my bicycle's not working, so I'll have to get a taxi.

ANNIE: Can't you telephone them and say you can't come?

JIM: Well, I could, but my mobile phone's not working, and I want to go because they always have lots of food, and the refrigerator at our flat is empty, as usual.

ANNIE: Can't you go by underground? Anyway, you're in luck, I've got some money, so here you are.

96.2 **Replace the underlined words with more formal equivalents.**

1 The train was full of squaddies going home for the weekend. ..... *soldiers*
2 I've got a bad stomach ache - I think I'll make an appointment with the quack. .....
3 He spent two years in the nick for stealing cars. .....
4 The cops arrived shortly after the accident. .....
5 There'll be plenty of nosh at the party so we don't need to eat beforehand. .....
6 He's quite a celeb in the world of poetry. .....
7 I'm dying for a cuppa. I haven't had one since breakfast. .....
8 I'd love to get a motorbike but I just don't have the moolah. .....

96.3 **Replace the informal words in these sentences with more formal words.**

1 (formal email) I should like to enquire about the cost of ~~ads~~ *advertisements* on your website.
2 (exam essay) The Internet and telly are probably the biggest influences on young people today.
3 (recipe in a cookery book) Next, slice the spuds and place them on top of the meat.
4 (exam essay) Papers face stiff competition these days from TV and internet news.
5 (formal university publicity) The Faculty offers courses in vet science. Lab facilities are available 24 hours a day.

96.4 **Another way of making informal words is by using short forms ending in *-y* or *-ie*. Can you work out the meanings of the following underlined words?**

1 Let's have brekkie before we leave tomorrow. ..... *breakfast*
2 It's a nice day. Let's have a barbie and eat in the garden. .....
3 D'you want a biccy with your coffee? .....
4 Jenny turned up at the party with her new hubby. .....
5 Oh, let me see your holiday piccies! … Is that you in the big straw hat? .....
6 They serve really nice veggie food. .....



He's a brickie.

96.5 **Over to you**

Which English words do you know that are very informal or are slang? Where did you read or hear them? If possible, compare with a friend or classmate.

97 Similes

A As ... as

As ... as similes are easy to understand. If you see the phrase **as dead as a doornail**, you don't need to know what a doornail is, simply that the whole phrase means 'totally dead'. But remember fixed similes are usually informal and often humorous. Those marked * are negative and could offend. Use all these expressions with care and keep them generally as part of your receptive vocabulary.

Creating a picture in your mind can often help you remember the simile:



as **blind** as a **bat***



as **thin** as a **rake***



as **strong** as an **ox**



as **quiet** as a **mouse**

Some can be remembered as pairs of opposites.
as **heavy** as **lead** /led/ ≠ as **light** as a **feather** as **drunk** as a **lord*** ≠ as **sober** as a **judge**
as **black** as **night** ≠ as **white** as **snow** (particularly used in fairy tales)
Some can be remembered by sound patterns.
as **good** as **gold** (this is used about children's behaviour)
as **cool** as a **cucumber** as **busy** as a **bee**

Some other useful phrases using **as ... as**:
The bed was **as hard as iron** and I couldn't sleep.
I'll give this plant some water. The soil's **dry as a bone**.
He's **as mad as a hatter***. He crossed the Atlantic in a bathtub.
She told the teacher, **as bold as brass**, that his lessons were boring.
You'll have to speak slowly and clearly - he's **as deaf as a post***.
Don't worry. Passing this exam is **as easy as pie**.
She knew the answer **as quick as a flash**.
The Princess's skin was **as white as snow**. [beautifully white]
When he saw it, his face went **as white as a sheet**. [pale with fear/horror]
The fish was bad and I was **as sick as a dog**. [vomiting]
She ran off with my money - I felt **as sick as a parrot**. [bad feeling of disappointment/frustration]



When I told him, his face went **as red as a beetroot**.

Language help

You can usually make a simile using **as ... as can be**, e.g. *I need a drink; I'm **as thirsty as can be***.

B Like

My plan **worked like a dream** and the problem was soon solved. [worked very smoothly and well]
Be careful the boss doesn't see you - she **has eyes like a hawk**. [sees everything]
No wonder he's fat. He **eats like a horse** and **drinks like a fish***.
Did you **sleep** well? Yes, thanks, **like a log**.
Sorry, I forgot to ring him again. I'**ve got a mind**/**head like a sieve**! [be very forgetful]
The boss is **like a bear with a sore head** today. [in a very bad temper]
She goes around **like a bull in a china shop***. [behaving in a very clumsy, insensitive way]
Criticising the government in his presence is **like a red rag to a bull**. [certain to make him very angry]

Exercises

97.1 **Complete the *as … as* similes.**

1 Rosie is as mad as a *hatter* - you wouldn't believe the crazy things she does.
2 You're not eating enough - you're as thin as a ..... .
3 He never says a thing - he's as quiet as a ..... .
4 You'll have to shout - she's as deaf as a ..... .
5 I'm afraid I can't read this small print - I'm as blind as a ..... without my glasses.

97.2 **Different similes contain the same word. Fill the gap with the appropriate words.**

1 I feel great now. I *slept* like a log.
2 No! It's as easy as ..... off a log.
3 After eating that bad cheese I was as sick as a ..... .
4 I knew she had deceived me. I felt as sick as a ..... .
5 The old man's hair was as white as ..... .
6 Her face suddenly went as white as a ..... .

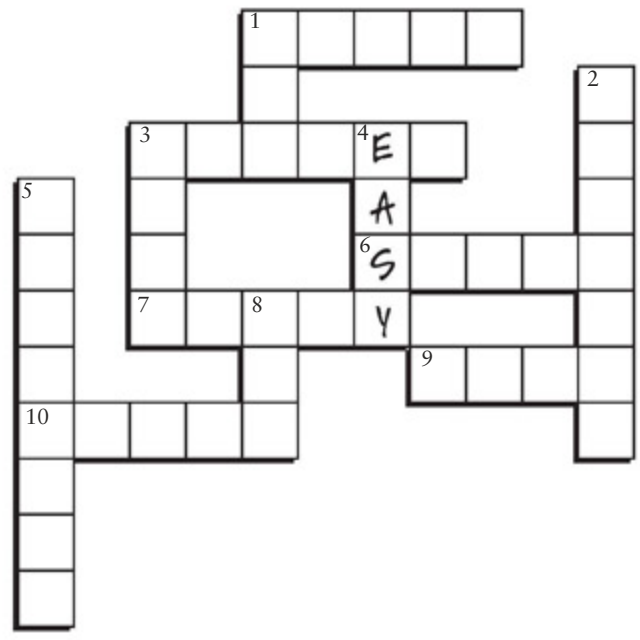
97.3 **Match the simile beginnings on the left with the endings on the right. There are two that are not on the opposite page. Try and guess them.**

	1 quick	[c]		a daisy
	2 red	[ ]		b ox
as	3 flat	[ ]	as a(n)	c flash
	4 fresh	[ ]		d beetroot
	5 strong	[ ]		e pancake

97.4 **Simile word puzzle. Fill in the answers, as in the example.**

Across
1 bold
3 mad
6 white
7 fresh
9 dry
10 quiet

Down
1 blind
2 light
3 iron
4 pie
5 cool
8 cold



97.5 **What can you say about …**

1 a person who sees everything and never misses a thing? *He/She's got eyes like a hawk.*
2 a plan or course of action that works very well?
3 someone who eats and drinks a great deal?
4 someone with a very bad memory?
5 someone who has been very active and busy all day?

98 Proverbs

A Advice and warnings

proverb	paraphrase
Don't count your chickens before they hatch.	Don't depend on something happening, because it may not.
Don't put all your eggs in one basket.	Don't invest all your efforts or attention in just one thing.
Never judge a book by its cover.	Don't judge people/things by their outward appearance.
Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.	Never refuse good fortune when it is there in front of you.
Take care of the pennies and the pounds will take care of themselves.	Take care of small sums of money and they will become large sums.
We'll cross that bridge when we come to it.	We'll deal with that problem when it actually happens.

B Key elements

Proverbs can be grouped by key elements, for example, animals and birds.

When the **cat's** away, the **mice** will play. [people will take advantage of someone else's absence to behave more freely]

You can lead a **horse** to water but you can't make it drink. [you can try to persuade someone, but you can't force them]

One **swallow** doesn't make a summer. [one positive sign does not mean that all will be well; a swallow is a bird that returns to Britain in late spring]

C Visualising

As with learning all vocabulary, visualising an element of it often helps.



There's no smoke without fire. / Where there's smoke, there's fire. [rumours are usually based on some degree of truth]



People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones. [don't criticise others' faults if you suffer from them yourself]



Too many cooks spoil the broth /brɒθ/. [too many people interfering is a bad way of doing things; broth = a kind of soup]



Many hands make light work. [a lot of people helping makes a job easier]

Language help

Speakers tend to use proverbs to comment on a situation, often at the end of a true story someone has told, or in response to some event.

Exercises

98.1 **Find proverbs on the opposite page that you could use in these situations.**

1 Someone says they have just been offered a free two-week holiday, but are hesitating whether to take up the offer. *Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.*
2 Someone thanks you and your friends for helping to load heavy boxes into a van.
3 Someone says they can't be bothered applying to different universities and will just apply to one.
4 Three different people have made different arrangements for the same meeting, and so everyone comes at different times and the result is total confusion.
5 Someone is worried about a journey you are making with them and keeps saying things like 'What'll happen if the plane is delayed?', 'What'll we do if our luggage gets lost?'

98.2 **Answer these questions about the proverbs on the opposite page. Give an explanation for your answer.**

1 Another common proverb is **All that glitters is not gold**. Which proverb has a similar meaning? *Never judge a book by its cover. They both warn against trusting how something looks.*
2 Which proverb has an opposite meaning to **Many hands make light work**?
3 Another common proverb is **Absence makes the heart grow fonder**. Which proverb has an opposite meaning?
4 Which two proverbs warn against anticipating the future?
5 Another common proverb is **A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush**. Which proverb has a similar meaning?

98.3 **People often refer to proverbs by only saying half of them and leaving the rest for the listener to 'fill in'. Complete the proverbs in these dialogues.**

1 A: Joel's always criticising people who are selfish, yet he's terribly selfish himself.
B: Yes, well, people who live in glass houses … *shouldn't throw stones.*
A: Exactly.
2 A: The people in the office have been playing computer games all day since the boss fell ill.
B: Well, you know what they say: when the cat's away … .....
A: Right, and they're currently doing that.
3 A: I didn't believe those rumours about Nick and Tara, but apparently they are seeing each other.
B: You shouldn't be so naive, you know what they say, where there's smoke … .....
A: Mm, I suppose you're right.
4 A: Amazing, he's made a fortune from just one little shop!
B: Well, I think it's a case of take care of the pennies … .....
A: Sure, he's always been very careful with his money.

98.4 **What proverbs do these pictures make you think of?**



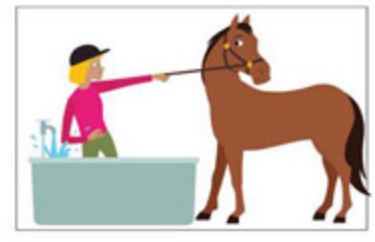
1 *One swallow doesn't make a summer.*



2 .....



3 .....



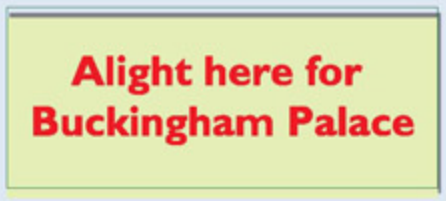
4 .....

98.5 **Over to you**

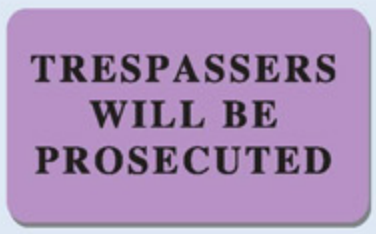
Try translating some proverbs word for word from your language into English. Then, if you can, ask a native speaker if they can tell you an English proverb with the same or a similar meaning.

99 The language of signs and notices

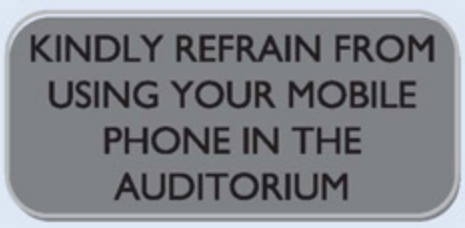
Signs and notices in English often use words and expressions that are rarely seen in other contexts. Look at the signs and notices below with their 'translations' into more everyday English.

1 

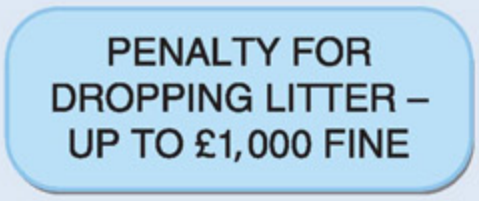
Get off here for Buckingham Palace.

2 

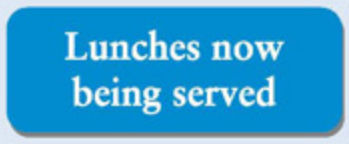
People who walk on this private land will be taken to court.

3 

Please don't use mobile phones in the theatre/hall.

4 

You can be taken to court and made to pay £1,000 for dropping rubbish.

5 

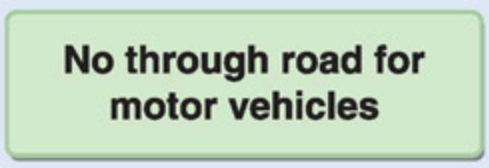
You can buy lunch here now.

6 

Young people under 18 years old can only come in if they are with an adult.

7 

You are not allowed to feed the animals.

8 

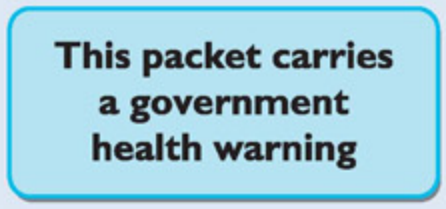
There is no way out at the other end of this road for cars.

9 

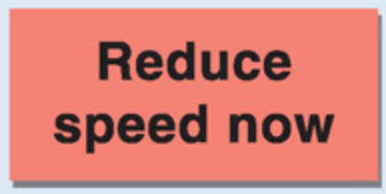
You may not enter without permission or if you do not work here.

10 

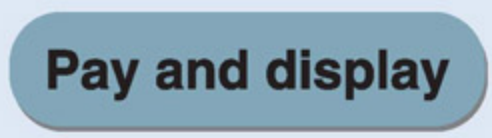
Please put the things you are going to buy / have bought here.

11 

What is in this packet is officially considered bad for your health.

12 

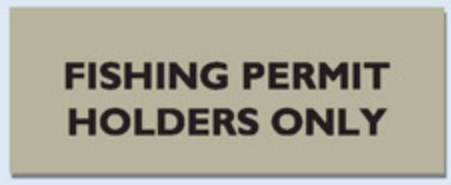
Start going more slowly now.

13 

Buy a ticket and put it in a place where it can easily be seen.

14 

Cyclists should get off their bikes here.

15 

Only people with special cards giving them permission are allowed to fish here.

Exercises

99.1 **Where would you expect to see each of the notices on the opposite page?**

EXAMPLE 1 *on a bus*

99.2 **Match the words on the left with their meanings on the right.**

1	to prosecute	[c]	a a young person under the age of 18
2	a penalty	[ ]	b to get off a bicycle or a horse
3	a purchase	[ ]	c to bring a legal case against
4	a trespasser	[ ]	d not to do something
5	to refrain	[ ]	e to forbid something
6	to alight from	[ ]	f a means of transport
7	to prohibit	[ ]	g a punishment
8	an auditorium	[ ]	h something which has been or is to be bought
9	to dismount	[ ]	i to get off a means of public transport
10	a minor	[ ]	j a large place where an audience sits
11	a vehicle	[ ]	k someone who goes on private land without permission

99.3 **Where might you see each of these notices? Explain what they mean.**

1 SHOPLIFTERS WILL BE PROSECUTED

2 *English spoken here*

3 NOTHING TO DECLARE

4 Clearance sale starts today

5 Admission to ticket holders only

6 No vacancies

7 FISHING STRICTLY PROHIBITED

8 Cycles for hire or sale

9 Flat to let

10 Dogs must be carried

11 Priority seats for the elderly, disabled and pregnant

99.4 **What notice would a café-owner or a shop-owner put up if they wanted to:**

1 indicate that their café was now open for breakfast? *Breakfast now being served*
2 let people know that the staff can speak Spanish? .....
3 prohibit people under 18 from entering unless they are with an adult?
.....
4 ask customers not to enter the kitchen or the work area? .....
5 announce that they will take people who steal anything to court? .....
6 ask people politely not to handle the food or goods? .....

99.5 **Over to you**

Look at the notices in your own language that you see around you every day. How would they be expressed in English? Try to find out, if they are not included in this unit. Also, look out for any signs in English in non-English-speaking countries. See if you can work out what they mean.

100 Headline English

A The grammar of headlines

Newspaper headlines try to catch the reader's eye by using as few words as possible.

- Grammar words like articles or auxiliary verbs are often left out, e.g. EARLY CUT IN INTEREST RATES FORECAST.
- A present simple form of the verb is used, e.g. MAYOR OPENS HOSPITAL.
- The infinitive is used to express the fact that something is going to happen in the future, e.g. PRESIDENT TO VISIT FLOOD AREAS.

B Short dramatic words

Newspapers usually prefer words that are shorter and sound more dramatic than ordinary English words. The words marked * can be used either as nouns or verbs.

newspaper word	meaning	newspaper word	meaning
aid*	help	**key *(adj)***	essential, vital
axe*	cut, remove	**link***	connection
back *(verb)*	support	**move***	step towards a desired end
bar*	exclude, forbid	**ordeal *(noun)***	painful experience
bid*	attempt	**oust *(verb)***	push out, remove
blast*	explosion	**plea *(noun)***	request
blaze*	fire	**pledge***	promise
boost*	incentive, encourage	**ploy *(noun)***	clever activity
boss*, head*	manager, director	**poll***	election, public opinion survey
clash*	dispute	**probe***	investigation
curb*	restraint, limit	**quit *(verb)***	leave, resign
cut*	reduction	**riddle *(noun)***	mystery
drama	tense situation	**strife *(noun)***	conflict
drive*	campaign, effort	**talks *(noun)***	discussions
gems *(noun)*	jewels	**threat**	danger
go-ahead	approval	**vow***	promise
hit *(verb)*	affect badly	**wed *(verb)***	marry

Newspaper headlines often use abbreviations, e.g. **PM** for 'Prime Minister', **MP** for 'Member of Parliament'. (See Unit 78 for more abbreviations.)

C Jokes in headlines

Some newspapers also enjoy making jokes in their headlines. They do this by playing with words or punning, e.g. a wet open-air operatic concert was described as:

TORRENTIAL RAIN
IN MOST ARIAS

An announcement that a woman working at the Mars chocolate company had got an interesting new job was:

WOMAN FROM MARS TO BE
FIRST BRITON IN SPACE

Note: the word 'Briton' is almost exclusively found in newspapers.

Exercises

100.1 **Match the headlines on the left with the appropriate topic on the right.**

1 **PM BACKS PEACE PLAN** ☑ d
2 **MP SPY DRAMA** ☐
3 **SPACE PROBE FAILS** ☐
4 **QUEEN'S GEM RIDDLE** ☐
5 **Star Weds** ☐
6 **Key witness death threat** ☐

a) marriage of famous actress
b) royal jewels in mystery
c) person who saw crime in danger
d) proposal to end war
e) satellite is not launched
f) politician sells secrets to enemy

100.2 **Explain what the following headlines mean in ordinary English.**

1 **SHOP BLAZE 5 DEAD**

Five people died in a fire in a shop.

2 **MOVE TO CREATE MORE JOBS**

3 **GO-AHEAD FOR WATER CURBS**

4 **Woman quits after job ordeal**

5 **POLL PROBES SPENDING HABITS**

6 **Bid to oust PM**

7 **Princess vows to back family**

100.3 **The words marked * in the table opposite can be either nouns or verbs. Note that the meaning given is sometimes in the form of a noun. In the headlines below you have examples of words from the table used as verbs. Look at the underlined verbs and explain what they mean. You may need to use more than one word.**

1 PM TO CURB SPENDING *limit*
2 BOOK LINKS MI5 WITH KGB
3 CHANCELLOR CUTS INTEREST RATES
4 BOMB BLASTS CENTRAL LONDON
5 PM PLEDGES BACKING FOR EUROPE
6 PRESIDENT HEADS PEACE MOVES

100.4 **Explain the joke in these headlines.**

1 **SURGICAL CUTS**
Number of surgeons at hospital to be reduced.

The headline is a play on two meanings of 'cuts' (reductions; by the surgeon's knife).

2 **HAMMER HIT HARD**
Businessman Joe Hammer badly affected by the recent economic downturn.

3 **DRAMATIC PAWS**
A new version of the musical *Cats* opens.

4 **HOT HEIR**
Prince gives speech about climate change.

100.5 **Over to you**

Look out for headlines in English in newspapers or on websites. Try to explain them in ordinary English, and see if you can find more examples of jokes.

101 US English

A English in the USA

English in the USA differs from British English. Pronunciation is the most striking difference but there are also differences in vocabulary and spelling as well as some differences in grammar. Americans say *the fall,* while British English speakers say *autumn*; American speakers say *on the weekend*; British English prefers *at the weekend*. Yet, generally, British and American speakers have little difficulty in understanding each other.

B American English spelling

American English spelling is usually simpler. For example, British English words ending in **-our** and **-re** end in **-or** and **-er** in American English, e.g. **colour**/**color**, **centre**/**center**. Many verbs ending in **-ise** in British English end in **-ize** in US English (**realise**/**realize**). There are differences in individual words too, e.g. British **jewellery** is **jewelry** in American English.

C US words and their British equivalents

Travel and on the street		In the home	
American English	**British English**	**American English**	**British English**
gas(oline)	petrol	garbage, trash	rubbish
truck	lorry	elevator	lift
baggage	luggage*	eraser	rubber
sidewalk	pavement	apartment	flat
crosswalk	zebra crossing	closet	wardrobe
line	queue	yard	garden
vacation	holiday	drapes	curtains
parking lot	car park	flashlight	torch
trunk (of car)	boot	French fries	chips
hood (of car)	bonnet	Scotch tape	Sellotape
freeway/interstate	motorway	cookie	biscuit
one-way trip	single	candy	sweets
round trip	return	bathroom, rest room**	toilet, WC
railway car	railway carriage	diaper	nappy
subway	underground	pantyhose	tights

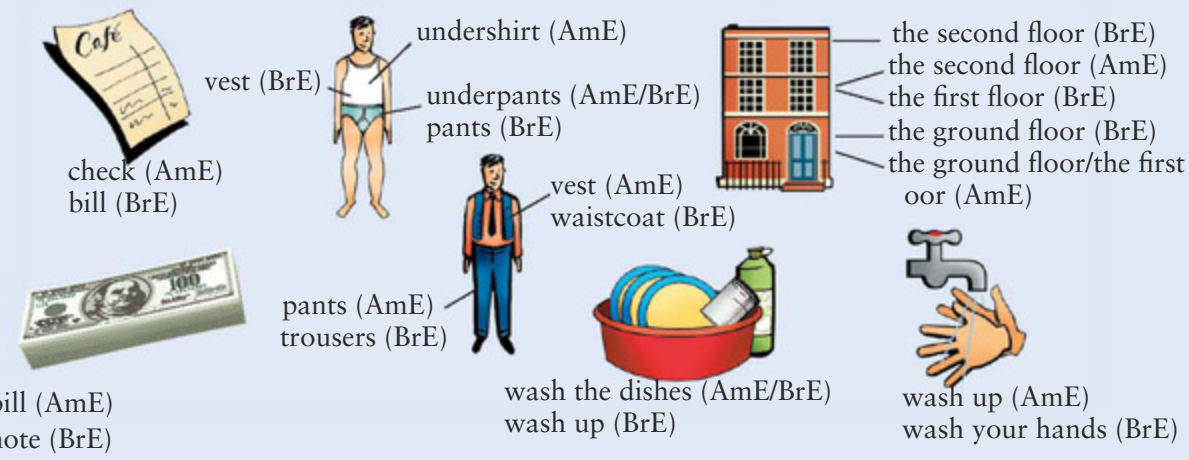
* *baggage* is also common in British English, especially in the context of air travel
** *wash room* is commonly used in Canada

Language help

American and British pronunciations are often different. You can hear the British and American pronunciation of words on the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary* at Cambridge Dictionaries Online.

D Different meanings

Here are some words and phrases which could cause confusion when used by Brits and Americans talking together because they mean something different in each 'language'.



Exercises

101.1 **If you saw words spelt in the following way, would you expect the writer in each case to be British or American? Why?**

1 favor *American (ends in -or)*
2 centre .....
3 hospitalized .....
4 a movie theater .....
5 colour .....
6 jewelry .....

101.2 **What are (a) the American and (b) the British words for the following things?**



1 *closet, wardrobe*



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....



6 .....



7 .....



8 .....

101.3 **Translate the following into British English.**

1 We went there in the fall. *We went there in the autumn.*
2 Pass me the cookies.
3 It's in the closet.
4 Open the drapes.
5 We've run out of gas.
6 Our bags are in the trunk.
7 One-way or round trip?
8 Let's take the subway.
9 We've been working in the yard.
10 I hate waiting in line.

101.4 **Can you avoid some of the most common confusions arising between British and American speakers? Try the following quiz.**

1 Where would you take (a) an American visitor or (b) a British visitor who said they wanted to wash up - the kitchen or the bathroom? (a) *bathroom* (b) *kitchen*
2 You have just come into an unknown office block. If (a) an American or (b) a Brit says that the office you need is on the second floor, how many flights of stairs do you need to climb?
(a) ..... (b) .....
3 If (a) an American or (b) a Brit asks for a bill, is he or she more likely to be in a bank or a café?
(a) ..... (b) .....
4 Would a man wear a vest under or over his shirt (a) if he is British or (b) if he is from the USA?
(a) ..... (b) .....

101.5 **Complete the sentences in two ways, an American way and a British way.**

1 We can park the car in the *parking lot / car park* behind the station.
2 I've written the wrong number here. Can I borrow your ..... ?
I'll correct it.
3 All that food is no good any more - we'd better throw it in the .....
4 We can take the ..... up to the fifth floor.
5 Don't cross here - it's dangerous. There's a ..... further down the street.
6 The car wouldn't start so we opened the ..... to see if we could find what was wrong.

101.6 **Over to you**

If you were going on holiday/vacation to the US, which of the words listed opposite do you think it would be most important for you to know?

Answer key

Unit 1

1.1 *Possible answers:*

1 trousers, clothes, tights
2 furniture, information, advice, luggage
3 teach, read, write, put
4 tooth, foot, mouse, goose

1.2

2 the final *e* is pronounced as a syllable
3 the *ch* is pronounced like a *k* rather than like the *ch* in *church*
4 the *w* is silent (not pronounced)
5 the stress is on the first syllable in the noun and the second syllable in the verb
6 the stress is on the first syllable in *photograph*, the second in *photographer* and the third in *photographic*

1.3

2 to coin a phrase, new words, a term
3 a royal family, palace, welcome
4 a subtle suggestion, shade, difference

1.4

1 *i* (it can mean men or it can be used to address a group of people which includes both men and women)
2 *f* (it means a person who is legally under-age)
3 *i* (it means Wonderful! / Amazing!)
4 *f* (it means to get off a bus)
5 *i* (it means very upset)
6 *f* (it means someone who has committed a serious crime)
7 *i* (it means to annoy or disturb someone)
8 *i* (it means to lose concentration)

1.5

2 words in the *shade* word family - lampshade, eye shadow
3 synonyms of *express* - state, say
4 parts of speech - preposition, conjunction
5 words with a silent *b* - dumb, limb

1.6



2 to coin new words



3 screwdriver



4 to drip

Unit 2

2.1

topic	words
working too much / too hard	stress exhaustion overwork burnt out snowed under with work be under pressure
friendship	hang out with sb casual acquaintance be close to sb count on sb
media	tabloid podcast upload a video blogosphere journalist blog

2.2

nouns	verbs	adjectives	collocations	fixed phrases
latecomer	rush	breathless	set a clock	out of breath
alarm clock	oversleep	exhausted	deep sleep	in a hurry
nightmare	dash		fast asleep	
	yawn		heavy sleeper	

2.3 2 shots 3 dissatisfied 4 deprived of 5 spicy 6 chilly

2.4

noun	verb	adjective	person
perfection	perfect	perfect	perfectionist
information	inform	informative	
politics		political	politician
economics	economise	economic/economical	economist

2.5 Possible ways to organise your vocabulary include relating new words to your own personal experience (e.g. if you learn new colour words, what things do you have in those colours - *a purple sweater, an orange mug*?). You can also divide your notebook (whether paper or digital) into topic areas (e.g. *words to do with food, with travel*, etc.). You could keep a digital notebook on your computer or mobile device; lists or words you type in can then be sorted alphabetically or searched very quickly.

Unit 3

3.1 2 passport 3 leaning 4 liberty 5 revision 6 brother

3.2 2 elegant 3 urgently 4 eyebrow 5 record (verb) 6 thermometer 7 extract (noun) 8 lifestyle

3.3
1 The officer supplied each soldier with a map.
2 The Minister denied having received any money from the oil company. / The Minister denied that he/she had received any money from the oil company.

3.4

	person	thing		person	thing
sad	✓	✓	damp		✓
lucky	✓	✓	awkward	✓	✓
content	✓		compulsory		✓

3.5 (pron) pronoun (conj) conjunction (prep) preposition

(UK) United Kingdom or British English usage noun [C] countable noun verb [T] transitive verb noun [U] uncountable noun verb [I or T] verb which can be transitive or intransitive

Unit 4

4.1 The picture is a good clue to help you understand **tortoise**. You may recognise the word **shell** in **shelled** (as in **egg shell**, for example). Similarly, your knowledge of **long** and **life** together with the context should enable you to work out what **longevity** and **lifespan** mean. The whole context of the sentence should help you to work out the meaning of **attain** and **tended**. Some of the underlined words may be similar to words in your own language, which can be another useful way of working out the meaning of a word you have not seen before. The meanings of the underlined words are provided here for you to check your answers.

shelled: with a shell or hard protective cover
reptile: kind of animal that lays eggs and uses the heat of the sun to keep its blood warm

(e.g. crocodiles, snakes)
famed: well-known (famous)
longevity: living a long life
attain: reach
lifespan: time from birth to death
tended: cared for
hibernate: go into a sleep-like state throughout the winter (as some animals and insects do)

4.2 *Possible answers:*

(These answers all give correct information in more detail than you needed to provide in your own answers.)

2 A vole must be a kind of small animal, something like a mouse perhaps.
3 A chisel could be a kind of tool that can be used for chipping away at something or for breaking it. I think it's probably something that could be used by sculptors but that bigger ones might also be used for destroying structures.
4 A tureen must be a kind of very large bowl, a bit like a pot, used for soup.
5 To clamber probably means something like climbing with difficulty.
6 Ratty must be a bit like bad-tempered.

4.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I find Caitlin a very kind person.
3 I've been terribly busy with work ever since I got back from holiday.
4 We walked down a street with trees along both sides of it towards the station.
5 The little boys were fascinated by the machine used for mixing cement.
6 More and more shops now have their own special credit cards that can only be used in one specific chain of shops and offer you a discount if you use one of them.

4.4 2 anger that can't be controlled
3 drinks before dinner
4 a report that comes out either twice every month or every two months (both meanings of bi-monthly exist)
5 the person who used to be my boss (and no longer is)
6 feelings that are hostile to tourists
7 to break the telephone connection (e.g. by unplugging it from the wall or by doing something at the telephone exchange so that calls can no longer be made, possibly because a bill has not been paid)
8 letters that have not been delivered to the people they were addressed to

Unit 5

5.1

-(i)an	-ic	-ish	-i	-ese	(other)
Latvian	Icelandic	Irish	Israeli	Chinese	Thai
Arabian*	Arabic*	Turkish	Pakistani	Vietnamese	Swiss
Brazilian		Danish			Dutch
Korean					Arab*

**Arabian* is used to refer to the Arabian Peninsula and to Saudi Arabian(s). *Arab* can also be used as an adjective in expressions such as *the Arab world, Arab states, Arab countries*.

5.2 2 d 3 e 4 f 5 a 6 b

5.3 2 **Britons** have highest tax rate in Europe
3 **Maltese** Prime Minister visits Washington
4 Police arrest **Dane** on smuggling charge
5 **Iraqi** delegation meets **Pakistani** President

5.4 *Possible answers:*

2 Penélope Cruz
3 Nelson Mandela
4 Kylie Minogue
5 Luciano Pavarotti
6 U2
7 Bubba Watson

Unit 6

6.1 2 late 3 thaw 4 daytime 5 It melts 6 frost 7 misty 8 strong, high 9 severe

6.2 2 flood(s) 3 heavy/torrential rain 4 drought

6.3 I think it would be interesting to live in a **tropical** climate. However, I don't like **humid** weather. I even dislike the **muggy** days which we get in the UK. Some people love **boiling** hot days, and I don't mind **heatwaves** occasionally, but when it's **stifling**, it's just impossible. Maybe I should stay at home and forget about moving to a hot climate!

6.4 *Possible sentences:*

2 It / The weather was very humid.
3 There was a gentle breeze (blowing).
4 The roads were icy. / There was ice on the roads.
5 There was a flood. / There were floods everywhere.
6 It / The weather was very misty (or foggy).
7 We had a drought (or heatwave) last year.
8 It was a very windy day. / There was a gale.
9 There was heavy/torrential rain. / There was a (heavy) downpour.
10 The sky was very overcast.

Unit 7

7.1 2 figure 3 feature 4 complexion 5 impression 6 auburn 7 wrinkles 8 elegant / smart / stunning / well-dressed 9 stunning

7.2 *Suggested answers:*

2 the bald one / straight-haired one.
3 scruffy and untidy-looking/messy-looking.
4 that slim, dark-haired woman over there.
5 unattractive, in fact. (You could also say he/she was 'rather plain' or 'rather ordinary', if you felt they were neither attractive nor unattractive. 'Ugly' is a very strong word, and could be offensive.)
6 in her twenties and quite slim.

7.3 *Suggested answers:*

Ian Prowse: thin-faced, dark, curly hair, fair skin
Sandra King: dark, wavy hair, stocky build, round-faced
Jasmin Kaur: thin-faced, long, dark hair
Jack 'Dagger' Flagstone: bald, with beard and moustache; muscular build

Unit 8

8.1 *Opposites:*

2 a 3 c 4 e 5 b 6 d

8.2 2 likes 3 likes 4 dislikes 5 dislikes 6 dislikes 7 dislikes 8 likes

Possible opposite impressions:

2 Molly's usually brusque/blunt.
3 Grace is quite unprincipled.
4 Sam can be assertive.
5 Nico's quite assertive.
6 I find Marcus self-assured.
7 Don't you think James is enquiring?
8 Freya is peculiar.

8.3 brusque - curt
crafty - cunning
direct - frank
down-to-earth - sensible
gifted - talented
honest - trustworthy
impolite - rude
miserly - tight-fisted
tense - wound up

8.4
2 pessimistic
3 assertive
4 inquisitive
5 extravagant
6 argumentative
7 sensitive
8 sociable

8.5 *Possible questions:*

2 blunt - If a friend asks you if you like her awful new dress, would you say 'No'?
3 sensible - If you won a lot of money, would you put it in the bank rather than spend it on a luxury you have always wanted?
4 intelligent - Can you give the next letter in this sequence S, M, T, W, T, F? (If you are not sure of the answer, think of the days of the week.)
5 even-tempered - If someone spills soup on some new clothes of yours, do you just sigh and say 'That's life'?
6 original - Do you never wear blue jeans?
7 obstinate - Do you become even more determined to do something if people try to persuade you not to do it?
8 stressed out - Do you find it hard to sleep at night because problems are going round in your head?

Unit 9

9.1
2 … as nails
3 … as gold
4 … in the right place
5 … piece of work
6 … awkward customer

9.2
2 the teacher's pet
3 a big-head
4 top of the class
5 a lazy-bones (or you could say this person is **bone-idle**)

9.3
2 … a good head for figures.
3 … have a head for heights
4 … has her head screwed on.
5 … has his head in the clouds.
6 … burying your head in the sand.
7 … head and shoulders above …
8 … keeps his head.

9.4 a your nerves (always with possessive, **my**, **our**, **John's**, etc.)
b the neck (always used with **the**)

9.5 2 middle-of-the-road 3 over the top 4 round the bend

Unit 10

10.1
2 Mike was my roommate at university / Mike and I were roommates …
3 We were classmates in 2006, weren't we?
4 She's not really a friend; she's just a workmate.
5 Abbie is always arguing with her housemates.

10.2 *Possible answers:*

1 (*also possible*) Jon/Erica is Erica's/Jon's colleague.
2 Ben Park and Joe Nash are partners. Ben/Joe is Joe's/Ben's partner.
3 Tania and Georgie are roommates. Georgie/Tania is Tania's/Georgie's roommate.
4 Nick and Claire have been seeing each other for a year. Nick and Claire see each other regularly. Nick and Claire got together a year ago.

10.3

1 tagged
2 shared
3 invited
4 accept
5 defriend/unfriend
6 comments

10.4 *Possible answers:*

1 A teenage music fan might like/dislike his/her parents, or idolise a pop star, possibly loathe or can't stand a strict teacher, or possibly look up to him/her, and probably be good friends with a mate.
2 A personal assistant and another personal assistant could be colleagues who get on well, or who don't see eye to eye. They might look up to the boss, or perhaps they can't stand or despise him/her. They might be attracted to or fancy a very attractive workmate.
3 A 45-year-old may be someone who can't stand teenagers or likes/dislikes them, and who looks down on, despises or loathes an ex-husband/wife who was cruel.

10.5

2 I fell **out** with my parents last night. It wasn't my fault.
3 We had a quarrel but now we've made it **up**.
4 Do you think Josh and Nuala are **having** an affair? I do.
5 I **get on** very well with all my colleagues at work.
6 Jo's attractive, but her mate just **leaves** me cold completely.
7 Maria seems to find it difficult to **make** friends among her classmates.
8 I met my boyfriend at a party and we **got** together soon after.

Unit 11

11.1

1 in the shed or garage
2 in the toilet or bathroom
3 in a cupboard or a drawer - or on the table of course, if they are in use
4 in a wardrobe
5 in the living room (often down the side of the sofa!)
6 in the kitchen or utility room
7 usually in every room
8 in front of one of the entrance doors (front or back)
9 in the kitchen, probably in a drawer or cupboard
10 in the attic/loft or in the cellar or in the shed

11.2 1 attic/loft 2 landing 3 hall 4 utility room 5 cellar

11.3

2 peeler
3 (table) mat
4 corkscrew
5 loft (attic is also possible)
6 shed/garage, terrace/patio (or **balcony** if not on the ground floor; or **verandah**, if it is covered)
7 landing
8 bungalow
9 drive (or driveway)

11.4 *Suggested answers:*

2 A dustpan and brush (perhaps followed by a vacuum cleaner)
3 A (phone) charger
4 Use the remote (control)
5 Use a chopping board
6 A (coat) hanger

Unit 12

12.1 *Suggested answers:*

2 The person's car broke down / would not start.
3 Someone's washing machine broke down.
4 The handle came off / fell off something. (for example, a door/drawer)
5 Perhaps someone tripped and/or fell and grazed their knee/leg/hand/arm/head.
6 The batteries are dead / have run out, for example, in a radio or a camera.
7 Perhaps someone has mislaid their glasses/books/papers/false teeth.
8 Someone has burnt something they were cooking.
9 Someone's computer has crashed.

12.2

2 stain - the other two are types of minor injury
3 bump - the other two can be used about batteries
4 leak - the other two are types of damage to solid objects
5 dent - the other two involve liquids

12.3 *Suggested answers:*

	car	vase	elbow	clock	printer	sink	a meal
banged			✓				
ruined							✓
cracked		✓					
broken down	✓				✓		
dented	✓						
stopped				✓			
blocked						✓	

Example sentences:

I banged my elbow and now I've got a bruise.
The meal was ruined - she'd put far too much salt in the pie.
This vase is cracked.
Her car has broken down. She's going to be delayed.
My printer has broken down again because it's got a paper jam I can't fix.
A minibus reversed into me and dented the car.
My clock has stopped. The battery has probably run out.
The sink is blocked again. Shall we call a plumber?

12.4 *Possible answers:*

2 I didn't look where I was going as I walked through the low doorway and banged/bumped my head.
3 The wind blew the door shut and I realised I'd locked myself out.
4 I would ring her but I'm afraid I've mislaid her number. She wrote it down for me.
5 I can't take a photo, my camera's broken down / stopped working.
6 I tried to run over the rocks but I tripped and fell and bruised/grazed my leg / twisted my ankle.
7 I accidentally sat on my bag of crisps and they all got crushed.

Unit 13

13.1

2 Earthquake - an **aftershock** is a trembling movement of the earth that can happen after an earthquake. Note how disasters of various kinds can **strike**, e.g. The hurricane **struck** the coastline at noon.
3 Hurricane / typhoon / tornado / tropical storm / violent storm / wind - if you **board up** your house you cover the windows and doors with wooden boards to protect them.
4 War or a battle of some kind - **gunfire** refers to the sound of guns being used.

5 Probably a plane crash - people who witness such accidents or incidents often describe the explosion as a **fireball** or **ball of fire**.
6 Probably a flood - if your house is flooded, the natural thing to do is to go to the upper floor(s) or the roof to escape the water.
7 Drought - if the plants and trees are **dried up**, they are probably dying because they have no water, and since the earth is **cracked** [hard, with a pattern of deep lines over it], it suggests it is very dry.
8 Probably landslides - these happen in mountain areas, they can carry trees and other vegetation with them and one of the problems they can cause is making roads impassable until they can be cleared.

13.2

verb	noun: thing or idea	noun: person
explode	explosion	
survive	survival	survivor
injure	injury	
starve	starvation	
erupt	eruption	

13.3

1 getting worse (**spreads** means gets bigger / covers a wider area)
2 a disaster was avoided (the bomb was **defused** - made safe)
3 getting better (the oil is **receding** - going away from where it was heading, for example, towards a beach)
4 getting worse (**a time bomb** is something that is set to explode at some definite time in the future)
5 disaster avoided (an **emergency landing** is a landing when the pilot has to land the plane immediately - perhaps he/she has no proper control over the plane, e.g. if there is an electrical fault)
6 disaster has occurred / is occurring (if you **heed** a warning, you take note, and do something; here the warning was ignored)

13.4 2 refugees 3 casualties 4 survivors 5 dead, wounded 6 migrants

13.5 2 cholera or typhoid 3 rabies 4 AIDS

Unit 14

14.1 2 nursery school 3 crèche 4 admission 5 grammar
6 comprehensive 7 public 8 sixth-form college 9 higher education

14.2

ALMUT: I've got one more exam tomorrow. I hope I **pass**. I'm worried.
JOE: Really? What makes you think you won't **do well**?
ALMUT: Well, I've **skipped** a couple of classes this term.
JOE: Hm. If you **fail**, are you allowed to **resit** the exam?
ALMUT: Yes, but I don't want to. Next year I want to go to university, not **do**/**take** my **A levels** again!

14.3

2 The school-**leaving** age is 18 in many countries.
3 I'm glad you **passed** your exam.
4 She has to **sit** a Biology exam next week.
5 Is school **compulsory** till 18 in your country?
6 Do we have to **submit** our work to the teacher by Friday?
7 I've made a lot of **progress** in my English recently.
8 Thanks to the LMS, teachers can **monitor** their students' activities.

14.4
2 grammar schools
3 public schools
4 distance learning

Unit 15

15.1
2 master's (degree)
3 PhD
4 undergraduate
5 graduate
6 postgraduate

15.2
2 credits
3 graduate
4 dissertation
5 research
6 field

15.3
2 halls (of residence)
3 lecturers
4 Tutorials
5 lecture theatre or lecture hall
6 lectures

15.4
2 ~~entry requirements~~ tuition fees
3 ~~scholarships~~ societies
4 ~~admissions office~~ student union
5 ~~student loan~~ entry requirements

Unit 16

16.1
2 executive
3 director
4 unskilled worker
5 administrator
6 supervisor

16.2
2 job
3 work
4 work
5 job

16.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 He's **taken early retirement**.
3 This is a person who **works shifts** / **does shiftwork**. (You can also say ... is a **shiftworker**.)
4 She's **been promoted**.
5 I **got the sack** (or **I was fired** or **I was dismissed** - more formal).
6 He/She works **nine-to-five** / He/She **has a nine-to-five job**.
7 You're a **workaholic**.

16.4
2 judge - profession
3 electrician - trade
4 plumber - trade
5 lecturer - profession
6 carpenter - trade

16.5
2 living
3 work
4 offered
5 take it on

Unit 17

17.1
1 What did Ryan Archer put **forward** to his bank manager? He presented a **business plan**.
2 What is special about the computers his **firm** makes? They are **custom-built** (or custom-made/designed).
3 When did he **launch** his business? A **year later**.
4 What did he **roll** out two years later? An **expanded range** of computers.
5 How many computers does his firm **manufacture** now? About **200** a **year**.
6 What was Ryan Archer's **priority** from the start? Personal service and **customer care**.
7 Why didn't he do any **market** research? He felt there were enough **potential** customers.
8 Why was he not sure if the machines would **sell**? There was a **recession** at the time.
9 Was it all worth the **risk**? Yes. His firm's **order books** were soon full.
10 **Going** forward, what are his plans? He's planning a new range of computers, which will **launch** next year.

17.2
2 The business didn't make **a profit** in its first year.
3 There are a lot of **potential** customers for this product.
4 Their **order books were** full last month.
5 It is sometimes difficult to **access** new markets if you don't have contacts.
6 We should pay attention to the **feedback** our clients post on our website.
7 Customer care is a **priority** for our company.
8 We need to **expand our business** in Latin America.
9 It's important to **build contacts** before you enter a new country.

17.3
2 The new range of products will **launch** next month. We hope it will **sell**!
3 The firm specialises in **custom**-built laptops for business travellers.
4 **Going** forward, we expect to increase our sales in Japan and China.
5 It's important to get **feedback** from our clients.
6 We're facing **competition** from American firms.
7 We hope to do more **business** in North Africa in the future.

Possible sentences:

17.4
2 The order books were half-empty, so the company had to close down.
3 Market research showed that potential customers wanted a wider range of software.
4 Custom-built cars are much more expensive than ordinary ones.
5 The firm faced stiff competition from Chinese companies.

Unit 18

18.1
2 hang-gliding
3 motor racing
4 showjumping
5 windsurfing
6 darts
7 snooker / billiards
8 snowboarding

18.2
2 bow 3 racket 4 stick 5 bat 6 dart 7 paddle 8 cue 9 oar

18.3
1 long-distance, trophies
2 set
3 marathon
4 holds
5 qualify
6 made it to / reached
7 knocked out, round
8 competitive
9 spectators, referee
10 sprinters

18.4
2 Are you a good **tennis player**? We're trying to get a local team together.
3 My brother is an expert **canoeist**. He's won medals.
4 My father is a good **golfer**. He's also an expert **mountaineer**.
5 Is there a shop near here that sells **sports** equipment? I need a fishing **rod**.
6 I'd love to be a good **archer**, but my eyesight isn't very good.
7 Are you a sprinter or a long-**distance** runner?
8 My favourite Olympic sports are **fencing** and the **high** jump.

18.5
2 discus (throw) 3 javelin

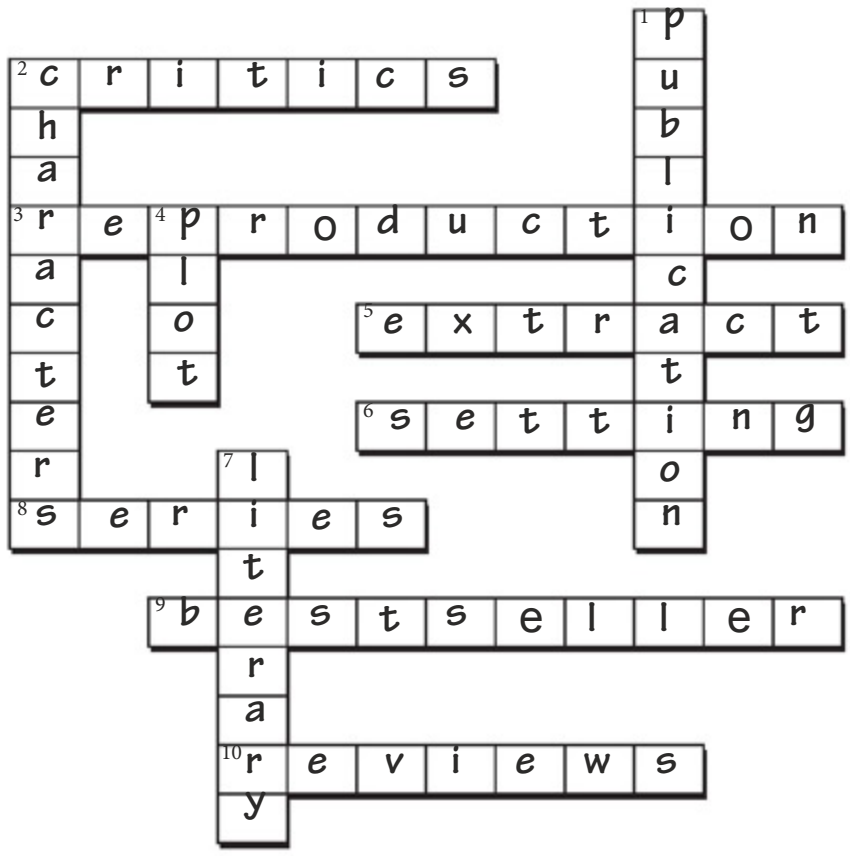
Unit 19

19.1
2 poetry
3 painting
4 architecture
5 literature, a novel - though it could be any piece of writing divided into chapters, e.g. an academic textbook

19.2
2 still life 3 abstract 4 landscape

19.3
2 The Dutch artist Rembrandt was a master of **the art** of portrait painting.
3 On Saturdays there's a market in the city square where they sell all sorts of **arts and crafts**.
4 Which would you rather be good at - **art** or **music**?
5 I saw some interesting abstract **works of art** at the City Gallery.

19.4



Unit 20

20.1 2 comedian 3 directors 4 entertainers 5 productions 6 appearance

20.2
2 She's got a diploma in dance from the Performing Arts Academy.
3 I've got some tickets for **the** opera. Interested?
4 Shall we go to **the** cinema this evening? There are several good things on.
5 I much prefer (**the**) theatre to (**the**) ballet, don't you?

20.3

2 script	5 cast	8 stage
3 costumes	6 performances	9 critics
4 sets	7 venue	10 reviews

20.4 *Possible questions:*

2 Would you like a ticket for the Beethoven concert tonight?
3 What kind of films do you like best?
4 Was it a good production?
5 What are they showing at the Arts Cinema at the moment? / What's on at the cinema?

Unit 21

21.1 Henry: playlist, tracks
Anna: sync, stream, playlists

21.2
2 the drummer
3 the bass (player) (if it is obvious that you are talking about a band, you don't need to say *bass player*)
4 the keyboard player
5 the lead guitar / the lead guitarist

21.3 2 Natalie 3 Emma 4 Lauren 5 Liam 6 Ross

21.4 Do you have a good **ear** for music? Do you play a musical instrument **by** ear? Can you **pick** out a tune on an instrument you've never played before? We are looking for volunteers to take part in an experiment to investigate people's natural musical abilities. You don't need to be a **trained** musician and you don't need to be able to **read** music. If you just **make** music at home or with friends for fun, whatever kinds of **music** you are **into**, whether it's **classical** music, **jazz**, pop, we want to hear from you. We believe there are many **talented** musicians out there and we want to learn more about how you do it.

Unit 22

22.1 2 savoury 3 salty 4 sour 5 sugary / sickly 6 bitter

22.2 *Suggested answers:*

2 The fish is overcooked / overdone.
3 This melon is unripe / isn't ripe.
4 This dish is very bland / tasteless.
5 The soup is too salty.
6 I just want something light. / I don't want anything (too) heavy.
7 This dish is very stodgy.
8 The chicken is undercooked / underdone.
9 Are the vegetables organic?

22.3

2 The restaurant usually has some specials.
3 Oscar thought the peanuts were moreish.
4 Tina needed a napkin.
5 Jordi is a non-meat-eater.
6 Okas ordered à-la-carte.
7 Phoebe said you don't need to book a table / make a reservation.
8 Krishnan ordered a couple of side dishes.
9 Emily and her friends cancelled the booking / the reservation.
10 Hannah had a starter.

22.4

2 Please help yourselves.
3 Say when. When!
4 Would you like some dessert / a sweet / some pudding / some afters?

Unit 23

23.1

2 estuary
3 peak, summit
4 source
5 shore (NB *coast* is only where the land meets sea, not a lake)
6 strait
7 peninsula
8 ridge

23.2 Brazil is **the** fifth largest country in **the** world. In **the** north, **the** densely forested basin of **the** River Amazon covers half **the** country. In **the** east, **the** country is washed by **the** Atlantic. **The** highest mountain chain in South America, **the** Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, **the** former capital. Today **the** capital of Brazil is Brasilia.

23.3

2 the Volga
3 Venezuela (the Angel Falls)
4 New Zealand
5 A delta is at the mouth of a river where the river divides and flows into the sea in a number of different channels. The Nile, Danube, Mississippi, Ganges and Mekon all have deltas.
6 The Straits of Gibraltar are at the western entrance to the Mediterranean and the Cape of Good Hope is at the southern tip of Africa.

23.4 *Horizontal words:* glacier, geyser, volcano, sea, gulf, plain, bay
Vertical words: gorge, delta, island, cape, peak, lake, current, peninsula, crops, shore

23.5

1 sandy beach / shore
2 steep gorge / cliff
3 shallow stream / bay
4 rocky coast / mountain
5 turbulent river / sea
6 dangerous volcano / current

Unit 24

24.1

2 the ozone layer
3 globalisation
4 hazardous waste
5 the polar ice caps
6 carbon dioxide
7 destruction of the rainforests
8 smog
9 acid rain
10 an endangered species
11 water pollution
12 global warming

24.2

2 carbon footprint
3 climate change
4 fossil fuel
5 green party
6 greenhouse effect
7 nature reserve
8 organic food
9 ozone depletion
10 waste disposal

24.3

2 Disposable
3 reduction
4 destroy
5 pollutant
6 global
7 dispose
8 endanger
9 environmentally

Unit 25

25.1 *Suggested answers:*

2 It lies on an island between two channels of the River Lee.
3 It has a very complex one-way traffic system. Moreover, its buses are extremely crowded.
4 St Anne's Church was built on a site where another church stood previously. That church was destroyed during a siege of the city.
5 In the French Gothic style.
6 Probably not as they do not cater specifically for tourists.
7 The Crawford Gallery is worth visiting because it regularly puts on interesting exhibitions of modern art.
8 Well-off people live in fashionable residential areas overlooking the harbour, while others live in suburbs on the edge of the city.

25.2

2 population
3 area
4 site
5 overlook
6 distance
7 market
8 tends
9 worth
10 exhibitions
11 facilities
12 outskirts

25.3 *Possible answers (for Cambridge):*

All the items should be ticked except for skating rink and opera house.

25.4 *Possible answers:*

2 leisure, shopping, city centre
3 art, music, community college
4 basketball, squash, royal court
5 night, tennis, social club
6 employment, accommodation, press agency

25.5

2 tennis court / sports centre
3 taxi rank
4 registry office
5 estate agent
6 art gallery
7 library
8 take-away
9 adult education centre / college

25.6

2 pollution
3 overcrowding
4 vandalism
5 traffic jams

25.7 *Possible answers (for Cambridge):*

The most picturesque parts of Cambridge are beside the river.
Cambridge is one of England's most historic towns.
The town could hardly be called spacious as most of its streets are very narrow.
Some of the eighteenth-century buildings are particularly elegant.

The most magnificent building in the town, in my opinion, is the Pepys Library.
Cambridge is very lively at night because so many young people live there.
When the university is on vacation the town can suddenly seem quite deserted.
The market is particularly bustling on Saturdays.
The shopping centre always seems to be packed with people.
We are lucky in that nowhere in the town is filthy; everywhere is quite clean.
Some of the suburbs have become quite run-down in recent years.

Unit 26

26.1 2 pollen 3 whiskers 4 petals 5 hoof

26.2 *animal words:* mane, fox, worm, horn, claw, owl
plant words: petal, oak, willow, thorn, bark, stem

26.3
2 claws, bark
3 blossom/flower
4 grow
5 stems
6 bud
7 thorns
8 twigs (or perhaps branches)
9 Bats
10 Snails

26.4 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 c 6 a

26.5 2 a crab because it has a shell (it is a shellfish) 3 a cat 4 laid 5 both 6 a pigeon

Unit 27

27.1
2 heel, soles
3 laces
4 cardigan / hoody
5 slippers
6 hem, buttons
7 hood
8 pyjamas
9 helmet
10 bikini

27.2 2 jeans 3 shorts 4 pairs 5 pair (of tights)

27.3 *Possible answers:*

2 baggy trousers, T-shirt
3 checked shirt, trousers
4 woollen scarf, socks
5 suede shoes, bag
6 denim skirt, jacket

27.4
2 national costume
3 designer sunglasses
4 a mask
5 inside out

27.5 2 matches 3 suits 4 fit

Unit 28

28.1 *Possible answers:*

2 a bruise
3 a black eye
4 sickness and/or diarrhoea
5 sunburn
6 possibly a pain in their side, or they might feel breathless

28.2 2 Seth 3 Casper 4 Zoe

28.3 2 e 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 c

28.4 2 C 3 A 4 D 5 B 6 F
Incorrect sentence: They operated me immediately.
Correct form: They operated **on** me immediately.

28.5
1 b
2 a He contracted AIDS in 2001. b She suffered a stroke.
3 I picked up a bug but I got over it.

Unit 29

29.1
1 glasses, spectacles
2 X-rays (or X-ray machines)
3 they invented/used crutches
4 contact lenses
5 in a wheelchair

29.2
2 Glasses were invented to correct **difficulties** with **vision**.
3 **Medical technology** has made **rapid advances** in the last **decade**.
4 There is now **a vast range** of **devices** that make life better for people with medical problems.
5 **Artificial** hips are **highly** efficient.
6 Some disabled athletes can run as fast as able-bodied ones using **prosthetic** legs.
7 Scientists are working on **robotic** arms that can be controlled directly by the person's brain.

29.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 to help disabled people to move around
3 to help a disabled or injured person to walk
4 to measure someone's temperature
5 to help someone see better
6 to enable a doctor to see inside someone's body

29.4
1 Doctors will be able to **identify** diseases at an early **stage** in the future using sophisticated **scanners**.
2 Doctors will be able to **diagnose** a patient's illness from a distance. Patients will send information **automatically** to their doctor.
3 **Keyhole surgery** means doctors no longer need to open a patient's body when they operate **on*** them. (*missing preposition)
4 Information on large computer **databases** will help doctors **treat** diseases and give them new **tools** to cure illnesses.

Unit 30

30.1
2 Certain foods are **considered** by scientists to **be good for** our bodies.
3 Foods with a **high fat content** may cause health problems.
4 Some foods may cause **long-term** health problems.

30.2
2 Fizzy drinks
3 oily fish
4 Processed foods
5 mental health

30.3 2 c 3 a 4 b

30.4 2 b 3 a 4 d

30.5
2 Many fruits are a good **source** of vitamin C and provide **major** health benefits.
3 Oily **fish** should form part of a healthy diet.
4 Which do you prefer to eat as a snack if you're hungry, **fruit** or nuts?
5 A: There's a new Chinese restaurant in town. B: Good! I love Chinese **food**.
6 There has been a sharp **rise** in the number of people suffering from **depression**.

30.6
2 Children **who are obese** / **who suffer from obesity** need to exercise more.
3 Her job **is very stressful** / **causes her a lot of stress** and is very tiring.
4 How can we **keep fit** / **maintain a good level of fitness**? The answer is **to get regular exercise** / **to exercise regularly**.

Unit 31

31.1 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c

31.2

road	rail	air	sea
steering wheel	express	jumbo jet	port
coach	coach	helicopter	gangway
tram	platform	runway	liner
chauffeur		wing	deck
van		ground staff	
lorry		cockpit	

Coach can refer to a type of bus or the individual carriages on a train.

31.3 2 voyage 3 flight 4 travel 5 trip 6 journey

31.4 The flight from Huascal to Puerto Amlugo was **severely** delayed (six hours!). I was worried I'd get **stuck** at the airport (and hoped that the airline would **put** me **up** in a nice hotel ☺) but anyway the flight wasn't **cancelled** and we finally took off. The weather was awful, and we experienced a lot of **turbulence**. In fact, the flight was so **bumpy** that I got **airsick** (very unpleasant!). But the **cabin crew** were very friendly and helpful, which made me feel better. The **landing** was not so bad and soon we were at the **terminal** collecting our baggage. I slept well last night - I think I've got over the **jetlag** I had after my 12-hour flight from Europe.

I didn't have a reservation for the Eurostar train from Paris to London, but they put me on **standby** and I got a **seat** on a later train. It was a good journey, everything ran **smoothly** and it arrived **on** time. In London, I enquired if there was a **sleeping car** on the train to Scotland so I could travel overnight. The alternative was a hotel and the **early morning** train at 6.30 am (too early for me!). When I get to Scotland I want to go to some of the islands. I hope the sea is **calm**. I hate **rough** seas - I always get **seasick**!

Unit 32

32.1

adjective	noun	verb
fascinating	fascination	fascinate
delightful	delight	delight
exhilarating	exhilaration	exhilarate
glamorous	glamour	glamorise
luxurious	luxury	luxuriate

32.2 2 unspoilt / picturesque 3 exhilarating 4 luxurious 5 breathtaking / stunning

32.3
2 pitched
3 exclusive
4 package
5 cruising
6 inconvenient / remote
7 memorable
8 winding

32.4
2 a luxurious hotel
3 a picturesque village
4 a breathtaking/stunning view
5 a unique opportunity
6 an exhilarating walk

Unit 33

33.1

2 The software **interprets** your speech and **enables** you to turn it into text. Science: **voice technology**
3 We're interested in workplaces and how people **interact** with their working environment. Science: **ergonomics**
4 People are often worried. They feel that the **creation** of an exact copy of an animal is not morally right. Science: **cloning**
5 We study how human **cells** can be used to rebuild our bodies and to repair them when they are injured. Science: **stem cell research**
6 My work is concerned with the **structure** and **function** of the organic molecules **associated** with living organisms. Science: **molecular biology**
7 Many people refuse to eat **genetically modified** foods. They consider GM foods to be unnatural. Science: **genetic engineering**
8 By manipulating DNA, we can **alter** hereditary **features**. Science: **genetic engineering**

33.2

2 a smartphone
3 a digital photo frame
4 a high-definition (HD) camcorder
5 a 3D TV
6 a tablet

33.3

2 e 3 g 4 a 5 h 6 d 7 f 8 b

33.4

2 **Insert** the disk to **install the software.**
3 We can **combine these chemicals.**
4 You should **utilise** the strongest material.
5 We **analysed** the problem and **concluded** that it was a computer virus.

Unit 34

34.1

2 spreadsheet
3 laptop
4 microchip
5 memory stick
6 desktop computer
7 icon
8 cursor
9 tablet

34.2

2 virus
3 laptops
4 hard disk
5 graphics
6 database
7 cursor
8 app(lication)
9 Word-processing
10 (micro)chip

34.3

Suggested answers:

2 Back it up.
3 Delete the repeated paragraph.
4 Click on the icon for that program.
5 Upgrading the computer.
6 You can undo what you just did.
7 You can download it.
8 That the new software won't run / That you can't run the new software.

Unit 35

35.1

2 attachment
3 password
4 bookmark
5 browser
6 internet service provider / ISP
7 search engine
8 server
9 navigate
10 cloud

35.2

2 blog
3 access, down
4 Skype
5 subscribe
6 links
7 virtual
8 interactive

35.3
2 False - it stands for Frequently Asked Questions.
3 True
4 False - it is a type of website.
5 True
6 False - they will get it by email.
7 False - you log off.
8 True

Unit 36

36.1
2 post
3 request
4 status
5 subscribe
6 follow

36.2
2 posts
3 likes
4 share
5 rate
6 views
7 commented

36.3
2 profile picture
3 timeline
4 notification
5 direct message

36.4
2 privacy
3 public
4 tag
5 direct
6 account
7 default

Unit 37

37.1
2 cartoon
3 current affairs programme
4 sitcom
5 soap (opera)
6 weather forecast
7 detective drama / detective series
8 talk show
9 game show
10 sports programme

37.2
1 subtitles, dubbed
2 podcast
3 commercials
4 satellite dish, receive
5 media (people usually just say *media* rather than *mass media*)
6 means
7 broadcasts
8 stream

37.3
tabloid: celebrity news, scandals, competitions and prizes, sensational crimes, huge headlines
quality: complex political debate, in-depth reviews of books, long articles

37.4
1 The documentary **investigated** the food industry and **focused on** school meals.
2 The programme **was shot** / **made (or filmed) on location** in Northern Finland.
3 CNN **broadcasts** news programmes around the world.
4 They're **televising** the cup final next week.
5 The drama **is set** in Paris in the 1880s.
6 Do you ever **tweet** about news events?

Unit 38

38.1
2 independence
3 polling
4 running
5 elected
6 policy
7 federation
8 rule

38.2
2 constituencies
3 MP (Member of Parliament)
4 majority
5 Prime Minister
6 coalition
7 election

38.3
2 a 3 f 4 g 5 b 6 h 7 e 8 d

38.4
2 a representative
3 the ruler
4 the presidency
5 the government
6 the electorate
7 to represent

Unit 39

39.1
2 Harry is accused of kidnapping.
3 Ophelia is accused of murder.
4 Noah is accused of smuggling.
5 Tom is accused of burglary / theft.
6 Mike is accused of fraud.

39.2
1 arrested
2 charged
3 crime scene
4 evidence
5 accomplice
6 witnessed

39.3
2 Many prisoners end up getting time **off** for good behaviour.
3 The police have charged the driver of the red sports car **with** speeding.
4 The two girls are suspected **of** taking sweets from the shop without paying.
5 Sam was found guilty today but the judge will decide **on** his sentence tomorrow.
6 The jury passed a verdict of guilty **on** the accused.

39.4
2 The police think Bert is guilty but they have no proof.
3 In court the accused pleaded not guilty.
4 The murder case is still under investigation (by the police).
5 Any victim of crime can join this support group.
6 The detective suspected the jealous lover of killing the woman / (that) the jealous lover killed the woman.
7 The bank robbers are currently on trial (at a court) in London.
8 Nathan is hoping to be released from prison soon.

Unit 40

40.1 2 d 3 f 4 a 5 c 6 b

40.2
2 credit limit
3 competitive
4 deposit
5 overdraft facility
6 raise, finance
7 combine, payment
8 mortgages, repayments

40.3
2 a duty-free shop
3 VAT (value added tax)
4 inheritance tax
5 corporation tax
6 income tax

40.4 *Answers with possible reasons:*

2 If they want to build up the amount of money they have or they have money they don't need immediately.
3 Because Joel has been spending more than he can afford to spend and he will have to pay interest on the overdraft.
4 If they need their money immediately to pay for something.
5 You can transfer money into and out of your account online, pay bills, check your account, etc.
6 Using a cash machine is usually quicker than going into the bank, but there is a greater risk that someone may watch you and mug you and take your money, or the machine may take your card if you've forgotten your PIN (personal identification number).
7 Probably happy, because she has a positive amount in her account.
8 Probably insecure, because his income may go up and down and he may not be able to match his outgoings.
9 Less money - the bank has taken money from your account. If the bank puts money into your account, they *credit* your account.
10 You will find it easier to borrow money from banks, because they will feel confident that you will pay the money back.

Unit 41

41.1
2 silk
3 a bizarre design
4 faulty
5 a genuine Monet
6 china
7 rubber

41.2 2 A 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 B

41.3 2 pretty 3 half 4 nowhere 5 reasonably 6 unusually

41.4
2 It's easy to follow.
3 Yes, it is effective.
4 They are more likely to be tense rather than relaxed.
5 You'd be pleased because the teacher is saying that it is of a good standard.

Unit 42

42.1 2 e 3 b 4 h 5 a / g / i 6 a 7 a / g / i 8 f 9 d
2 Many people believe **in** life after death.
3 I was in favour **of** the proposed changes.
4 What does she think **of** the new teacher?
5 This is absurd, **in** my opinion **/ from** our point of view / **to** my mind.
6 He's quite wrong, **in** my opinion.
7 Well, that's just silly, **in** my opinion **/ from** our point of view / **to** my mind.
8 I have my doubts **about** how honest he is.
9 Is Alex likely to be opposed **to** the plans for the new airport?

42.2 *Possible answers:*
2 firm / strong
3 middle-of-the-road / moderate
4 obsessive
5 conservative / traditional
6 odd / weird / eccentric

42.3
2 I've always doubted that ghosts exist.
3 I have always held (the view) that people should rely on themselves more.
4 Claudia maintains that the teacher has been unfair to her.
5 I was convinced (that) I had been in that room before.
6 He feels we should have tried again.

Unit 43

43.1

Who feels ...	name	Who feels ...	name
1 fed up with something?	Max	5 miserable?	George
2 depressed?	Carlos	6 thankful?	Pilar
3 content?	Katie	7 confused?	Stefan
4 grateful?	Sara	8 delighted?	Agnes

43.2
2 I always get **nervous** just before an exam.
3 I was **furious** when they refused to give me my money back.
4 I was **thrilled** to see my old school friend again after so long.
5 The news about Rory's illness really **upset me**.
6 At first, I was **enthusiastic** about the course, but it's just not very good.

43.3
positive: contented, thrilled
negative: sick and tired, anxious, frustrated, confused

43.4
2 I am **quite / absolutely sick and tired** of her selfish behaviour. I've had enough! (*quite* sounds more formal when it means the same as *absolutely*)
3 It's all so complicated. I feel **a bit / quite confused**. Can you help me?
4 I was **absolutely thrilled** when I heard the wonderful news!
5 It made me feel **quite / a bit frustrated** that I still couldn't play any songs after six weeks of guitar lessons.
6 You always seem so **absolutely contented** with life. How lucky you are!

Unit 44

44.1
2 fond of
3 keen on
4 appeal to
5 fell in
6 fell for
7 affectionate towards
8 passionate about, cares for

44.2
2 I **can't stand** jazz.
3 Do you **fancy Ethan**?
4 She**'s keen on** rowing and golf.
5 I **can't bear** very salty food.
6 His art **appeals to** me.
7 Gina **fascinates me**. / I find Gina **fascinating**.
8 **He is totally captivated by her**. / She has totally **captivated** him.
9 I'm **not looking forward to** the exam.

44.3 2 b 3 a 4 b

44.4
2 I can't **bear** selfish people. I **despise** anyone who never considers others.
3 Her manner **repelled** me at first and I **couldn't** stand being in the same room as her, but now I've begun to like her more.
4 I felt a strong desire **to find** out what had happened to my old school friends.
5 Are you looking forward to **starting** your new job?
6 I felt absolutely **disgusted** by his unkind remarks about Sylvia. (Remember, if something or someone is disgust**ing**/fascinat**ing**/bor**ing**, you feel disgust**ed**/fascinat**ed**/bor**ed**.)

Unit 45

45.1
2 whispered
3 shouted
4 stuttered / stammered
5 muttered (or *shouted*, if he was very angry)
6 shrieked
7 screamed
8 mumbling / muttering
9 murmured / whispered

45.2 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 c

45.3
2 Andrew said happily.
3 Petra said / shouted / shrieked excitedly.
4 Leo said / muttered / murmured bitterly.
5 Lily said / murmured sadly.
6 Rory said anxiously.
7 Kallum said / shouted impatiently.
8 Anna said hopefully.

45.4
2 I **object to** having to sit on the floor. I paid for a seat.
3 Stop **grumbling about** your job all the time.
4 He **threatened to refuse** to pay and **to call** the police.
5 She **begged us to help** her.
6 He **confessed that** he had broken / He **confessed to breaking** the window.

45.5
1 miserably (N) cheerfully (P) desperately (N) gladly (P)
2 a object to b insist on c complain about
3 reluctantly 4 with 5 nervously / shyly

Unit 46

46.1 2 peer 3 observe 4 glance 5 stare 6 glimpse

46.2 2 sweet 3 hot 4 sour 5 spicy 6 salty

46.3 *Possible answers:*
2 stinking
3 foul-smelling / putrid
4 fragrant / sweet-smelling
5 pungent
6 scented / perfumed
7 musty
8 stinking

46.4
2 tapped
3 grasped
4 pressed
5 poke
6 stroked
7 grabbed / snatched
8 handled

46.5 *Possible answers:*

2 That smells wonderful.
3 Your hair looks great.
4 It sounds brilliant.
5 This tastes delicious.
6 I feel good, thanks.
7 That sounds fantastic.
8 You look upset. What's the matter?

46.6 *Possible answers:*

Did you **notice** anything different about Kate today? She seemed a little odd to me.
Rebecca is doing some research which involves **observing** a community of chimpanzees.
As she entered the concert hall, Sandra thought she **glimpsed** Jan going out through a door on the other side of the auditorium.
If people do not **see** very well, they can often be helped by glasses or contact lenses.
Jack **peered** through the keyhole trying to see what was happening in the room.
Every evening we sat on the hotel balcony **gazing** at the lake and the magnificent mountains around it.
Why are you **staring** at me like that? Is my face dirty?
Simona had to appear in court because she **witnessed** a traffic accident.

Unit 47

47.1 2 snore 3 sneeze 4 yawn 5 wink

47.2
2 sighed / was sighing
3 snoring
4 cough
5 sneezing
6 take a deep breath
7 hold your breath
8 out of breath

47.3 2 suck 3 bit 4 swallowed

47.4 2 chew 3 shake 4 blink 5 wink 6 lick

47.5 2 grinning 3 licked 4 swallow 5 shaking 6 trembling 7 perspiration

Unit 48

48.1 2 the cat's whiskers 3 on the ball 4 have green fingers 5 take the biscuit

48.2
2 Giovanni is **head and shoulders** above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums.
3 Maria **has a way** with young children - they always love her.
4 You're **streets ahead** of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed.
5 Hassan **plays** chess **brilliantly**.
6 Agata **has the gift of the gab**.

48.3
2 Tanya is usually **on the ball**.
3 Rajiv thinks **he's the cat's whiskers**.
4 Marek **has green fingers**.
5 Unfortunately, you **can't have your cake and eat it**.

48.4
2 No. She just wants you to give your opinion of it - good and/or bad.
3 He disapproves of it.
4 It's not at all flexible.
5 They're worried.

48.5
2 I don't understand why Sophie **thinks she's the cat's whiskers / the bee's knees**.
3 When it comes to sport, Andrey is **among the worst** in his school.
4 Greta was **to blame / at fault** for the error in the accounting figures.
5 He **has the gift of the gab**.

6 Mick **has a way with** the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.
7 He often **runs down** his school.
8 She always **picks holes in** everything I say.

Unit 49

49.1 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 e

49.2 2 face 3 as Larry / as can be 4 bad mood 5 in the dumps

49.3 2 Karen 3 Mark 4 Lars 5 Andrea 6 Krishnan

49.4
2 I think you should **keep a cool head** and just be patient.
3 He **frightened the life out of me** when he came in wearing that ghost mask!
4 Everyone was **shaking in their boots**/**shoes** when they saw the door open all by itself.
5 I was **scared stiff** / **scared out of my wits** before I did the bungee jump, but it was OK.
6 She **swelled with pride** as her daughter received the gold medal.
7 I think I got **carried away** by the idea of joining a rock band. It's actually very hard work!
8 I try to just **take everything as it comes**.

Unit 50

50.1 2 challenges 3 chaos 4 corner 5 dilemma 6 disaster

50.2 2 by e 3 of g 4 off 5 under h 6 on a 7 to d 8 in b

50.3
2 I can't face (the thought of) driving home in all this traffic.
3 Keira seems to be lacking (in) confidence.
4 Unfortunately, the project seems to have come to a dead end (at the moment).
5 People who are deprived of / Being deprived of sleep can have health and other problems.
6 Paula's meeting with Angus had a profound effect on her.

50.4
2 stir things up
3 see the light at the end of the tunnel
4 get to the bottom of things
5 got your act together
6 sit up and take notice
7 get a grasp of
8 take a back seat
9 bury the hatchet

Unit 51

51.1
2 significant / substantial
3 minute
4 enormous / excessive
5 Vast
6 average
7 tiny
8 significant (substantial is also possible, but the emphasis here is on the fact that the difference was noticeable)

51.2 2 enormous 3 vast 4 substantial / considerable 5 excessive

51.3 2 loads 3 was 4 loads / dozens 5 were

51.4 *Possible answers:*

2 The two novels were totally different.
3 His/Her behaviour was wholly unacceptable.
4 That way of working produced utter chaos.
5 I listened to the story in total disbelief.
6 There should be a total ban on using mobile phones in cinemas.

Unit 52

52.1

2 According to a UN study, two per cent of the world's population owns over half of all household wealth.
3 Nought degrees Celsius equals thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.
4 This article says that eight million, five hundred and fifty-six thousand, nine hundred and eighty-one people are currently living in London.

52.2

2 a square and a rectangle
3 fifty-two
4 twelve
5 eight
6 thirty-three
7 nine
8 sixty-four

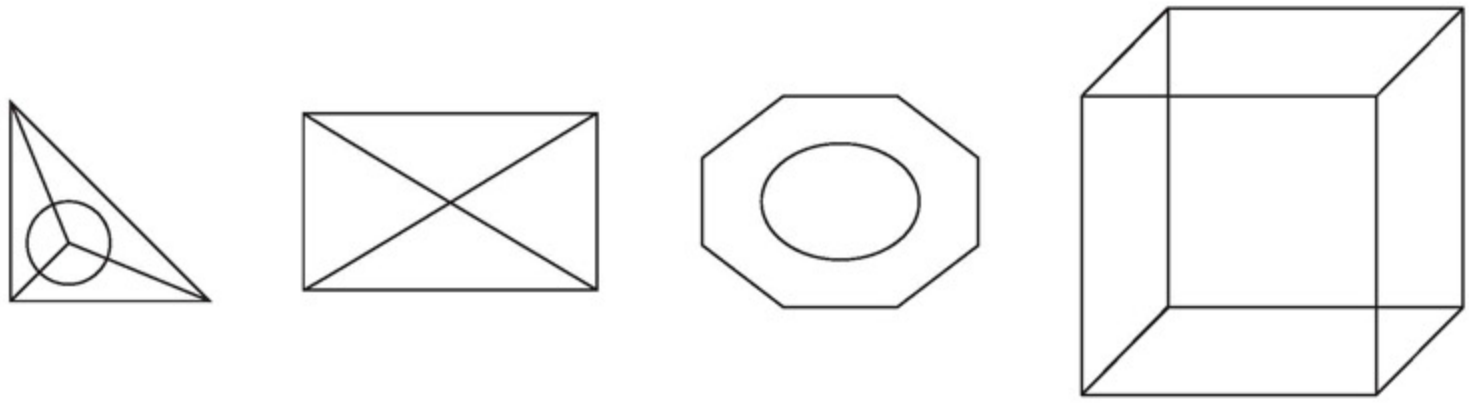
52.3

description	name of shape	adjective
round shape	circle	circular
shape with three sides	triangle	triangular
shape with eight sides	octagon	octagonal
shaped a bit like an egg	oval	oval
three-dimensional round shape	sphere	spherical
three-dimensional square shape	cube	cubic

52.4

2 Oxygen accounts for forty-six **point** six per cent of the earth's crust.
3 Seven **nines** are sixty-three.
4 The temperature today is eighteen **degrees** Celsius.
5 My bedroom is three ~~multiplied~~ by six metres.
6 What is six **to** the power of nine?
7 Eleven **sixteenths** of the students passed the exam.
8 Two **thirds** times five **cubed** is eighty-three and **a** third.

52.5



Unit 53

53.1 2 age / era 3 stages / phases 4 stage (or era) 5 phase 6 spell

53.2 *Possible answers:*

2 went on / dragged on
3 Age
4 fly
5 elapsed
6 timeless
7 fleeting
8 momentary

53.3 *Possible answers:*

2 Hi! You're just in time for tea/coffee.
3 By the time you get this card, I'll be in New York.
4 Can you please come one at a time? / I'll speak to you one at a time.
5 Can you use the old computer for the time being, please?
6 I'll do my best to arrive/be on time.
7 The weather can be very hot at times in (*city name*).
8 I enjoy a game of tennis from time to time.

Unit 54

54.1 *Suggested answers:*

2 … extremely tall
3 … a shortcut
4 … height
5 … widened it / … 've widened it
6 … heighten the feeling

54.2

2 to lengthen
3 a very narrow range of goods
4 a long-distance call
5 shallow water
6 faraway/distant places
7 broad-minded
8 lower your hand

54.3 2 e 3 f 4 d 5 b 6 a

54.4 2 expanded, contracted 3 shrunk 4 stretches 5 extended

54.5 1 at, of 2 in 3 from (*or* possibly at) 4 from, to

Unit 55

55.1 2 c 3 f 4 d 5 b 6 a

55.2 *Suggested answers:*

2 You don't have to buy the travel insurance; it's **an optional extra charge**.
3 You can borrow the camcorder, but you will **be liable for any damage to it**.
4 We'll have to sell the house. I'm afraid we have **no choice/alternative; otherwise we will be bankrupt**.
5 He didn't want to give them the money, but they had guns; they **forced him to hand it over**.
6 No, he couldn't choose to pay a fine; a prison sentence is **mandatory for dangerous driving**.
7 I didn't want to do maths, but I had to. It's **compulsory/obligatory in all secondary schools**.
8 If you're unemployed, you're **exempt from paying tax**.

55.3

2 100%
3 Nothing
4 No, you can choose.
5 Yours

55.4

2 an opportunity
3 possibility
4 doubtful
5 an absolute certainty
6 It is probable that she will

Unit 56

56.1

2 **racket** is an ideal word here.
3 **noises/sounds** if you mean different sounds, but **noise/sound** is also possible here if you interpret 'some' to mean not a plural number, but *one* sound of 'a certain, unidentifiable type', e.g. 'Some animal must have come into the garden last night - look at these footprints.' (it's not clear what sort of animal)
4 **racket** (**din** can also be used, often for discordant music)
5 **noise** is probably the best word since it means something negative and can be used uncountably (without *a*).

56.2 *Suggested words:*

2 clatter / crash 3 rustle 4 thud 5 bang 6 roar 7 rumble 8 screech

56.3 2 ringing 3 pattering 4 hum 5 chime/chiming 6 clanged

56.4 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 e

56.5 2 c 3 a 4 b

Unit 57

57.1
2 properties
3 belongings
4 estate
5 possessions
6 property

57.2
2 allocated
3 left
4 supplied
5 presented
6 catered
7 supported
8 inherited

57.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 Did he inherit the house?
3 Will you sponsor me in a run/race for charity?
4 Are you a tenant?
5 Would you like to contribute/donate to cancer research?
6 Do you supply/provide us with pens and things?

57.4
2 landlords
3 tenants
4 owner / proprietor
5 estate
6 property / properties
7 possessions
8 belongings

Unit 58

58.1 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 d

58.2 *Possible answers:*

2 an insect crawls; a baby does too before it can walk; there is a fast over-arm swimming style called 'crawl'
3 anything moving extremely fast, e.g. a bird or animal can shoot by, a plane can shoot overhead, a fish can shoot through the water
4 a bird's or butterfly's wings; a piece of washing on the line in the wind; a person's eyelashes; a curtain in the wind
5 anything moving slowly on water, e.g. a boat, a piece of wood; a person can drift through life (moving without any sense of purpose or direction); your thoughts can drift to something or someone (it happens unintentionally); you can drift off to sleep (go to sleep slowly)

58.3 2 pace 3 velocity 4 speed 5 rate

58.4
2 at a very slow pace
3 stirred
4 swayed a little
5 at a much faster speed

58.5 *Possible answers:*

	usage	grammar
quick	something that takes a short time, e.g. quick snack; quick phone call	adjective only; can be used with 'to', e.g. She was quick to respond
rapid	more formal; used for things like 'rapid increase/decline'	adjective only
swift	more restricted generally; used for things like 'swift-flowing stream'; swift response/ decision/reaction	adjective only; can be used with 'to', e.g. He was swift to point out how wrong I was

58.6 *Possible situations:*

1 If you are very late for something.
2 If you *want* to be late for something, e.g. something unpleasant.
3 If you aren't in a hurry. You can also say this about your studies, if you are not going either particularly fast or slowly.
4 If you were hiding from someone, e.g. under a bed or behind a door.
5 If you really don't want to meet them or talk to them, or don't want them to see you.
6 If it's late and everyone else is asleep.

Unit 59

59.1

2 coarse
3 slippery
4 prickly
5 rough
6 furry
7 jagged
8 shiny / polished / smooth
9 silky / smooth
10 rough / coarse

59.2

2 The cloth was rough **to the touch**.
3 We sat in a **shady** part of the garden.
4 Suddenly there was a **dazzling** light.
5 The ground was very wet **underfoot**.
6 My suitcase is **as light as a feather**.

59.3 2 a 3 d 4 f 5 b 6 c

59.4 *Suggested answers:*

2 change the colour to a brighter / more vivid colour
3 wear sunglasses / shade your eyes / wear a cap
4 polish them
5 take things out or get a smaller rucksack

Unit 60

60.1

2 fulfilled
3 reach/attain/achieve
4 attain/realise/fulfil
5 realise/fulfil
6 reach
7 come

60.2

verb	noun	adjective
realise	realisation	realisable
-	difficulty	difficult
target	target	targeted
fail	failure	failed, failing
trouble	trouble	troubling, troublesome, troubled

Comments:
difficult has no adverb in English; we say 'We did it **with difficulty**.'
targeted is used in sentences such as 'The government has decided to give the extra funds to **targeted** groups in society'. [specifically chosen]
failed: They have made three failed attempts to save the company.
unfailingly: 'failingly' doesn't exist, but 'unfailingly' does, e.g. She is **unfailingly** honest; you can trust her completely.
troubling: We have seen some very **troubling** developments recently. [worrying]
troublesome: They are a **troublesome** group of students. [cause trouble]
troubled: I've been feeling rather **troubled** lately about my daughter. [worried]

60.3

2 She succeeded **in rising** to the top of her profession.
3 Do you ever have any trouble **using** this photocopier? I always seem to.
4 I've **managed** to work quite hard this last month. (**accomplish** usually has a direct object, e.g. 'I've accomplished a lot this month.')
5 I'm amazed that you can cope **with** all the work they give you.
6 Did you have **much difficulty** finding the book in the library?
7 Unfortunately, it seems as if all Johnny's plans have come **to** nothing.
8 I'm afraid I haven't had any **success** in contacting Lara today.

60.4 *Possible answers:*

2 Perhaps someone who invested £5,000 and lost it all.
3 It could be about a business someone started, or about a project, or something that failed.
4 It might be said to someone who is carrying a lot of heavy shopping bags.
5 Perhaps it's about the successful realisation of someone's plan, e.g. for getting permission to do something where it seemed more likely that the result would not be successful.

60.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'd get it seen to / repaired.
2 Perhaps try again, or abandon it.
3 Perhaps ask for help and advice from the teacher.

Unit 61

61.1 2 In the meantime 3 Subsequently 4 Earlier on 5 Prior to 6 Following 7 during 8 moment

61.2 2 at some point 3 simultaneously 4 (at) the time (that)

61.3 2 No 3 All summer 4 Hamburg 5 Three weeks 6 Probably just part of it

Unit 62

62.1
2 **In case of** / **In the event of** (often seen in notices and regulations)
3 **Unless**
4 **on condition that** would be very suitable since this is legal/official language, or **providing**/**provided that**; **so long as** is also possible, but **as long as** sounds just a little too informal
5 **Supposing** / **What if** (less tentative, more direct and informal) / **If**

62.2
2 If anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, **whoever it is**.
3 **Whatever I do**, I always seem to do the wrong thing.
4 It'll probably have meat in it, **no matter which dish you choose**. They don't cater for vegetarians here.
5 **However I do it**, that recipe never seems to work.
6 **No matter how hard you try**, you'll never be able to do it all on your own.

62.3 *Possible answers:*

2 You cannot enter unless you have a passport. / You can/may enter providing/provided (that) / on condition that you have a passport.
3 You can/may go to university as long as you get 70% or more in the exam. / Unless you get (at least) 70%, you cannot go on to university.
4 Children under 10 can't go on the roller coaster unless they are accompanied by an adult. / Children under 10 can go on the roller coaster provided they are accompanied by an adult.
5 Visitors may enter the mosque on condition that they remove their shoes. / You can go in as long as you take off your shoes. (*informal*)
6 You can't come in unless you're over 18. / You may enter the club providing/provided (that) you are over 18.

Unit 63

63.1 *Suggested answers:*

2 The reason (why) I didn't contact you was that I'd lost your phone number.
3 I will not sign on the grounds that this contract is illegal.
4 The government passed a new law with the aim of controlling prices.
5 I wonder what her motives were in sending flowers to everyone.
6 The high salary prompted her to apply for the job.

63.2
2 The announcement of higher taxes **provoked** / **generated** / **led to** a strong attack from the opposition.
3 The new Act of Parliament **produced** / **brought about** / **gave rise to** great changes in industry.
4 The train crash **was caused by** / **was due to** the failure of the electrical system.
5 A violent storm **caused** the wall to collapse.
6 Food shortages **led to** / **provoked** / **caused** / **sparked (off)** serious riots in several cities.
7 The food shortages **arose from** / **stemmed from** bad economic policies.

63.3 2 of 3 with, of 4 in 5 from 6 with, to 7 to

63.4 *Possible answers:*

2 Owing to the fact that the performance was cancelled, everyone got a refund.
3 The service was terribly slow. As a result / Consequently (more formal), all the customers got angry.
4 We missed the last bus. As a result, we had to walk home.

Unit 64

64.1 *Possible answers and comments:*

1 I accept (or more formal: I acknowledge) that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take *some* responsibility. (**Accept** and **acknowledge** are most suitable here since the speaker is prepared to agree with one aspect but wants to go on to make another point to support his/her case.)
2 OK, I admit I was wrong, you were right; he *is* a nice guy. (This seems to be a situation where somebody is accusing someone of trying to get them to say they were wrong. **Admit** is ideal in this case.)
3 The company acknowledges that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability. (**Acknowledge** is perhaps best here; it is often used in formal, legalistic situations like this because it simply says 'We understand your message, but we do *not* necessarily accept any liability/blame/responsibility'; **admit** might suggest the company *does* accept legal responsibility; **accept** is also possible though less formal.)
4 She accepted/conceded that we had done all we could, but she was still not content. (**Concede** usually suggests an argument or debate where people might 'give' small points to one another while still holding on to their basic position, and would seem to be a likely choice here; **concede** here suggests she did not really want to say it.)

64.2 *Suggested answers:*

2 After all
3 for all that / after all
4 It's all very well
5 That's all very well / That's all well and good

64.3 *Possible answers:*

2 There's a **huge discrepancy** between what she says and what she does.
3 Toby and Catalina are **poles apart** when it comes to saving money / on the question of saving money.
4 There's a **world of difference** between being a student and being a teacher.
5 There's a **yawning gap** between the standard of living in the north and in the south.

64.4 *Possible answers:*

2 The house itself is rather small.
3 There is no sign that the government has solved the traffic problem.
4 In most of the rest of Europe, you drive on the right.
5 I'm not at all hungry, thanks.

64.5 2 on the other hand (it *is* true that it's expensive, but if you look at it from another point of view, we need it)
3 on the other hand (it's true that I'd like to leave my job but if I look at leaving from another point of view I realise I'd miss my colleagues)
4 on the contrary (it's not true that he's lazy)
5 on the contrary (it's not true she speaks Japanese well)
6 on the other hand (it's true that it looks attractive but it's also true that it's expensive)

Unit 65

65.1 *Suggested answers and comments:*

2 In addition to / As well as / Apart from / Besides
(The choice is quite wide, but, depending on which one she chooses for 2, the writer would probably then choose a different one for 4, to avoid repeating herself.)
3 etc. / and so on
(**etc.** is slightly more formal than **and so on**, and the writer may want to avoid sounding too informal.)
4 in addition to / as well as / apart from / besides
5 Furthermore / Moreover / Likewise
(**furthermore**/**moreover** add her previous experience on to the rest; **likewise** not only adds the information but suggests it is of equal value to the other experience she has mentioned.)
If she wanted to use **what's more**, the writer would probably write it in full as **what is more**, so as not to sound too informal. However, **what's more** / **what is more** can often sound a little abrupt and argumentative (as if you're trying very hard to convince the reader) and might sound just a bit too strong here.
Equally would not be suitable here, as it is best used when arguing points and presenting opinions (trying to convince someone of the equal value of a point added on to other points).

65.2
2 My cousin turned up **along with** some schoolmates of his.
3 He owns a big chemical factory **as well as running** a massive oil business in the USA.
4 **In addition to being** their scientific adviser, I act as a consultant to the Managing Director.
5 It was raining and getting dark. **On top of (all) that**, we had very little petrol left in the tank. (it is not necessary to repeat *also*)
6 He's a very good singer. **What's more / What is more**, he has a degree in music.

65.3
2 **Besides having** a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
3 **Alongside my** many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
4 **In addition to having / In addition to** a degree, she also has a diploma.
5 My father won't agree. **Likewise**, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
6 She's a good footballer and a good athlete **to boot**.
7 He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance **and so on and so forth**.

65.4 2 into the bargain 3 in addition 4 on top of (all) that

65.5 *Suggested answers:*

To become a successful athlete you will need to be fit **plus** you will need to train hard every day. **Furthermore / Moreover / What is more / Besides / In addition,** you will need a very special type of determination **as well as** stamina. **Additionally / In addition,** you will need support from friends and family, financial support **and so on (and so forth)** / **etc.** And a good coach will help a great deal, motivating you **as well as** setting goals for you. **Alongside** / **Apart from these things** / **On top of (all) that**, you will need that indefinable thing: talent.

Unit 66

66.1 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 e

66.2
1 **issue** is best here because it is something everyone is debating and disagreeing on, but **question** and **problem** are also OK
2 problem / matter (or **crisis** if it is really serious)
3 question (**mystery** would also be possible)
4 topic
5 approach / response / solution / answer

66.3 2 a 3 c 4 e 5 d 6 b

Unit 67

67.1 '**Well**, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, **sort of** doing nothing much. **Anyway**, I looked up and … **you see**, we have this, **kind of**, long wall at the end of the garden, and it's … **like** … a motorway for cats. That big fat black one you saw, **well**, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, **so … where was I**? I was looking at that wall, **you know**, daydreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before. It wasn't an ordinary cat at all … **I mean**, you'll never believe what it was …'

67.2 *Suggested answers:*

2 A: I'll take care of these.
B: **Right**. / **Good**. That's everything.
A: **Right**, / **Good**, / **Anyway**, see you next week.
B: **Right**. / **Good**. That was a very useful meeting.

3 A: It was last Monday. I was coming home from work. I saw this funny old man approaching me. I stopped him …
B: I bet it was Jim Dibble!
A: **Hang on**! Let me tell you what happened first.

4 A: Which number is yours?
B: **Let me see** … it's that one there, yes, that one.

5 A: He's looking exhausted.
B: Really?
A: **I mean**, look at his eyes – he looks so tired.

6 A: What do you mean, 'cold'?
B: **Well**, / **You know**, / **I mean**, she's not friendly, very distant. Last week I gave her a nice smile and she scowled at me.
A: **Well**, what do you expect? I've seen the way you smile at people; it puts them off.

7 A: Money isn't the most important thing in life.
B: **Still**, you can't live without it!
A: I suppose that's true.

8 A: What are we going to do?
B: **Listen**, I've got an idea. Why don't we ask James to help? He's a lawyer.

67.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 There are two reasons why I think he's wrong: **a**, people don't act like that, and **b**, Paul would certainly never act like that.
3 **Now**, I want you to pay attention, everyone.
4 He loses his temper very quickly. **On the other hand**, he's got a great sense of humour.
5 You seem a bit sad today. **Look**, let me buy lunch for you to cheer you up.
6 A: So I'll pick you up at 6.30. B: **Great**. See you then.

Unit 68

68.1 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 d 6 b

68.2
2 in other words
3 For example / For instance
4 Next
5 as it were
6 Lastly
7 In summary / In sum (more formal) (**In conclusion** would not be suitable here, since it just means 'this is the end of the text', whereas this sentence provides a summing up of the arguments in the text.)

68.3
2 the following (introducing a list)
3 in summary, to sum up, in sum
4 further (as in *further details/information*)
5 overleaf (meaning turn the page)

68.4 *Sample letter:*

Dear Editor,

With reference to the article in your newspaper about the closure of Newton Hospital, I would like to express my strong opposition to the proposal, for **the following** reasons. **Firstly**, the nearest other hospital is 50 kilometres away. **Secondly**, 200 people work at the hospital and they will lose their jobs and the whole region will suffer, **that is to say** the hospital makes an important contribution to the local economy. **Finally**, it is the only hospital in the region with a special cancer unit. But **leaving aside** the economic and medical questions, the hospital is obviously being closed for political reasons, and this is quite wrong.

To sum up, the closure of our hospital would be a disaster both for the people and for the economy of this region.

Yours sincerely,

Anna Green

Unit 69

69.1
2 a word in edgeways
3 wrong end of the stick
4 make head or tail of
5 down

69.2
2 talk rubbish
3 start the ball rolling
4 get to / come to the point
5 to put it in a nutshell
6 get hold of the wrong end of the stick

69.3 2 talk 3 talking 4 talking 5 winded 6 sense 7 shop 8 back

Unit 70

70.1 2 coat hanger 3 pencil sharpener 4 projector 5 tin opener / can opener

70.2 2 thing 3 person or thing 4 thing 5 person or thing 6 person 7 person 8 person

70.3
2 a windscreen wiper
3 a classical violinist
4 a professional photographer (note the stress change: **pho**tograph but pho**tog**rapher)
5 an amateur actor
6 a payee
7 a dishwasher
8 an organ donor
9 an addressee

70.4
2 admission
3 laziness
4 productive
5 readable
6 childhood
7 washable
8 friendship

70.5

noun	verb	adjective
	eat	edible
fury		furious
	beautify	beautiful
scarcity		scarce
refusal	refuse	
	modernise	modern
forgetfulness	forget	forgetful
action*	act	active

* The noun *act* exists (without a suffix) in expressions such as *an Act of Parliament* (i.e. a new law), or for talking about an act of a play (i.e. a section of the play).

Unit 71

71.1 2 inedible 3 illiterate 4 disorganised 5 irresponsible 6 irreplaceable

71.2
2 unwrapping
3 disagree
4 disprove
5 unveiled
6 to unload
7 disconnected
8 unfolded

71.3 2 antiseptic 3 multinational 4 auto-pilot 5 postgraduate 6 subway

71.4
2 indiscreet
3 insensitive
4 unconvincing
5 irrelevant
6 disobedient
7 unemployed
8 inefficient
9 unlocked
10 ungrateful
11 disloyal
12 intolerant

71.5
2 mispronouncing
3 are overworked but underpaid
4 a pseudo-science
5 her ex-husband
6 redo it

Unit 72

72.1

verb	person noun	abstract noun
convert		conversion
conduct	conductor	
impress		impression
support	supporter	support
compress		compression

Conduction exists as an abstract noun meaning the process by which heat or electricity goes through a substance. *Compressor* exists as a concrete noun for part of a machine which forces air or gas into less space.

72.2
2 deported
3 adverts/advertisements
4 imposed
5 inspector
6 diverted
7 introducing
8 composed
9 depresses
10 postpone

72.3 It isn't easy to find exact synonyms for these words; the meanings are as follows:

2 argue against
3 hold back
4 work out
5 made public
6 hold back

72.4 postpone - put off, oppose - go against, inspect - look at, deposit - put down, divert - turn away

In each case the word based on the Latin root is more formal than its two-part verb equivalent.

Unit 73

73.1
2 amazement
3 frustration
4 kindness
5 hostility
6 strength
7 anger
8 generosity
9 politeness
10 happiness
11 popularity
12 weakness
13 wisdom
14 reason
15 width

73.2
2 recede
3 believe
4 relate
5 strengthen
6 bore
7 act
8 see
9 produce
10 own
11 expect
12 adjust

73.3
2 amazement
3 curiosity
4 brotherhood
5 chance
6 replacement
7 stardom
8 reduction
9 neighbourhood
10 sight
11 freedom
12 rage
13 prosperity
14 motherhood
15 ownership

73.4 2 advice 3 injustice 4 darkness 5 kingdom

73.5 Here are some 'real' quotations about these abstract nouns:

1 Freedom is an indivisible word. If we want to enjoy it, and to fight for it, we must be prepared to extend it to everyone.
2 Love is a universal migraine. [migraine = bad headache]
3 Life is a foreign language; all men mispronounce it.
4 Four be the things I'd be better without: love, curiosity, freckles and doubt.
5 Where there is no imagination, there is no horror.

Unit 74

74.1
2 an open-necked, tight-fitting shirt
3 a long-legged, brown-eyed girl
4 brand-new, open-toed sandals
5 a well-dressed, suntanned boy
6 an easy-going, warm-hearted person
7 a curly-haired, quick-witted boy
8 a far-fetched story

74.2
1 blue-green-eyed brown-
2 bullet-water*-proof fire-
3 second-business-class
4 absent-broad-minded narrow-
5 hand-home-made man-
6 sugar-duty-free
7 tight-loose-fitting
8 left-right-handed

*usually written as *waterproof*, without a hyphen

74.3
1 It was an old, **run-down** hotel that needed modernising. None of the rooms were **air-conditioned** and the **so-called** restaurant was just a coffee bar. Our room had an old, **worn-out** carpet that was dirty.
2 It's a very **built-up** coast, with hotels and villas everywhere.
3 We managed to get a **last-minute** booking for a Mediterranean cruise.
4 **Off-peak** train travel is much cheaper than travelling at busy times, but **long-distance** travel by train can sometimes be more expensive than flying.
5 The route of the President's drive to Parliament was **top secret** and he was driven in a **bullet-proof** limousine.
6 The workers went on **all-out** strike over a **long-standing** pay dispute and the airport was closed for three days.
7 She used to be quite **well-off** but she lost a lot of money and now she has a **hard-up** look about her. She got a **part-time** job to help pay the bills.
8 She has to have a **sugar-free** diet but it's very **time-consuming** trying to make sure everything she buys has no sugar in it.

Unit 75

75.1 Here are some words which would fit appropriately into the bubble diagrams.

money	health	social issues
bank account	blood donor	race relations
credit card	heart attack	arms race
luxury goods	contact lens	welfare state
mail order	birth control	death penalty
pocket money	blood pressure	generation gap
income tax	hay fever	climate change
	food poisoning	
	junk food	
	mineral water	

75.2

2 An alarm in a house which goes off if burglars try to get into the house.
3 Being poisoned or being made ill by food that you have eaten.
4 A gap between different generations making it difficult for parents and children to understand each other's tastes and attitudes.
5 Changes in the climate of the world leading to phenomena like the polar caps reducing in size, glaciers melting and so on.
6 Scissors that are especially for use in a kitchen preparing food, etc.
7 Goods that are luxuries rather than necessities, e.g. cosmetics compared with basic foods.
8 Money that you carry in your pocket, i.e. small amounts of money that can be spent on what you wish. (It is usually used about money that parents give their children every week to spend on what the children themselves decide.)
9 The part of the state that provides welfare for the members of society who need it, e.g. money for those out of work or pensioners or sick.
10 An electronic telephone answering system used particularly by organisations and mobile phone users.

75.3

2 climate change
3 hay fever
4 the arms race
5 air traffic control
6 contact lens
7 the death penalty
8 package holiday
9 voice mail
10 pedestrian crossing
11 light bulbs
12 food poisoning

75.4 *Possible answers:*

Here are some possible answers for this question. There are some other possibilities also. Check with a dictionary or a teacher if you are not sure whether your answers are correct or not.

2 soundbite
3 blood ties
4 teapot
5 mother country
6 inheritance tax
7 word-processing
8 level crossing
9 fast food
10 rat race

75.5 *Possible sentences:*

2 Leading politicians will always try to include one of these when they are making a speech. (sound bite)
3 They say these are thicker than water. (blood ties)
4 We were given a large silver one as a wedding present. (teapot)
5 José hasn't lived in Chile since he was six but he still considers it his mother country.
6 They had a huge amount to pay after their father died. (inheritance tax)
7 The software package for doing this on my computer means I can be very efficient. (word-processing)
8 We've got one at the end of our village and you often have to stop to let the trains pass. (level crossing)
9 Burgers and pizzas are popular types of this. (fast food)
10 He couldn't stand it any longer and moved to a Scottish island to be self-sufficient. (the rat race)

Unit 76

76.1 *Possible answers:*

2 nervous breakdown
3 computer printout
4 annual turnover
5 final output / outcome
6 sales outlet
7 positive feedback / outcome
8 city bypass

76.2 2 j 3 i 4 f 5 h 6 a 7 c 8 b 9 d 10 g

76.3

2 shake-up
3 walkout
4 crackdown
5 breakout
6 workout
7 outbreak
8 Check-out

76.4

2 burglaries (burglars break in to buildings)
3 attempt to conceal information (or cover it up)
4 obstacle in the way of progress (has set the speaker back)
5 delay to traffic (something has held up / delayed the traffic)
6 escape (to get away = to escape)
7 audience (people can be said to turn out to attend something)
8 stay in bed (to lie in = to stay in bed longer than usual)
9 papers accompanying a talk (to hand out = to distribute)
10 tidy (to clear out = to tidy a place by getting rid of things you don't need)

76.5

2 **Set-up** means organisation, whereas **upset** means disturbance.
3 **Outlet** means a place where something is released, whereas **let-out** means a way of escaping from a difficult situation.
4 **Outlay** means an amount of money spent on something, whereas **layout** means the way something is arranged, e.g. the layout of a page or a room.

Unit 77

77.1 wine and dine high and dry part and parcel rack and ruin rough and ready rant and rave

2 I was left **high and dry**, with no one to help me.
3 The room's a bit **rough and ready** but you're welcome to stay as long as you like.
4 She was in a bad temper and was **ranting and raving** at everybody.
5 My hosts **wined and dined** me at the best restaurants.
6 That old house in the country has gone to **rack and ruin**; nobody looks after it now.
7 Working hard and being very disciplined is **part and parcel** of training to be a top athlete.

77.2

2 **First and foremost,** I want to get a good, steady job.
3 I've bumped into Karen **on and off** / **off and on** but I don't meet her regularly.
4 Her violin playing seems to be progressing **in leaps and bounds**.
5 I've been running **to and fro / back and forth** all morning.
6 The doctor said I needed a few weeks of **rest and recreation / R and R**.
7 We'll have to stay in a cheap hotel. We can't afford to **pick and choose**.
8 There are some nice hotels **here and there** along the coast.
9 Mrs James was ill for a while, but now she's **out and about** again.
10 Robin's office is on the next floor to mine, so we have to go **up and down** all day.

77.3

2 correct
3 wrong: black and white
4 wrong: Sooner or later
5 wrong: Ladies and gentlemen
6 correct

77.4 2 all or nothing 3 back to front 4 sink or swim 5 slowly but surely 6 give or take

Unit 78

78.1 2 e 3 h 4 g 5 a 6 b 7 f 8 d

78.2

2 GM, WHO, DNA, carbs
3 PIN, ATM, IOU
4 scuba
5 NATO, MI6, CIA
6 radar, sonar

78.3

2 AKA/aka
3 laser
4 high-tech
5 sonar
6 satnav

78.4

1 RSVP
2 PS
3 RIP
4 PTO

Unit 79

79.1

2 This printer isn't working again! It's **a pain in the neck**.
3 It's almost midnight! I'd better be **making a move**.
4 I spent too much money last month and now I'**m in the red**.
5 It's time to change my laptop. It's five years old and **has seen better days**.
6 She is the absolute limit! She really **takes the biscuit**.
7 Oh dear, Matthew completely misunderstood me. He always seems to **get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick**.
8 I'm sorry. I do some really stupid things. You must think I'm **as daft as a brush**.
9 I wonder what's wrong with Ursula? She looks **down in the dumps**.
10 I don't trust politicians. Most of them are just **on the make**.

79.2 2 barking up the wrong tree 3 poke your nose in(to) 4 as good as gold

79.3 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 a

79.4 *Suggested answers:*

2 very easy
3 very fit physically
4 treating me in a cold, unfriendly way
5 very occasionally / very rarely
6 learnt how to use it or to understand it

Unit 80

80.1

1 They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb. (Note that although the 'r' in 'world' is not really pronounced, in Standard British English, it affects the way the word is pronounced.)
2 The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as she was walking home.
3 He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt. (Note that the 'h' in 'have' is not really pronounced when following an auxiliary verb as in this sentence and the next one.)
4 You could have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

80.2 The odd one out appears first.

2 word /ɜː/, sword, cord /ɔː/
3 dome /əʊ/, come, some /ʌ/
4 plead /iː/, head, tread /e/
5 could /ʊ/, doubt, shout /aʊ/
6 cough /ɒ/, rough, tough /ʌ/
7 wand /ɑ/, land, sand /□/
8 root /uː/, soot, foot /ʊ/

80.3 *Possible answers:*

2 now 3 who 4 off 5 go

80.4 The stressed syllables are underlined below.

1 transfer, transfer
2 suspected, suspect
3 conflicting, conflict
4 upset, upset
5 increased, decrease
6 permit, permits
7 record, record
8 conduct, conducting

80.5

2 catastrophe
3 handkerchief
4 chemical
5 subtle
6 receipt
7 height
8 recipe

80.6

2 zoology, zoologist, zoological
3 arithmetic, arithmetical, arithmetician (Note that suffixes like *-ian* and *-tion* work as if they are two syllables with this 'third syllable from the end' stress rule, even though they are only pronounced as one syllable nowadays.)
4 psychology, psychologist, psychological
5 psychiatry, psychiatric, psychiatrist

80.7 2 cool 3 sword 4 apostrophe 5 climb 6 calm

Unit 81

81.1 2 g 3 h 4 f 5 b 6 c 7 e 8 a

81.2
2 **wh**eezing
3 **cl**ip-**cl**opping
4 **wh**izzed
5 **gr**umbling
6 d**ash**ed
7 **sp**urted
8 b**ash**ed

81.3
1 purred
2 Click
3 groaned
4 crashed
5 mash
6 gash

81.4 *Possible answers:*

2 a piece of metal
3 angry
4 when feeling cheerful (Some people just can't whistle, but people who can often whistle because they're happy, or because they like a particular melody, or to attract someone's attention or to call a dog.)
5 buses, planes and trains which are late, people who behave rudely!
6 spit it out (but that may not be possible in polite company!)

Unit 82

82.1 *Note:* These sentences do not sound natural. They are only used for the exercise.

2 The main house (mouse) houses (browse) a collection of rare stamps.
3 It's no use (juice). I can't use (snooze) this gadget.
4 You sow (go) the seeds while I feed the sow. (cow)
5 The violinist in the bow (so) tie made a bow. (now)
6 He's the lead (deed) singer in the group 'Lead (head) piping'.
7 What a row (plough) from the last house in the row! (though)
8 Does he still suffer from his war wound? (tuned)
9 I wound (round) the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the gale.
10 It's hard to wind (find) in the sails in this wind. (tinned)

82.2 2 waste 3 sole 4 pane 5 heir 6 allowed 7 sail 8 through, phase 9 peel

82.3 *Possible sentences:*

Note: Most sentences in 'real' English avoid using pairs of homophones as they may be confusing and often don't sound natural.

2 **Whether** we have a picnic tomorrow or not will depend on the **weather**.
3 Let's **practise** with these grammar exercises first and then do some vocabulary **practice**.
4 It's **great** to see such a lovely fire burning in the **grate**.
5 Don't **whine** so much just because the **wine**'s finished.
6 **Brake** now or you'll **break** that toy in the road.
7 The archaeological **site** was a marvellous **sight** at sunset.
8 Let us **pray** that we may never be **prey** to evil thoughts.
9 Although she was a little **hoarse** it did not put her off **horse**-riding in the snow.
10 The beautiful sight of the moon's **rays** reflected in the lake did a great deal to **raise** her spirits.

82.4
2 a This is a play on words on the two meanings of **draughts**. One is the game played with round counters and a chess board and the other is a current of air as in 'There's a terrible draught coming from under the door.'
3 d This is a play on words on two meanings of **draw**. The first means make a picture and the second means pull.
4 e This is a play on words on the meanings of **dates**. One refers to years such as 1966; the other to a sweet fruit from a kind of palm tree or to an evening spent together by two people (usually romantic).
5 b This is a play on words on two meanings of **beating**. A drummer beats a drum. There is also the expression 'takes a lot of beating' which means 'is hard to improve on'.

82.5 2 pear and pair 3 waste and waist 4 toe and tow

Unit 83

83.1 *Possible answers:*

2 a job (or jobs) / homework (or some homework)
3 research into / a study of
4 (some) rice / (some) noodles
5 (some) news / a surprise
6 textiles / cloth

83.2 The words are paired up in this table.

uncountables	countables
money	coin
bread	loaf
information	fact
advice	recommendation
travel	trip
work	job
baggage	case

83.3

2 In the south of England, most houses are made of **stone**, but in the north, **brick is** more common.
3 I love antique **furniture**, but I would need (**some**) advice from a specialist before I bought any. My **knowledge** in that area **is** very poor.
4 Her **research is** definitely making great **progress** these days. She has done a lot of original **work** recently.
5 What **equipment** do you need to go skiing? If you can give me any **information**, I would be grateful.
6 Oil exports have produced a great deal of **wealth** for the country.
7 Package holidays often include **transport** from the airport to your **accommodation**.
8 I don't have any **experience** of working in education, but I would like to do some voluntary **work** in a school.
9 **Poverty** is the biggest problem in many countries.
10 I bought **(some)** new software that shows you the kind of **weather** every country has each month of the year.

83.4 *Possible items:*

For making clothes, furniture, etc.: wool, cotton, rubber, plastic
For buildings: cement, metal, wood/timber, glass
For energy: gas, electricity, steam, solar power, petrol

Unit 84

84.1 In addition to those on the left-hand page, subjects and areas of study that are plural might include: arts/humanities, natural sciences, genetics, politics, ethics.

84.2

2 glasses/spectacles
3 scissors
4 braces
5 overalls
6 binoculars
7 pliers
8 handcuffs

84.3 2 socks 3 trousers ✓ 4 dungarees ✓ 5 underpants/pants ✓ 6 tights ✓ 7 jeans ✓

84.4

2 proceeds
3 acoustics
4 whereabouts
5 headphones, earphones (either order)
6 authorities, goods
7 graphics

84.5 2 billiards 3 scissors 4 dungarees

84.6 I decided that if I wanted to be a pop star I'd have to move to London. I finally got a room, but it was on the **outskirts** of the city. The owner didn't live on the **premises**, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The **acoustics** in the bathroom **were** fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the **foundations**! I went to the **headquarters** of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have the right looks to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

Unit 85

85.1 *Possible answers:*

2 a cloth: Yes, most people have a cloth somewhere in the kitchen to wipe things with. If the person likes making their own clothes, they may have some cloth in the house too.
3 a fish: If you have an aquarium, you may have a fish or several fish. If you are going to cook fish for dinner, you may have some in your kitchen or refrigerator or freezer.
4 glass: Most people would not keep the material (glass) in their house, but their windows are probably made of glass. Most people have glasses in their house to drink out of.
5 a wood: It's not likely that people will have a wood (a small forest!) in their house, but they might keep some wood to use to make things or to repair things.
6 pepper: Most people probably have pepper (and salt) in their kitchen to put on their food. They may also have a green or red pepper, or several peppers in their kitchen or refrigerator.
7 paper: Yes, most people keep paper to write or print things on. Many people will have a paper or several papers in order to read the latest news.

85.2

2 Could I borrow an iron, please?
3 Could I have some pepper, please?
4 Could I have a chocolate, please?
5 Could I borrow some paper, please?
6 Could I borrow your/a rubber, please?
7 Could I have a glass, please?

85.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 I drove over some broken glass.
3 They're made of rubber.
4 No, I don't have any experience of working in a primary school.
5 We could buy a paper and find out.
6 It's a work of art by a famous Italian artist called Leonardo Da Vinci.
7 My favourite flavour's chocolate.

85.4

1 b Art here means painting, drawing and sculpture.
2 a Plant here means machines and large-scale industrial equipment.
  b A plant here means a botanical item (e.g. a plant with flowers).
3 a Damage here means that something is broken or destroyed in some way.
  b Damages here means money awarded to someone by a court of law for some harm that has been caused by someone or something (e.g. destroying someone's reputation, or injuring them).
4 a Times here means experiences.
  b Times here means occasions.

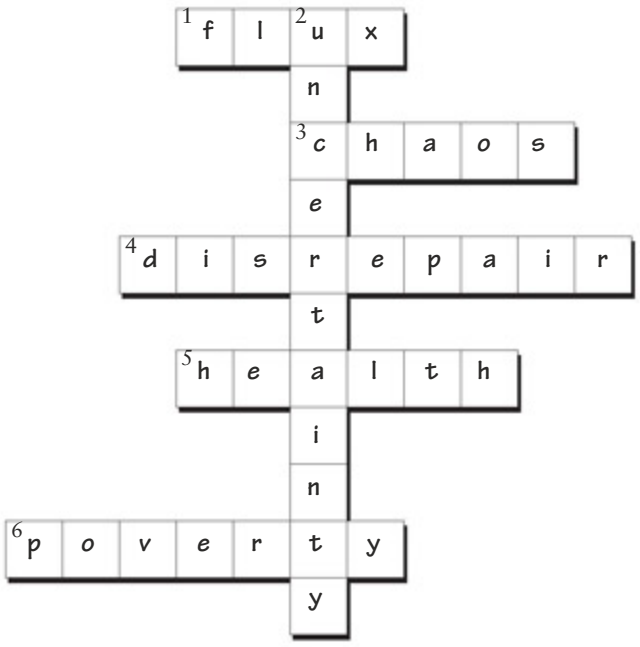
Unit 86

86.1 2 e 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 f 8 g

86.2

2 My mother gave me **a piece of advice** that I have always remembered.
3 Suddenly **a gust of wind** almost blew him off his feet.
4 We had **a spell of terribly windy weather** last winter.
5 Would you like **another slice of toast**?
6 He never does **a stroke of work** in the house.
7 Let's go to the park - I need **a breath of fresh air**.
8 I can give you **an important piece/bit of information** about that.
9 We could see **a cloud of smoke** hovering over the city from a long way away.
10 I need to get **some pieces of furniture** for my flat.

86.3



86.4 *Possible sentence clues:*

1 Did you see that ..... of lightning?
2 She sells old ..... of clothing at the market.
3 Have you ever seen him do even a ..... of work?
4 What a loud ..... of thunder. It sounded almost overhead.
5 Let's go and get a ..... of fresh air. It's so stuffy indoors.

Unit 87

87.1

2 shoal
3 gang
4 pack
5 team
6 pair
7 couple

87.2 *Incorrect words:*

2 a book
3 a hospital
4 cats
5 pigs
6 fish

87.3 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 h 7 d 8 e

87.4

2 There **is**/**'s a crowd of people** waiting outside.
3 The **staff are** very well paid.
4 **A flock of sheep** had escaped from a field.
5 She gave me **a set of glasses**.
6 She gave me **a bunch of beautiful roses** / **a beautiful bunch of roses**.

87.5 THE journalists raised **a host of** difficult questions about the actions of the police during the demonstration. There had been **a barrage of** complaints about police violence. The Chief of Police replied that he was not prepared to listen to **a string of** wild accusations without any evidence. In the end, he just gave **a series of** short answers that left everyone dissatisfied.

Unit 88

88.1

2 two **bottles**/**cartons** of milk
3 four **cans** of cola
4 a **tin** of tuna
5 a **packet**/**box** (or **tin**) of chocolate biscuits
6 a **pot** of yoghurt
7 a large **box** of matches
8 a **jar** of honey
9 six **packets** of crisps

88.2

2 barrel, bottle, sack (of coal/potatoes)
3 can, bottle, pack, crate, case (possibly also a barrel)
4 *any of these:* bottle/carton (of milk or juice), jug (of milk), mug (of tea or coffee), packet (of cereal), jar (of jam/marmalade/honey), glass (of milk or juice), bowl (of sugar)

5 bag and, sometimes, a sack - a sack is bigger and is more likely to be used when collecting post from a post office or letter box, while a bag may be used by the postman delivering mail
6 bag and basket

88.3

2 a packet of washing powder
3 a carton of cream
4 a tube of hand cream
5 a tin of sardines
6 a tin of beans
7 a bag of apples
8 a box of tissues
9 a packet of butter
10 a pack of 6 cans of beer
11 a bottle of washing-up liquid
12 a box of matches

88.4 *Possible answers:*

2 chocolate/tool/match box
3 wine/milk/water bottle
4 carrier/shopping/mail bag
5 milk/cream/water jug
6 wine/whisky/liqueur /lɪˈkjʊə/ glass
7 flower/tea/coffee pot

Unit 89

89.1

2 manage to see
3 consists of (**make up** with this meaning is usually used in the passive)
4 tied up in a bundle
5 understand (with this meaning **make out** is usually combined with 'can' or 'could' and 'not' or 'never')
6 making something more numerous or complete
7 claimed/pretended (**make out** implies that what is being claimed may well not be true)
8 renovate

89.2 2 away with 3 up 4 out 5 up

89.3

2 This weekend we are planning to make **for** the seaside.
3 Vast amounts of money do not always make **for** happiness.
4 Your shoelaces are untied. Do them **up** or you'll trip over.
5 They like to make **out** that they are very important people.
6 Thieves robbed the bank and made **off** with £1,000,000.

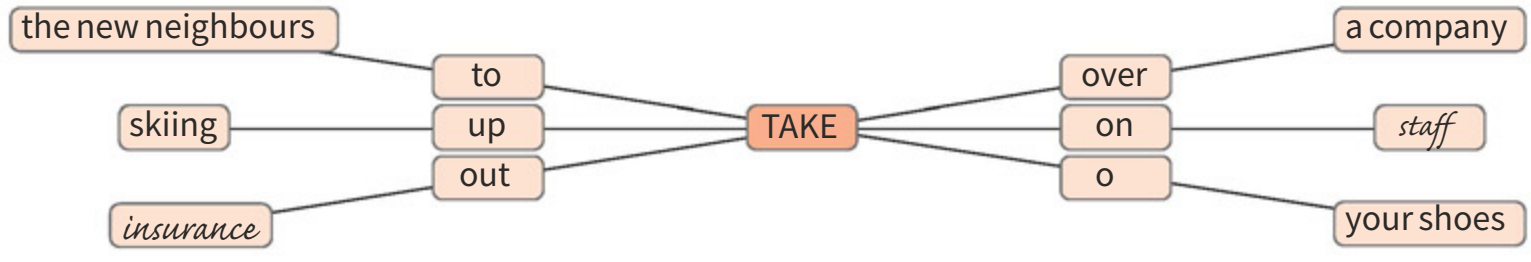
89.4

2 your best
3 profit
4 (the) housework
5 allowances for
6 an impression / a good impression
7 business
8 exercise

Unit 90

90.1 2 on 3 about 4 off 5 round 6 up

90.2 *Possible answers:*

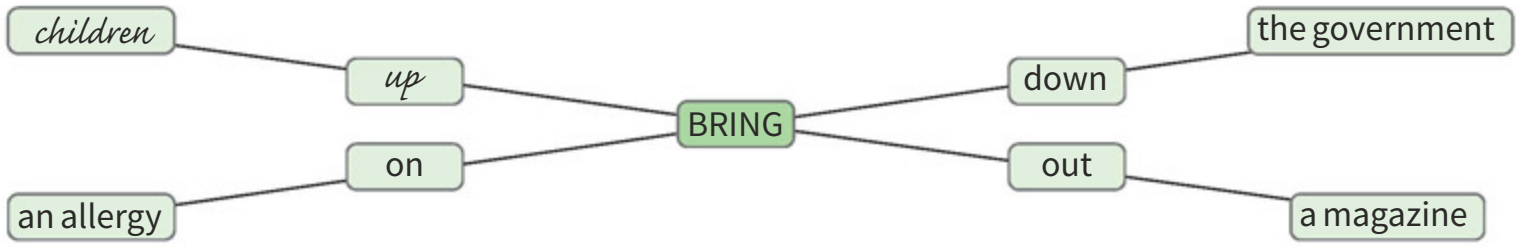


90.3

2 Today's newspaper has **brought to light** some fascinating information about the President.
3 The situation **was brought to a head** when the union called for a strike.
4 You need to **take account of** the historical context of the novel in your essay.
5 The view from the top of the hill **took my breath away**.

6 He **took advantage of** her weakness at the time and she gave it to him.
7 If you're going to succeed in business you must be prepared **to take risks**.
8 You shouldn't **take anyone or anything for granted**.

90.4 *Possible answers:*



90.5
2 to take seriously
3 to take your breath away
4 to bring a law into force
5 to take pride in
6 to take control of

Unit 91

91.1 *Suggested answers:*

I don't often **receive** interesting junk mail. However, an unusual item came this morning. It was headed 'Are things **depressing you**? Do you feel you'll just never **manage to do** / **achieve** all those things you dream of?' And it went on, 'If so, **buy/order** this great new book today: *Manage Your World* by Simon Triksta. It will teach you how to **deal with** / **recover from** those daily upsets, and will ensure that you **achieve** the contentment in your work that you long for and that you fulfil your dreams. Send €25 today to **receive** *Manage Your World* and your key to success within ten days.' Maybe I should **buy** it!

91.2
2 through
3 down to
4 round to
5 up to
6 through
7 across
8 behind, into
9 together
10 on

91.3 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 a

Unit 92

92.1
2 We try to reserve some money for our holiday every week.
3 Ignore all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
4 If we hadn't left home so late, we would have arrived on time.
5 The government's unpopular proposals caused a wave of protests.

92.2
2 put forward an idea / a proposal / a suggestion
3 put off a football match / an appointment / customers
4 put across your feelings / ideas / opinions
5 put up an umbrella / prices / a picture
6 put on a concert / an accent / clothes
7 put away papers / books / files
8 put up with someone's temper / behaviour / bad manners

92.3 *Possible answers:*

2 I haven't had time to **put things away** yet.
3 We'd better **set out**/**off** at 7 am.
4 Yes, of course, I can **put you up**.
5 The cost of it all has **put me off**.
6 He is hoping to **set up** a business of his own.
7 Let's **put up** some posters.
8 I'll help you **put it together**.

92.4 *Possible answers:*

2 He's bound to **put two and two together** if you keep on behaving like that.
3 She has **set her sights on becoming** Prime Minister.
4 She really **puts my back up**.
5 If you **put pressure on her** to change her mind it'll make her even more determined.
6 Please **put your mind to** the problem in hand.
7 She has **set her heart on getting** a seat in Parliament.
8 She threw petrol on the rubbish and **set fire** to it.
9 It's time the teacher **put a stop to** the noise.
10 The man has **set a record for eating the most** burgers in one hour.
11 This is the first time I've ever **set foot in** the southern hemisphere.
12 We spent most of our evenings **setting**/**putting the world to rights** rather than studying.
13 You really should **put your foot down (with him)** or there'll be trouble later.
14 If the teacher doesn't **set a good example**, the children certainly won't behave properly.
15 **He has set himself the target of running** the Athens marathon next year.

Unit 93

93.1

2 check
3 attacked
4 happened / took place
5 found by chance
6 criticising / complaining
7 choose
8 suit / match / look OK with
9 thought of / suggested / found

93.2

2 When his grandmother dies, he'll **come into a fortune** / **a lot of money**.
3 After four years of fighting, the civil war finally **came to an end**.
4 Halfway up the steep hill, the bus **came to a standstill**.
5 They say that long skirts are **coming into fashion** again.
6 The telephone first **came into existence** nearly 150 years ago.
7 I found it very difficult to **come to terms with** my failure.
8 As we drove round the corner the house **came into sight**/**view**.

93.3

2 They **went to great lengths** to avoid meeting each other.
3 I've been **on the go** all day and I'm longing for a shower now and to relax.
4 I do hope he will **make a go of** his new business.
5 **The story goes that** they were together that night.
6 The film is good **as far as it goes** but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

93.4 2 d 3 e 4 g 5 b 6 a 7 f

Unit 94

94.1 2 to 3 promise(s) 4 up 5 down

94.2

2 I **ran into** Julio at the station yesterday.
3 Nadia **broke her promise** to tidy her room.
4 I thought I was **seeing things** when I saw a monkey in the garden.
5 The police **let the boy off** with a warning.
6 Stupidly, I **let it slip** that Sabrina was planning to move abroad.
7 An enormous crowd **turned up** to hear the President speak.
8 My aunt **looks down on** people who don't have a good job.
9 Dan has promised to **turn over a new leaf**.
10 Natalie has always **looked up to** her older cousin.

94.3 *Possible answers:*

2 It can be hard to see through someone's lies if they have a lot of charm.
3 Halfway up the mountain he let go of the rope and fell into a crevasse.
4 It'll be better in the long run if you tell him now exactly how you feel.

5 He felt terribly let down when she refused to help him.
6 She didn't turn up until the party was nearly over.
7 I'm afraid we've run out of sugar.
8 In my last year at school I decided to look into the possibility of spending a year abroad.
9 I agreed to see about booking our holiday flights.
10 It's your turn to load the dishwasher.

Unit 95

95.1 2 wrong 3 house/home 4 Bye-bye 5 children

95.2
2 seeking
3 utilise
4 frequently
5 immediately, attempt
6 fundamental
7 occurs
8 provided the patient with

95.3 2 particular 3 in, of 4 in, to 5 account

95.4 2 to alight 3 a) to regret b) to purchase c) to address d) board 4 persons 5 stairway

95.5
2 a friend
3 a friend
4 study hard (e.g. for an exam)
5 thank you / thanks
6 intelligent
7 unpleasant / disgusting
8 uncertain / doubtful or not good, not honest

Unit 96

96.1
JIM: Annie, can you lend me ten **quid**?
ANNIE: What for?
JIM: I've got to go and see my parents, and my **bike**'s not working, so I'll have to get a **cab**.
ANNIE: Can't you **phone** them and say you can't come?
JIM: Well, I could, but my **mobile**'s not working, and I want to go because they always have lots of **grub/nosh**, and the **fridge** at our flat is empty, as usual.
ANNIE: Can't you go by **tube**? Anyway, you're in luck, I've got some **dosh/readies/bread**, so here you are.

96.2
2 doctor 4 police 6 celebrity / famous person 8 money
3 prison 5 food 7 cup of tea

96.3
2 (exam essay) The Internet and **television** are probably the biggest influences on young people today.
3 (recipe in a cookery book) Next, slice the **potatoes** and place them on top of the meat.
4 (exam essay) **Newspapers** face stiff competition these days from TV and internet news.
5 (formal university publicity) The Faculty offers courses in **veterinary** science. **Laboratory** facilities are available 24 hours a day.

96.4
2 barbecue 4 husband 6 vegetarian
3 biscuit 5 pictures / photographs

Unit 97

97.1 2 rake 3 mouse 4 post 5 bat

97.2 2 falling 3 dog 4 parrot 5 snow 6 sheet

97.3
1 c 2 d 3 e 4 a 5 b
1 as quick as a flash 2 as red as a beetroot 3 as flat as a pancake [very flat]
4 as fresh as a daisy [used about how people feel or look, not about e.g. bread or other foods]
5 as strong as an ox

97.4 **Across:** 1 brass 3 hatter 6 sheet 7 daisy 9 bone 10 mouse

Down: 1 bat 2 feather 3 hard 4 easy 5 cucumber 8 ice

97.5

2 Our plan worked like a dream.
3 He/She eats like a horse and drinks like a fish.
4 He/She has a mind/head like a sieve.
5 He/She has been as busy as a bee all day.

Unit 98

98.1

2 Many hands make light work.
3 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
4 Too many cooks spoil the broth.
5 We'll cross that bridge when we come to it.

98.2

2 *Too many cooks spoil the broth*, which suggests that problems can be caused if a lot of people are involved in a job, whereas *Many hands make light work* suggests that if there are more helpers then the job will be completed more easily.
3 *When the cat's away, the mice will play. Absence makes the heart grow fonder* says that if you cannot be with someone or something you will love them/it more, whereas *When the cat's away, the mice will play* suggests that others may take advantage of someone's absence to behave in a way they would not otherwise do.
4 *We'll cross that bridge when we come to it* and *Don't count your chickens before they hatch*. The first one warns against anticipating future problems (they may never happen) and the second one warns against assuming you will get something good (that may never happen either).
5 *Never look a gift-horse in the mouth*. Both proverbs advise you to take advantage of good fortune when you have it in front of you.

98.3

2 When the cat's away, the mice will play.
3 Where there's smoke, there's fire.
4 Take care of the pennies and the pounds will take care of themselves.

98.4

2 Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.
3 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
4 You can lead a horse to water but you can't make it drink.

Unit 99

99.1 *Possible answers:*

2 at the entrance to private land (e.g. a farm, a forest)
3 in a theatre or hall
4 in a park, on a beach
5 outside or in the window of a café or restaurant
6 outside a nightclub (possibly a gym or swimming pool)
7 at a zoo or park
8 by a dead-end street / cul-de-sac
9 on a door
10 at a supermarket check-out
11 on a packet of cigarettes
12 on a road or motorway
13 at a car park or near parking bays on a street
14 at a dangerous place or a place where pedestrians only are allowed
15 at a river or lake

99.2 2 g 3 h 4 k 5 d 6 i 7 e 8 j 9 b 10 a 11 f

99.3 *Suggested answers:*

2 in a shop or restaurant: the staff can speak English
3 at the customs: for people who do not have goods that require them to pay duty

4 at a shop: the shop is probably closing down and wants to sell all its goods
5 at a sports event or cultural place or event: you must have a ticket to come in
6 at a hotel or guesthouse: the hotel/guesthouse is full, or at a shop, restaurant or factory meaning 'no jobs are available'
7 at a river or lake: you must not fish here
8 at a bicycle shop: you can buy or hire/rent a bicycle here
9 outside a house or at an estate agent's: there is a flat which you can rent
10 for example, at an escalator: if you have a dog with you, you must carry it
11 on a train or bus: if there is an elderly, disabled or pregnant person, please give them this seat

99.4 *Suggested answers:*

2 Spanish spoken here
3 No admission to unaccompanied minors
4 No entry to unauthorised personnel
5 Shoplifters/Thieves will be prosecuted
6 Please refrain from handling food/goods

Unit 100

100.1 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 c

100.2 *Suggested answers:*

2 Steps are being taken with the aim of providing more work for people.
3 Approval has been given to a plan to place restrictions on people's use of water.
4 A woman resigned from her job after undergoing some kind of unpleasant experience there.
5 A public opinion survey has looked into how people spend their money.
6 An attempt has been made to remove the Prime Minister from his/her position.
7 The Princess has promised to give support to her family or to family values, in general.

100.3
2 makes a connection between
3 reduces
4 explodes in
5 promises
6 leads / is a major figure in

100.4
2 A *hammer* is a tool which hits nails into wood. The headline is a play on the businessman's name and the headline use of *hit* to mean *affect*.
3 A *dramatic pause* is a phrase used to refer to a pause in speech made for dramatic effect. Cats have *paws*, a homophone of *pause*.
4 *Hot air* means a lot of talk with little meaning. The prince is talking about climate change, i.e. global *warming*. *Heir* is a homophone of *air* and the prince in the story is presumably the heir to the throne.

Unit 101

101.1
2 British (-re, not -er)
3 American (-z- not -s-)
4 American (-er, not -re)
5 British (-our, not -or)
6 American (not jewellery)

101.2
2 elevator, lift
3 undershirt, vest
4 flashlight, torch
5 diaper, nappy
6 drapes, curtains
7 Scotch tape, Sellotape
8 truck, lorry

101.3
2 Pass me the biscuits.
3 It's in the wardrobe.
4 Open the curtains.
5 We've run out of petrol.
6 Our bags are in the boot.
7 Single or return?
8 Let's take the underground.
9 We've been working in the garden.
10 I hate waiting in queues / a queue.

101.4 2 (a) one (b) two 3 (a) a bank (b) a café 4 (a) under (b) over

101.5
2 eraser / rubber
3 trash / garbage / rubbish
4 elevator / lift
5 crosswalk / zebra crossing
6 hood / bonnet

Phonemic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/i /	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ /	pin dinner
/ /	foot could pull
/ /	casual
/u /	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ /	arrive father colour
/ɜː/	turn bird work
/ /	sort thought walk
/□/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ /	part heart laugh
/e /	name late aim
/a /	my idea time
/ /	boy noise
/e /	pair where bear
/ /	hear cheers
/ /	go home show
/a /	out cow
/ /	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/ /	go guarantee
/t /	catch church
/d /	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/ /	thick path
/ /	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo surprise
/ /	shop sugar machine
/ /	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

Index

The numbers in the Index are **unit** numbers, not page numbers.
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

3D /ˌθriːˈdiː/ 33
60s music /ˈsɪkstɪz ˈmjuːzɪk/ 21
a) ... b) /eɪ … biː 67
abduct /əbˈdʌkt/ 39
able /ˈeɪbəl/ 8
abode /əˈbəʊd/ 95
above /əˈbʌv/ 68
abrupt əˈbrʌpt 8
absent-minded /ˌæbsəntˈmaɪndɪd/ 74
absolute /ˈæbsəluːt/ 55
absolutely /ˌæbsəˈluːtli/ 43
absorbing /əbˈzɔːbɪŋ/ 3
abstract /ˈæbstrækt/ 19
absurd /əbˈsɜːd/ 48
academic /ˌækəˈdemɪk/ 15
accept /əkˈsept/ 10, 64
access /ˈækses/ 17, 35
accident /ˈæksɪdənt/ 13
acclaim /əˈkleɪm/ 48
acclaimed /əˈkleɪmd/ 48
accommodation /əˌkɒməˈdeɪʃən/ 83
accomplice /əˈkʌmplɪs/ 39
accomplish /əˈkʌmplɪʃ/ 60
accomplished əˈkʌmplɪʃt 60
accomplishment /əˈkʌmplɪʃmənt/ 60
account /əˈkaʊnt/ 36
accuse /əˈkjuːz/ 39
ache /eɪk/ 28
achievable /əˈtʃiːvəbəl/ 60
achieve /əˈtʃiːv/ 60
achievement /əˈtʃiːvmənt/ 60, 73
acid rain /ˈæsɪd ˈreɪn/ 24
acknowledge /əkˈnɒlɪdʒ/ 64
acoustics /əˈkuːstɪks/ 84
acquaintance /əˈkweɪntənts/ 10
acquit /əˈkwɪt/ 39
action /ˈækʃən/ 70
active /ˈæktɪv/ 23
activity /ækˈtɪvəti/ 73
ad /æd/ 96
addition /əˈdɪʃən/ 52
additionally /əˈdɪʃənəli/ 65
address /əˈdres/ 95
addressee /ˌædresˈiː/ 70
adjustment /əˈdʒʌstmənt/ 73
administrator /ədˈmɪnɪstreɪtə/ 16
admire /ədˈmaɪə/ 10
admission /ədˈmɪʃən/ 14, 15, 70, 99
admit /ədˈmɪt/ 64
admittedly /ədˈmɪtɪdli/ 64
adore /əˈdɔː/ 10
adult education centre /ˈædʌlt ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃən ˈsentə/ 25
adulthood /ˈædʌlthʊd/ 73
advance /ədˈvɑːnts/ 29
adventure holiday /ədˈventʃə ˈhɒlədeɪ/ 32
adventurous /ədˈventʃərəs/ 25, 32
advert /ˈædvɜːt/ 96
advertise /ˈædvətaɪz/ 72
advertisement /ədˈvɜːtɪsmənt/ 72
advertiser /ˈædvətaɪzə/ 72
advice /ədˈvaɪs/ 73, 83
affect /əˈfekt/ 66
affection /əˈfekʃən/ 73
affectionate /əˈfekʃənət/ 44
African /ˈæfrɪkən/ 5
African-Caribbean /ˈæfrɪkən ˌkærɪˈbiːən/ 5
after all /ˈɑːftərɔːl/ 64
afters /ˈɑːftəz/ 22
against /əˈgenst/ 42
age /eɪdʒ/ 53
ageing /ˈeɪdʒɪŋ/ 30
aggressive /əˈgresɪv/ 8
agitation /ˌædʒɪˈteɪʃən/ 86
agreement /əˈgriːmənt/ 60, 89, 93
aid /eɪd/ 100
AIDS /eɪdz/ 13
aim /eɪm/ 60
air /eə/ 82
air con /ˈeə kɒn/ 78
air pollution /eə pəˈluːʃən/ 24
air traffic control /eə ˈtræfɪk kənˈtrəʊl/ 75
air-conditioned /ˈeəkənˌdɪʃənd/ 74
airport /ˈeəpɔːt/ 31
airsick /ˈeəsɪk/ 31
airsickness /ˈeəsɪknəs/ 31
AKA /ˌeɪkeɪˈeɪ/ 78
à-la-carte /ˌæləˈkɑːt/ 22
alarm clock /əˈlɑːm klɒk/ 75
album /ˈælbəm/ 21
alight adj, v /əˈlaɪt/ 95, 99
alive /əˈlaɪv/ 80
all or nothing /ˌɔːlɔːˈnʌθɪŋ/ 77
allocate /ˈæləkeɪt/ 57
all-out /ˌɔːlˈaʊt/ 74
allowance /əˈlaʊənts/ 89
along with /əˈlɒŋ wɪð/ 65
alongside /əˌlɒŋˈsaɪd/ 65
aloud /əˈlaʊd/ 82
alter /ˈɔːltə/ 33
alteration /ˌɔːltərˈeɪʃən/ 70
alternative /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/ 55
although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ 64
amazement /əˈmeɪzmənt/ 73
ambassador /æmˈbæsədə/ 16
ambition /æmˈbɪʃən/ 60
ambitious /æmˈbɪʃəs/ 8
among (the best etc.) /əˈmʌŋ/ 48
amount /əˈmaʊnt/ 51
analyse /ˈænəlaɪz/ 33
anger /ˈæŋgə/ 73
angrily /ˈæŋgrɪli/ 45
ankle /ˈæŋkl/ 28
annoyance /əˈnɔɪənts/ 50
anorak /ˈænəræk/ 96
anorexic /ˌænərˈeksɪk/ 7
answer /ˈɑːnsə/ 66
Antarctica /ænˈtɑːktɪkə/ 5
antibiotic /ˌæntibaɪˈɒtɪk/ 71
antiseptic /ˌæntiˈseptɪk/ 71
antisocial /ˌæntiˈsəʊʃəl/ 71
anti-war /ˌæntiˈwɔː/ 71
anxious /ˈæŋkʃəs/ 43
anxiously /ˈæŋkʃəsli/ 45
anyway /ˈeniweɪ/ 67
apart from /əˈpɑːt frəm/ 65
apartment /əˈpɑːtmənt/ 32, 101
apostrophe /əˈpɒstrəfi/ 80
app /æp/ 34
appal /əˈpɔːl/ 44
appeal to /əˈpiːl tuː/ 44
appear in /əˈpɪərɪn/ 20
application /ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃən/ 15, 34
apply for /əˈplaɪ fɔː/ 16
appoint /əˈpɔɪnt/ 38
apprenticeship /əˈprentɪʃɪp/ 73
approach /əˈprəʊtʃ/ 66
Arab /ˈærəb/ 5
Arabic /ˈærəbɪk/ 5
archer /ˈɑːtʃə/ 18

archery /'ɑːtʃəri/ 18
architect /'ɑːkɪtekt/ 19
architecture /'ɑːkɪtektʃə/ 19
area /'eəriə/ 23
argue /'ɑːgjuː/ 45
argument /'ɑːgjəmənt/ 66
argumentative /ˌɑːgjə'mentətɪv/ 8
arise from /ə'raɪz frɒm/ 63
arithmetic /ˌə'rɪθmətɪk/ 80
arithmetical /ˌærɪθ'metɪkəl/ 80
arms race /'ɑːmz ˌreɪs/ 75
aromatic /ˌærə'mætɪk/ 46
arrangement /ə'reɪndʒmənt/ 89
arrest /ə'rest/ 39
arrival /ə'raɪvəl/ 70
arrogant /'ærəgənt/ 8
art /ɑːt/ 19, 85
art gallery /ɑːt 'gæləri/ 25
art lover /ɑːt 'lʌvə/ 19
article /'ɑːtɪkəl/ 86
artificial /ˌɑːtɪ'fɪʃəl/ 41
artificial hip /ˌɑːtɪ'fɪʃəl 'hɪp/ 29
artistic /ɑː'tɪstɪk/ 19
arts /ɑːts/ 85
arts (the) /ðiː ɑːts/ 19
arts and crafts /ɑːts ənd krɑːfts/ 19
arts page /ɑːts peɪdʒ/ 19
as … as … /əz … əz/ 97
ASAP /ˌeɪ es eɪ 'piː/ 78
Asia /'eɪʒə/ 5
Asian /'eɪʒən/ 5
aspect /'æspekt/ 66
assertive /ə'sɜːtɪv/ 8
assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 66
associated /ə'səʊʃieɪtɪd/ 33
at fault /ət 'fɔːlt/ 48
at last /ət 'lɑːst/ 68
at once /ət 'wʌnts/ 95
at times /ət 'taɪmz/ 53
athletics /æθ'letɪks/ 84
ATM /ˌeɪtiː'em/ 78
atmosphere /'ætməsfɪə/ 24
attach /ə'tætʃ/ 35
attachment /ə'tætʃmənt/ 35
attain /ə'teɪn/ 60
attainable /ə'teɪnəbəl/ 60
attainment /ə'teɪnmənt/ 60
attempt n, v /ə'tempt/ 89, 95
attic /'ætɪk/ 11
attitude /'ætɪtʃuːd/ 66
attract /ə'trækt/ 10, 44
auburn /'ɔːbən/ 7
audience /'ɔːdiənts/ 20
auditorium /ˌɔːdɪ'tɔːriəm/ 99
Australia /ɒs'treɪliə/ 5
authorities /ɔː'θɒrətɪzz/ 84
authority /ɔː'θɒrəti/ 73
autobiography /ˌɔːtəbaɪ'ɒgrəfɪ/ 71
autograph /'ɔːtəgrɑːf/ 71
automatically /ˌɔːtə'mætɪkli/ 29
auto-pilot /'ɔːtəʊˌpaɪlət/ 71
average /'ævrɪdʒ/ 51
awkward /'ɔːkwəd/ 9
AWOL /'eɪwɒl/ 78
axe /æks/ 100
B&B /ˌbiː ən 'biː/ 25
babysitter /'beɪbiˌsɪtə/ 75
bachelor's degree 15
back v /bæk/ 100
back and forth /bæk ən fɔːθ/ 77
back to front /bæk tə frʌnt/ 77
back up /bæk 'ʌp/ 34
backache /'bækeɪk/ 28
backfire /ˌbæk'faɪə/ 60
badge /bædʒ/ 27
badly (affected) /'bædlɪ/ 50
baggage /'bægɪdʒ/ 83, 101
baggy /'bægɪ/ 27
bags of /'bægz əv/ 51
bailout /'beɪlaʊt/ 76
balanced diet /'bælənst daɪət/ 22
bald /bɔːld/ 7
ballet /'bæleɪ/ 20
ballot paper /'bælət 'peɪpə/ 38
ban /bæn/ 51
bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ 28
bang /bæŋ/ 12, 56
bank account /bæŋk ə'kaʊnt/ 75
banker /'bæŋkə/ 16
banking /'bæŋkɪŋ/ 16
bar n /bɑː/ 86
bar v /bɑː/ 100
bark /bɑːk/ 26
bark up the wrong tree 79
barrel /'bærəl/ 88
barren /'bærən/ 23
basement /'beɪsmənt/ 11
bash /bæʃ/ 81
basic /'beɪsɪk/ 95
basket /'bɑːskɪt/ 88
bass /beɪs/ 21
bass guitarist /'beɪs gɪ'tɑːrɪst/ 21
bat /bæt/ 18, 26
bathing (baby) /bɑːθɪŋ/ 82
bathroom /'bɑːθrʊm/ 101
bay /beɪ/ 23
be attracted to 10
be into /bɪ 'ɪntuː/ 21
be laid off /bɪ leɪd ɒf/ 16
be made redundant /bɪ meɪd rɪ'dʌndənt/ 16
be offered a job /bɪ 'ɒfəd ə dʒɒb/ 16
be offered work /bɪ 'ɒfəd wɜːk/ 16
be promoted /bɪ prə'məʊtɪd/ 16
be set /bɪ set/ 37
beach /biːtʃ/ 23
beak 26
beam /biːm/ 56
beard /bɪəd/ 7
beautiful /'bjuːtɪfəl/ 7
beautify /'bjuːtɪfaɪ/ 70
because /bɪ'kɒz/ 63
bee's knees (the) /biːz niːz ðə/ 48
beg /beg/ 45
Belgian /'beldʒən/ 5
belief /bɪ'liːf/ 42, 73
believe /bɪ'liːv/ 42
belongings /bɪ'lɒŋɪŋz/ 57
below /bɪ'ləʊ/ 68
belt /belt/ 27
besides /bɪ'saɪdz/ 65
best friend /best frend/ 10
bestseller /ˌbest'selə/ 19
bewitching /bɪ'wɪtʃɪŋ/ 3
biannual /baɪ'ænjuəl/ 71
bicycle /'baɪsɪkəl/ 71
bid /bɪd/ 100
big-head /ˌbɪg'hed/ 9
big-headed /ˌbɪg'hedɪd/ 74
bike /baɪk/ 96
bikini /bɪ'kiːni/ 27
bilateral /baɪ'lætərəl/ 71
bilingual /baɪ'lɪŋgwəl/ 5, 71
bill /bɪl/ 101
billiards /'bɪljədz/ 18, 84
binoculars /bɪ'nɒkjələz/ 84
birth control /bɜːθ kən'trəʊl/ 75
biscuit /'bɪskɪt/ 101
bit /bɪt/ 86
bite /baɪt/ 47
bitter /'bɪtə/ 22, 46
bitterly /'bɪtəlɪ/ 45
bizarre /bɪ'zɑː/ 41
black /blæk/ 7
black and white /ˌblæk ən 'waɪt/ 77
black eye /blæk 'aɪ/ 28
blade /bleɪd/ 86
blame /bleɪm/ 48
bland /blænd/ 22
blast /blɑːst/ 100
blaze /bleɪz/ 100
blended learning /blendɪd lɜːnɪŋ/ 14
blink /blɪŋk/ 47
block /blɒk/ 12
blog /blɒg/ 35

blonde /blɒnd/ 7
blood donor /ˈblʌd ˌdəʊnə/ 75
blood pressure /ˈblʌd ˌpreʃə/ 28, 29, 75
blossom /ˈblɒsəm/ 26
blue-eyed /ˌbluːˈaɪd/ 74
blunt /blʌnt/ 8
blush /blʌʃ/ 47
board /bɔːd/ 95
boast /bəʊst/ 45
boiling /ˈbɔɪlɪŋ/ 6
bonnet /ˈbɒnɪt/ 101
book (a table) v /ˈbʊk/ 22
booking /ˈbʊkɪŋ/ 22
bookmark /ˈbʊkmɑːk/ 35
boost /buːst/ 30, 100
boot /buːt/ 101
boredom /ˈbɔːdəm/ 73
boss /bɒs/ 100
bossy /ˈbɒsi/ 8
bother /ˈbɒðə/ 60
bottle /ˈbɒtəl/ 88
bough /baʊ/ 26
bow /bəʊ/ 18
bowl /bəʊl/ 88
bowls /bəʊlz/ 84
box /bɒks/ 88
bra /brɑː/ 27
braces /ˈbreɪsɪz/ 84
brainless /ˈbreɪnləs/ 8
brainy /ˈbreɪni/ 8
brake /breɪk/ 82
branch /brɑːntʃ/ 26, 33, 38
brand-new /brænd njuː/ 74
breadth /bretθ/ 54, 73
break /breɪk/ 28, 50, 82
break (the news) /breɪk/ 94
break down /ˌbreɪkˈdaʊn/ 12
break off /ˌbreɪkˈɒf/ 94
break out /ˌbreɪkˈaʊt/ 13
breakdown /ˈbreɪkdaʊn/ 76
breakout /ˈbreɪkaʊt/ 76
breakthrough /ˈbreɪkθruː/ 76
break-up /ˈbreɪkʌp/ 76
breath /breθ/ 47, 86
breathe /briːð/ 47
breathless /ˈbreθləs/ 28
breathtaking /ˈbreθˌteɪkɪŋ/ 32
breed /briːd/ 26
breeze /briːz/ 6
brick /brɪk/ 83
briefly /briːflɪ/ 68
bright /braɪt/ 8, 59
brightness /braɪtnɪs/ 59
brilliantly /ˈbrɪliəntli/ 48
bring about /brɪŋ əˈbaʊt/ 63, 90
bring back /ˌbrɪŋ ˈbæk/ 90
bring down /ˌbrɪŋ ˈdaʊn/ 90
bring into force /brɪŋ ˈɪntə fɔːs/ 90
bring into the open /brɪŋ ˈɪntə ðə ˈəʊpən/ 90
bring off /ˌbrɪŋ ˈɒf/ 90
bring on /ˌbrɪŋ ˈɒn/ 90
bring out /ˌbrɪŋ ˈaʊt/ 90
bring out the best /brɪŋ aʊt ðə best/ 90
bring round /ˌbrɪŋ ˈraʊnd/ 90
bring to a head /brɪŋ tuː ə hed/ 90
bring to light /brɪŋ tə laɪt/ 90
bring up /ˌbrɪŋ ˈʌp/ 90
Briton /ˈbrɪtən/ 5
broad /brɔːd/ 54
broadband /ˈbrɔːdbænd/ 35
broadcast /ˈbrɔːdkɑːst/ 37
broaden /ˈbrɔːdən/ 54
broadminded /ˌbrɔːdˈmaɪndɪd/ 8, 54
broad-shouldered /brɔːd ˈʃəʊldəd/ 74
brotherhood /ˈbrʌðəhʊd/ 70, 73
brownish /ˈbraʊnɪʃ/ 7
browse /braʊz/ 35
browser /ˈbraʊzə/ 35
bruise /bruːz/ 12, 28
brusque /bruːsk/ 8
brutal /ˈbruːtəl/ 70
bucket /ˈbʌkɪt/ 88
buckle /ˈbʌkəl/ 27
bud /bʌd/ 26
Buddhism /ˈbʊdɪzəm/ 70
bug /bʌg/ 28
build /bɪld/ 17
building 19
built-up /ˌbɪltˈʌp/ 74
bulky /ˈbʌlki/ 59
bullet-proof /ˈbʊlɪtpruːf/ 74
bump /bʌmp/ 12
bumpy /ˈbʌmpi/ 31
bunch /bʌntʃ/ 87
bungalow /ˈbʌŋgələʊ/ 11
bunk bed /ˈbʌŋk ˈbed/ 32
burglar alarm /ˈbɜːglər əˈlɑːm/ 75
burglary /ˈbɜːgləri/ 39
burn /bɜːn/ 12, 80
bury the hatchet /ˈberi ðə ˈhætʃɪt/ 50
bury your head in the sand 9
bus service 25
bus stop /bʌs stɒp/ 75
business /ˈbɪznɪs/ 17, 31
business plan /ˈbɪznɪs plæn/ 17
business-class /ˈbɪznɪs klɑːs/ 74
bustling /ˈbʌslɪŋ/ 25
button /ˈbʌtən/ 27, 33
buzz /bʌz/ 81
bypass /ˈbaɪpɑːs/ 76
cab /kæb/ 96
cabinet /ˈkæbɪnət/ 38
Cabinet of Ministers 38
cable /ˈkeɪbəl/ 35
calm /kɑːm/ 31, 73, 80
camcorder /ˈkæmˌkɔːdə/ 33
campsite /ˈkæmpsaɪt/ 32
campus /ˈkæmpəs/ 15
can /kæn/ 88
cancel (a reservation) /ˈkæntsəl/ 22
candidate /ˈkændɪdət/ 38
candy /ˈkændi/ 101
canned music /kænd ˈmjuːzɪk/ 21
canoeist /kəˈnuːɪst/ 18
can't bear /kɑːnt beə/ 44
can't face the thought of /kɑːnt feɪs ðə θɔːt ɒv/ 50
can't stand /kɑːnt stænd/ 10, 44
capacity /kəˈpæsəti/ 95
cape /keɪp/ 23
capital /ˈkæpɪtəl/ 23
captivate /ˈkæptɪveɪt/ 44
captivating /ˈkæptɪveɪtɪŋ/ 3
capture /ˈkæptʃə/ 20
car hire /ˈkɑː ˌhaɪə/ 25
car park /kɑː pɑːk/ 25, 75, 101
caravan /ˈkærəvæn/ 32
carbon footprint /ˈkɑːbən ˈfʊtprɪnt/ 24
carbs /kɑːbz/ 78
card /kɑːd/ 80
cards /kɑːdz/ 84
cards on the table 50
care for /ˈkeə ˌfɔː/ 44
carelessness /ˈkeələsnɪs/ 73
caring /ˈkeərɪŋ/ 44
carpenter /ˈkɑːpəntə/ 16
carton /ˈkɑːtən/ 86, 88
cartoon /kɑːˈtuːn/ 37
case /keɪs/ 39, 88
cash machine /ˈkæʃ məˈʃiːn/ 40
cast /kɑːst/ 20, 87
cast (a vote) /kɑːst/ 38
castle /ˈkɑːsəl/ 80
casual /ˈkæʒjuəl/ 10
casually /ˈkæʒjuəli/ 27
casualty /ˈkæʒjuəlti/ 13
Catalan /ˌkætəˈlæn/ 5
catastrophe /kəˈtæstrəfi/ 80

catch /kætʃ/ 3
catch-up TV 37
cater /'keɪtə/ 57
cat's whiskers /'kæts hwɪskərz/ 48
cause /kɔːz/ 63
cease /siːs/ 2
celeb /sə'leb/ 96
cell /sel/ 33
cell(phone) /sel(fəʊn)/ 78
cellar /'selə/ 11
cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 70
cello /'tʃeləʊ/ 2
center /'sentər/ 101
Central America /'sentrəl ə'merɪkə/ 5
centre /'sentə/ 101
CEO /ˌsiː iː 'əʊ/ 17
certainty /'sɜːtənti/ 55
chalk n /tʃɔːk/ 80
challenge /'tʃælɪndʒ/ 50
chamber /'tʃeɪmbə/ 38
chance /tʃɑːnts/ 55, 73
change into /tʃeɪndʒ 'ɪntə/ 27
cange out of /tʃeɪndʒ aʊt ɒv/ 27
chaos /'keɪɒs/ 50, 86
character /'kærəktə/ 19
characterise /'kærəktəraɪz/ 41
characteristic /ˌkærəktə'rɪstɪk/ 41
charge /tʃɑːdʒ/ 39
charge (interest) /tʃɑːdʒ/ 40
check n /tʃek/ 101
checked /tʃekt/ 27
check-out /'tʃekaʊt/ 76
cheerfully /'tʃɪəfəli/ 45
cheerio /ˌtʃɪəri'əʊ/ 95
chemical /'kemɪkəl/ 33
chemist's /'kemɪsts/ 25
chest pains /tʃest peɪnz/ 28
chew /tʃuː/ 47
childhood /'tʃaɪldhʊd/ 70, 73
childminder /'tʃaɪldˌmaɪndə/ 16
chime /tʃaɪm/ 56
chip /tʃɪp/ 12, 34
chips /tʃɪps/ 101
chocolate 85
choice /tʃɔɪs/ 55
cholera /'kɒlərə/ 13
cholesterol /kə'lestərɒl/ 30
chopping board /'tʃɒpɪŋ 'bɔːd/ 11
Christmas /'krɪsməs/ 80
chubby /'tʃʌbi/ 7
cinema /'sɪnəmə/ 20
circle /'sɜːkəl/ 52
circular /'sɜːkjələ/ 52
circumference /sə'kʌmfrənts/ 52
citizens' advice bureau /'sɪtɪzənz əd'vaɪs 'bjʊərəʊ/ 25
city /'sɪti/ 25
City Hall /'sɪti hɔːl/ 25
civil servant /'sɪvəl 'sɜːvənt/ 16
civil war /'sɪvəl wɔː/ 13
claim /kleɪm/ 66
clang /klæŋ/ 56, 81
clap (of thunder) /klæp/ 86
clash /klæʃ/ 100
classical /'klæsɪkəl/ 2, 21
classics /'klæsɪks/ 84
clatter /'klætə/ 56
claw /klɔː/ 26
clever /'klevə/ 8
click /klɪk/ 34, 81
cliff /klɪf/ 23
climate change /'klaɪmət ˌtʃeɪndʒ/ 24, 75
climb /klaɪm/ 80
clip-clop /'klɪpklɒp/ 81
clone /kləʊn/ 33
close-fitting /kləʊs fɪtɪŋ/ 27
closet /'klɒzɪt/ 101
cloth /klɒθ/ 83, 85
clothes /kləʊðz/ 84
cloud /klaʊd/ 35, 86
club /klʌb/ 18, 25
clump /klʌmp/ 87
coal /kəʊl/ 83
coalition /kəʊə'lɪʃən/ 38
coarse /kɔːs/ 59
coast /kəʊst/ 23
coat hanger /'kəʊt ˌhæŋə/ 11, 70
coffee /'kɒfi/ 85
collapse /kə'læps/ 50
collar /'kɒlə/ 27
colleague /'kɒliːg/ 10
collection /kə'lekʃən/ 73
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 14, 25
collocation /ˌkɒləʊ'keɪʃən/ 1
color /'kʌlər/ 101
colour /'kʌlə/ 101
comb /kəʊm/ 80
combination /ˌkɒmbɪ'neɪʃən/ 73
combine /kəm'baɪn/ 33
come across /kʌm ə'krɒs/ 93
come between /kʌm bɪ'twiːn/ 93
come by /kʌm baɪ/ 93
come down /ˌkʌm 'daʊn/ 93
come into /ˌkʌm 'ɪntə/ 93
come off /ˌkʌm 'ɒf/ 12, 60, 93
come out /ˌkʌm 'aʊt/ 93
come round /ˌkʌm 'raʊnd/ 93
come to /ˌkʌm 'tuː/ 93
come up /ˌkʌm 'ʌp/ 93
comedian /kə'miːdiən/ 20
comment /'kɒment/ 10, 36
commercial /kə'mɜːʃəl/ 37
commercialise /kə'mɜːʃəlaɪz/ 70
commit /kə'mɪt/ 39
committed /kə'mɪtɪd/ 42
companionship /kəm'pænjənʃɪp/ 73
company /'kʌmpəni/ 87
competition /ˌkɒmpə'tɪʃən/ 17
competitive /kəm'petɪtɪv/ 18, 40
complain /kəm'pleɪn/ 45
complexion /kəm'plekʃən/ 7
complication /ˌkɒmplɪ'keɪʃən/ 70
compose /kəm'pəʊz/ 72
composer /kəm'pəʊzə/ 72
composition /ˌkɒmpə'zɪʃən/ 72
comprehensive school /ˌkɒmprɪ'hentsɪv skuːl/ 14
compromise /'kɒmprəmaɪz/ 60
compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/ 14, 55
computer technology /kəm'pjuːtə tek'nɒlədʒi/ 75
computerise /kəm'pjuːtəraɪz/ 70
concede /kən'siːd/ 64
concert hall /'kɒnsɜːt hɔːl/ 25
conclude /kən'kluːd/ 33, 68
conclusion /kən'kluːʒən/ 93
condition /kən'dɪʃən/ 48, 62
conduct n /'kɒndʌkt/ 80
conduct v /kən'dʌkt/ 72, 80
confess /kən'fes/ 45
confident /'kɒnfɪdənt/ 8
conflict n /'kɒnflɪkt/ 80
conflict v /kən'flɪkt/ 80
confused /kən'fjuːzd/ 43, 51
confusion /kən'fjuːʒən/ 86
Congress /'kɒŋgres/ 38
consciousness /'kɒntʃəsnɪs/ 73
consequence /'kɒntsɪkwənts/ 63
consequently /'kɒntsɪkwəntli/ 63
conservation /ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃən/ 24
conservative /kən'sɜːvətɪv/ 42
consider /kən'sɪdə/ 30
considerable /kən'sɪdərəbəl/ 51
consolidate /kən'sɒlɪdeɪt/ 40
constituency /kən'stɪtʃuəntsi/ 38
consume /kən'sjuːm/ 30
contact /'kɒntækt/ 10, 17, 35
contact lens /'kɒntækt ˌlenz/ 29, 75
contemporary /kən'tempərəri/ 25
content n /'kɒntent/ 30
content adj /kən'tent/ 43
contented /kən'tentɪd/ 43
contents /'kɒntents/ 84

contest n /'kɒntest/ 80
contest v /kən'test/ 80
contract v /kən'trækt/ 28, 52
contribute /kən'trɪbjuːt/ 57
conventional /kən'venʃənəl/ 41
conversion /kən'vɜːʃən/ 11
convert v /kən'vɜːt/ 72
convict v /kən'vɪkt/ 39
conviction /kən'vɪkʃən/ 42
convince /kən'vɪnts/ 42
cookie /'kʊki/ 101
cool /kuːl/ 80
co-opt /kəʊ'ɒpt/ 80
cop /kɒp/ 96
cope /kəʊp/ 60
copy /'kɒpi/ 19
corkscrew /'kɔːkskruː/ 11
corporation /ˌkɔːpər'eɪʃən/ 17
corporation tax /ˌkɔːpər'eɪʃən tæks/ 40
costume /'kɒstjuːm/ 20
cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ 11
cotton wool /'kɒtən 'wʊl/ 75
cough /kɒf/ 47
could /kʊd/ 80
couple /'kʌpəl/ 87
court /kɔːt/ 39
crab /kræb/ 26
crack /kræk/ 12
crackdown /'krækdaʊn/ 76
crafty /'krɑːfti/ 8
crash /kræʃ/ 12, 34, 81
crate /kreɪt/ 88
crawl /krɔːl/ 58
create an account 36
creation /kri'eɪʃən/ 33
creativity /ˌkriːeɪ'tɪvəti/ 73
crèche /kreʃ/ 14
credit /kredɪt/ 15
credit card /'kredɪt 'kɑːd/ 75
credit limit /'kredɪt 'lɪmɪt/ 40
credit rating 40
creep along /ˌkriːp ə'lɒŋ/ 58
crew /kruː/ 31, 87
crew-cut /'kruːkʌt/ 7
crime /kraɪm/ 39
crisis /'kraɪsɪs/ 66
critic /'krɪtɪk/ 19
critical /'krɪtɪkəl/ 48
critically /'krɪtɪkli/ 48
criticise /'krɪtɪsaɪz/ 48
crop n /krɒp/ 23
crowd /kraʊd/ 87
cruel /'kruːəl/ 8
cruise /kruːz/ 32
crush /krʌʃ/ 12
crutches /krʌtʃɪz/ 29
cube /kjuːb/ 52
cubic /'kjuːbɪk/ 52
cue /kjuː/ 18
cuff /kʌf/ 27
cumbersome /'kʌmbəsəm/ 59
cunning /'kʌnɪŋ/ 8
cupboard /'kʌbəd/ 80
cupid /'kjuːpɪd/ 80
cuppa /'kʌpə/ 96
curb /kɜːb/ 101
curiosity /ˌkjʊəri'ɒsəti/ 73
curly /'kɜːli/ 7
curly-haired /'kɜːli 'heəd/ 74
currency /'kʌrəntsi/ 83
current account /'kʌrənt ə'kaʊnt/ 40
current affairs /'kʌrənt ə'feəz/ 37
cursor /'kɜːsə/ 34
curt /kɜːt/ 8
curtains /'kɜːtənz/ 101
custom-built /'kʌstəm ˌbɪlt/ 17
customer /'kʌstəmə/ 9
customer care /'kʌstəmə 'keə/ 17
customs /'kʌstəmz/ 40
cut /kʌt/ 80, 100
cutback /'kʌtbæk/ 76
cut-price /ˌkʌt'praɪs/ 74
Cypriot /'sɪpriət/ 5
daft /dɑːft/ 8
daft as a brush 79
damage n, v /'dæmɪdʒ/ 13
damp /dæmp/ 6
dance /dɑːnts/ 20
Dane /deɪn/ 5
dark /dɑːk/ 7, 56
darkness /'dɑːknɪs/ 56
dart /dɑːt/ 18
darts /dɑːts/ 84
Darwinist /'dɑːwɪnɪst/ 42
dash /dæʃ/ 81
data processing /'deɪtə 'prəʊsesɪŋ/ 75
database /'deɪtəbeɪs/ 29, 34
dawdle /'dɔːdəl/ 58
daytime /'deɪtaɪm/ 6
dazzling /'dæzlɪŋ/ 59
dead /ded/ 12, 13
dead end 50
deafening /'defnɪŋ/ 46
death penalty /'deθ 'penəlti/ 75
death's door 49
debt /det/ 40, 80
debtor /'detə/ 80
decade /'dekeɪd/ 29
decent /'diːsənt/ 41
decision /dɪ'sɪʒən/ 89, 93
declare /dɪ'kleə/ 99
decorative /'dekərətɪv/ 39
decrease n /'diːkriːs/ 80
decrease v /dɪ'kriːs/ 80
dedicated /'dedɪkeɪtɪd/ 42
deep /diːp/ 54
deepen /'diːpən/ 54
deer /dɪə/ 26
default /dɪ'fɒlt/ 36
defend /dɪ'fend/ 39
defriend /ˌdiː'frend/ 10
degree /dɪ'griː/ 14
déjà vu /ˌdeʒɑː'vuː/ 46
delay /dɪ'leɪ/ 31
delete /dɪ'liːt/ 34
deliberations /dɪˌlɪbə'reɪʃənz/ 39
delicate /'delɪkət/ 41
delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ 70
delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ 43
delightful /dɪ'laɪtfəl/ 32
delta /'deltə/ 23
democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/ 38
denim /'denɪm/ 27
dense /dens/ 59
density /'densɪti/ 59
dent /dent/ 12
deny /dɪ'naɪ/ 3
department store /dɪ'pɑːtmənt ˌstɔː/ 25
dependent /dɪ'pendənt/ 51
deport /diː'pɔːt/ 72
deportation /ˌdiːpɔː'teɪʃən/ 72
deportee /ˌdiːpɔː'tiː/ 72
depose /dɪ'pəʊz/ 72
deposit /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ 40, 72
depress /dɪ'pres/ 72
depressed 28, 43
depression /dɪ'preʃən/ 30
deprivation /ˌdeprɪ'veɪʃən/ 50
deprive s.o. of sth /dɪ'praɪv sʌmjwʌn ɒv sʌmθɪŋ/ 50
depth /depθ/ 54, 73
desert n /'dezɜːt/ 80
desert v /dɪ'zɜːt/ 80
deserted /dɪ'zɜːtɪd/ 25
design /dɪ'zaɪn/ 19
designer /dɪ'zaɪnə/ 16, 27
desire n, v /dɪ'zaɪə/ 44
desktop computer /'desktɒp kəm'pjuːtə/ 34
desperately /'despərətli/ 45
despise /dɪ'spaɪz/ 10, 44
destruction /dɪ'strʌkʃən/ 24
detached /dɪ'tætʃt/ 11

detective /dɪ'tektɪv/ 37
determined /dɪ'tɜːmɪnd/ 8
detest /dɪ'test/ 44
development /dɪ'veləpmənt/ 29
device /dɪ'vaɪs/ 29, 34
devoted /dɪ'vəʊtɪd/ 44
diagnose /ˌdaɪəg'nəʊz/ 29
dialect /'daɪəlekt/ 5
dialogue /'daɪəlɒg/ 20
diameter /daɪ'æmɪtə/ 52
diaper /'daɪpə/ 101
diarrhoea /ˌdaɪə'rɪə/ 28
dictatorship /dɪk'teɪtəʃɪp/ 38
die /daɪ/ 28
different 51
difficult /'dɪfɪkəlt/ 60
difficulty /'dɪfɪkəlti/ 29, 60, 66
digital /'dɪdʒɪtəl/ 33
dilemma /dɪ'lemə/ 50, 66
dim d?m 8, 56, 59
diploma /dɪ'pləʊmə/ 14
diplomat /'dɪpləmæt/ 15
direct /dɪ'rekt/ 8
direct debit /dɪ'rekt 'debɪt/ 40
direct message 36
direction /dɪ'rekʃən/ 20
director /dɪ'rektə/ 16, 20
disagree /ˌdɪsə'griː/ 71
disagreement /ˌdɪsə'griːmənt/ 73
disappear /ˌdɪsə'pɪə/ 71
disapprove /ˌdɪsə'pruːv/ 71
disaster /dɪ'zɑːstə/ 50
disbelief /ˌdɪsbɪ'liːf/ 51
disbelieve /ˌdɪsbɪ'liːv/ 71
disconnect /ˌdɪskə'nekt/ 71
discontented /ˌdɪskən'tentɪd/ 43
discourage /dɪ'skʌrɪdʒ/ 71
discourteous /dɪ'skɜːtiəs/ 8
discrepancy /dɪ'skrepəntsi/ 64
discus /'dɪskəs/ 18
disease /dɪ'ziːz/ 29
disguise /dɪs'gaɪz/ 27
disgust /dɪs'gʌst/ 44
dish /dɪʃ/ 37
disk /dɪsk/ 33
disk drive /'dɪsk ˌdraɪv/ 34
dislike /dɪ'slaɪk/ 71
dislocate /'dɪsləʊkeɪt/ 28
dismount /dɪ'smaʊnt/ 99
disorder /dɪ'sɔːdə/ 86
disorganised /dɪ'sɔːgənaɪzd/ 71
display /dɪ'spleɪ/ 33, 99
dispose /dɪ'spəʊz/ 24
disprove /dɪ'spruːv/ 71
disqualify /dɪ'skwɒlɪfaɪ/ 71
disrepair /ˌdɪsrɪ'peə/ 86
disrupt /dɪs'rʌpt/ 50
disruption /dɪs'rʌpʃən/ 50
dissect /dɪ'sekt/ 33
dissertation /ˌdɪsə'teɪʃən/ 15
dissimilar /ˌdɪs'sɪmɪlə/ 71
distance /'dɪstənts/ 54
distance learning /'dɪstənts ˌlɜːnɪŋ/ 14
distant /'dɪstənt/ 54
divert /daɪ'vɜːt/ 72
divide /dɪ'vaɪd/ 64
division /dɪ'vɪʒən/ 52
dizzy /'dɪzɪ/ 28
DNA /ˌdiːen'eɪ/ 39, 78
do an exam / 14
do business /duː 'bɪznɪs/ 17, 89
do for a living 16
do housework 11
do the hoovering 11
do the ironing 11
do the washing-up 11
do well 14
do without /duː wɪ'ðaʊt/ 55, 89
do your best /duː jɔː best/ 89
documentary /ˌdɒkjə'mentəri/ 37
dominoes /'dɒmɪnəʊz/ 84
donate /dəʊ'neɪt/ 57
donation /dəʊ'neɪʃən/ 70
done in /dʌn ɪn/ 49
donor /'dəʊnə/ 70
dosh /dɒʃ/ 96
doubt /daʊt/ 42, 80
doubtful /'daʊtfəl/ 55
down /daʊn/ 35
down in the dumps 49, 79
download /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd/ 2, 34
downpour /'daʊnpɔː/ 6
down-to-earth /ˌdaʊntu'ɜːθ/ 8
dozen /'dʌzən/ 51
drag on /'dræg ɒn/ 53
drama /'drɑːmə/ 37, 100
drapes /dreɪps/ 101
draughts /drɑːfts/ 84
drawback /'drɔːbæk/ 76
dread /dred/ 44
dream /driːm/ 60
dress up /dres ʌp/ 27
drift /drɪft/ 58
drinkable /'drɪŋkəbəl/ 70
drive /draɪv/ 11, 58, 100
drop /drɒp/ 51
dropout /'drɒpaʊt/ 76
drought /draʊt/ 6, 13
drummer /'drʌmə/ 21
drums /drʌmz/ 21
dub /dʌb/ 37
due to /dʒuː tuː/ 63
dull /dʌl/ 59
dumb /dʌm/ 8, 80
dungarees /ˌdʌŋgə'riːz/ 84
during /'dʒʊərɪŋ/ 61
dustpan and brush /'dʌstpæn ən 'brʌʃ/ 11
Dutch /dʌtʃ/ 5
duty /'dʒuːti/ 40
duty-free /ˌdʒuːti'friː/ 40, 74
eagerness /'iːgənɪs/ 73
earache /'ɪəreɪk/ 28
earlier /'ɜːliə/ 68
earlier on /'ɜːliə ɒn/ 61
early morning /'ɜːli 'mɔːnɪŋ/ 31
early stage /'ɜːli steɪdʒ/ 29
earn /ɜːn/ 2
earphones /'ɪəfəʊnz/ 84
earring /'ɪərɪŋ/ 75
earthquake /'ɜːθkweɪk/ 13
East Asia /iːst 'eɪʒə/ 5
easy-going /ˌiːzi'gəʊɪŋ/ 8, 74
ook /'iːbʊk/ 19
ard /'iːkɑːd/ 35
eccentric /ɪk'sentrɪk/ 8, 42
ecological /ˌiːkə'lɒdʒɪkəl/ 24
ecologically sound /ˌiːkə'lɒdʒɪkli saʊnd/ 24
economical /ˌiːkə'nɒmɪkəl/ 8
economics /ˌiːkə'nɒmɪks/ 84
economist /ɪ'kɒnəmɪst/ 16
economy /ɪ'kɒnəmi/ 23
edible /'edɪbəl/ 70
educate /'edʒʊkeɪt/ 72
effect /ɪ'fekt/ 50
effort /'efət/ 89
egg /eg/ 26
elapse /i'læps/ 53
elect /i'lekt/ 38
electrician /ɪlek'trɪʃən/ 16
elegant /'elɪgənt/ 7, 25, 27
elevator /'elɪveɪtə/ 101
email /'iːmeɪl/ 2
employee /ɪm'plɔɪiː/ 70
employer /ɪm'plɔɪə/ 70
enable /ɪ'neɪbəl/ 33
enchanting /ɪn'tʃɑːntɪŋ/ 3
end /end/ 93
end-of-year exam / 14
endangered /ɪn'deɪndʒəd/ 24
enemy /'enəmi/ 3
engrossing /ɪn'grəʊsɪŋ/ 3
enjoyment /ɪn'dʒɔɪmənt/ 70

enormous /ɪ'nɔːməs/ 51
enquiring /ɪn'kwaɪərɪŋ/ 8
ensue /ɪn'sjuː/ 63
enter /'entə/ 35
entertainer /ˌentə'teɪnə/ 20
enthralling /ɪn'θrɔːlɪŋ/ 3
enthusiastic /ɪnˌθjuːzi'æstɪk/ 43
entire /ɪn'taɪə/ 41
entrance exam / 14
entrancing /ɪn'trɑːntsɪŋ/ 3
entry /'entri/ 99
entry requirement / 15
envious /'enviəs/ 8
environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ 24
environmentally friendly /ɪnˌvaɪərənˌmentəli 'frendli/ 24
epidemic /ˌepɪ'demɪk/ 13
episode /'epɪsəʊd/ 37
equally /'iːkwəli/ 65
equipment /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/ 83
era /'ɪərə/ 53
eraser /ɪ'reɪzə/ 101
ergonomics /ˌɜːgə'nɒmɪks/ 33
erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ 13
establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 33, 95
estate /ɪ'steɪt/ 57
estate agent /ɪ'steɪt 'eɪdʒənt/ 25
estuary /'estʃuəri/ 23
etc /et'setərə/ 65
ethnic group /'eθnɪk gruːp/ 5
Europe /'jʊərəp/ 5
European /ˌjʊərə'piːən/ 5
evaluation /ɪˌvælju'eɪʃən/ 66
even-tempered /ˌiːvən'tempəd/ 8
evidence /'evɪdənts/ 39
ex /eks/ 10
exaggeration /ɪgˌzædʒər'eɪʃən/ 49
exam /ɪg'zæm/ 14
exceptional /ek'sepʃənəl/ 32
excessive /ek'sesɪv/ 51
excise /'eksaɪz/ 40
excitement /ɪk'saɪtmənt/ 70
exclusive /ɪks'kluːsɪv/ 32
excommunicate /ˌekskə'mjuːnɪkeɪt/ 71
excursion /ɪk'skɜːʃən/ 32
excuse n /ɪk'skjuːs/ 89
executive /ɪg'zekjətɪv/ 16
exempt /ɪg'zempt/ 55
exercise n, v /'eksəsaɪz/ 30, 89
exhale /eks'heɪl/ 71
exhausted /ɪg'zɔːstɪd/ 28
exhilarating /ɪg'zɪləreɪtɪŋ/ 32
existence /ɪg'zɪstənts/ 93
exotic /ɪg'zɒtɪk/ 32
expand /ɪk'spænd/ 17, 54
expect /ɪk'spekt/ 6
expectation /ˌekspek'teɪʃən/ 73
expenses /ɪk'spentsɪz/ 40
experience /ɪk'spɪəriənts/ 83, 85
experiment 33
explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒən/ 13
export n /'ekspɔːt/
export v /ɪk'spɔːt/ 72, 80
express /ɪk'spres/ 72
ex-smoker /'eks ˌsməʊkə/ 71
extend /ɪk'stend/ 54
extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ 24
extract n 19
extract v /ɪk'strækt/ 33, 71
extravagant /ɪk'strævəgənt/ 8
extreme /ɪk'striːm/ 42
extroverted /'ekstrəvɜːtɪd/ 8
ex-wife /eks waɪf/ 71
face n, v /feɪs/ 7, 48
facility /fə'sɪləti/ 40
fact /fækt/ 66
fail /feɪl/ 14
fair /feə 7, 82
faith /feɪθ/ 73
fake /feɪk/ 41
fall /fɔːl/ 101
fall down /fɔːl daʊn/ 12
fall for /fɔːl fɔː/ 44
fall in love /fɔːl ɪn lʌv/ 44
fall off /fɔːlɒf/ 12
fall out with /fɔːl aʊt wɪð/ 10
fallout /'fɔːlaʊt/ 76
falter /'fɔːltə/ 60
famine /'fæmɪn/ 13
fanatical /fə'nætɪkəl/ 42
fancy /'fæntsi/ 10, 44
FAQ /ˌefeɪ'kjuː/ 35, 78
far /fɑː/ 54
faraway /ˌfɑːrə'weɪ/ 54
fare /feə/ 82
far-fetched /ˌfɑː'fetʃt/ 74
farm /fɑːm/ 80
fascinate /'fæsɪneɪt/ 44
fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ 3, 32
fashion /'fæʃən/ 93
fast /fɑːst/ 12
fasten /'fɑːsən/ 80
fat /fæt/ 7, 30
faulty /'fɔːlti/ 41
faze /feɪz/ 82
fear /fɪə/ 13, 73
feather /'feðə/ 26
feature 'fiːtʃə/ 7, 33
fed up /ˌfed'ʌp/ 43
federation /ˌfedər'eɪʃən/ 38
feedback /'fiːdbæk/ 17, 76
feel /fiːl/ 28, 42, 46, 59
fencing /fentsɪŋ/ 18
field /fiːld/ 15
fiend /fiːnd/ 80
filthy /'fɪlθi/ 26
finally /'faɪnəli/ 68
finance /'faɪnænts/ 40
find work 16
fine n, adj /faɪn/ 39, 59, 67
fine art(s) /faɪn ɑːt/ 19
fingerprint /'fɪŋgəprɪnt/ 39
Finn /fɪn/ 5
fire /faɪə/ 16
firefighter /'faɪəˌfaɪtə/ 16
firm /fɜːm/ 3, 17, 42
first /'fɜːst/ 68
first and foremost /'fɜːst ən 'fɔːməʊst/ 77
first floor /'fɜːst flɔː/ 101
first impression /'fɜːst ɪm'preʃən/ 7
first language /'fɜːst 'læŋgwɪdʒ/ 5
first of all /'fɜːst ɒv 'ɔːl/ 68
first-born /'fɜːstbɔːn/ 74
first-class /'fɜːst ˌklɑːs/ 74
first-hand /ˌfɜːst'hænd/ 74
firstly /'fɜːstli/ 68
first-rate /ˌfɜːst'reɪt/ 48
fish /fɪʃ/ 85
fishing line /fɪʃɪŋ laɪn/ 18
fit /fɪt/ 27, 30, 86
fit as a fiddle 49
fitness /'fɪtnəs/ 30
(in a) fix 50
fizzy /'fɪzi/ 30
flash /flæʃ/ 33
flashlight /'flæʃlaɪt/ 101
flat /flæt/ 11, 12, 32
flaw /flɔː/ 33
fleeting /'fliːtɪŋ/ 53
flexibility /ˌfleksə'bɪləti/ 70
flexible /'fleksɪbəl/ 41, 70
flexi-time /'fleksitaɪm/ 16
flicker /'flɪkə/ 56
flock /flɒk/ 87
flood flʌd/ 6, 12, 13
flour /flaʊə/ 83
flow /fləʊ/ 58
flower /flaʊə/ 26
flowery /'flaʊəri/ 27
flu /fluː/ 82
flutter /'flʌtə/ 58
flux /flʌks/ 86
fly /flaɪ/ 53

focus on /'fəʊkəs ɒn/ 37
foe /fəʊ/ 3
foggy /'fɒgi/ 6
fold /fəʊld/ 60
folk /fəʊk/ 2, 21
follow 36
following /'fɒləʊɪŋ/ 61, 68
fond of /fɒnd ɒv/ 44
food poisoning /fuːd 'pɔɪzənɪŋ/ 75
foolish /'fuːlɪʃ/ 8
foot /fʊt/ 23
football pitch /'fʊtbɔːl ˌpɪtʃ/ 25
footballer /'fʊtbɔːlə/ 18
for a time /fɔːr ə taɪm/ 53
for example /fɔːr ɪg'zɑːmpəl/ 68
for instance /fɔːr 'ɪnstənts/ 68
for the time being /fɔːr ðə taɪm 'biːɪŋ/ 53
force into /fɔːs 'ɪntə/ 55
forgetful /fə'getfəl/ 70
forgetfulness /fə'getfəlnɪs/ 70
forgivable /fə'gɪvəbəl/ 70
formerly /'fɔːməli/ 61
fortune /'fɔːtʃuːn/ 93
forward /'fɔːwəd/ 2
fossil fuel /'fɒsəl 'fjuːəl/ 24
foul-smelling /faʊl smelɪŋ/ 46
foundations /faʊn'deɪʃənz/ 84
fox /fɒks/ 26
fragile /'frædʒaɪl/ 41
fragrant /'freɪgrənt/ 46
frank /fræŋk/ 8
fraud /frɔːd/ 39
freedom /'friːdəm/ 73
freeway /'friːweɪ/ 101
freeze /friːz/ 6
French /frentʃ/ 5
French fries /frentʃ fraɪz/ 101
frequently /'friːkwəntli/ 95
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 96
friend /frend/ 3, 10, 80
friend request 36
friendliness /'frendlɪnɪs/ 73
friendship /'frendʃɪp/ 70
frighten the life out of sb 49
frog /frɒg/ 26
from time to time /frɒm taɪm tə taɪm/ 53
frost /frɒst/ 6
frown /fraʊn/ 47
frustrated /frʌs'treɪtɪd/ 43
frustration /frʌs'treɪʃən/ 73
fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/ 60
fulfilling /fʊl'fɪlɪŋ/ 60
fulfilment /fʊl'fɪlmənt/ 60
full of yourself 8
function /'fʌŋkʃən/ 33
fundamental /ˌfʌndə'mentəl/ 95
funding /'fʌndɪŋ/ 15
fur /fɜː/ 26
furious /'fjʊəriəs/ 43, 70
furiously /'fjʊəriəsli/ 45
furry /'fɜːri/ 59
further /'fɜːðə/ 68, 95
further education /'fɜːðər ˌedʒʊ'keɪʃən/ 14
further to /'fɜːðə tuː/ 65
furthermore /ˌfɜːðə'mɔː/ 65
fuss /fʌs/ 89
gain /geɪn/ 2
gain admission 14
gale /geɪl/ 6
game show /geɪm ʃəʊ/ 37
gang /gæŋ/ 87
garbage /'gɑːbɪdʒ/ 101
garden /'gɑːdən/ 101
garden centre /'gɑːdən 'sentə/ 25
gardening /'gɑːdənɪŋ/ 89
gas /gæs/ 24, 101
gash /gæʃ/ 81
gaze /geɪz/ 46
geek /giːk/ 96
gems /dʒemz/ 100
general anaesthetic /'dʒenərəl ˌænəs'θetɪk/ 29
general election /'dʒenərəl i'lekʃən/ 38
generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ 63
generation gap /ˌdʒenə'reɪʃən gæp/ 75
generosity /ˌdʒenə'rɒsəti/ 73
generous /'dʒenərəs/ 8
genetic engineering /dʒə'netɪk ˌendʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ 33
genetically modified /dʒə'netɪkli 'mɒdɪfaɪd/ 33
gentle /'dʒentəl/ 6
genuine /'dʒenjuɪn/ 41
German /'dʒɜːmən/ 5
gesture /'dʒestʃə/ 89
get /get/ 91
get across /get ə'krɒs/ 91
get at /get æt/ 91
get away /'get ə'weɪ/ 32
get behind with /get bɪ'haɪnd wɪð/ 91
get carried away /get 'kærid ə'weɪ/ 49
get down /get daʊn/ 91
get off to a good start /get ɒf tuː ə gʊd stɑːt/ 91
get on /get ɒn/ 91
get on sb's nerves 9
get on well (with someone) /get ɒn wel/ 10
get your act together 50
get out of /get aʊt ɒv/ 91
get over /get 'əʊvə/ 28, 91
get rid of /get rɪd ɒv/ 91
get round /get raʊnd/ 91
get round to /get raʊnd tuː/ 91
get through /get θruː/ 91
get /get tuː/ 91
get to know /get tə nəʊ/ 91
get to the bottom of things 50
get to the point 69
get up to /get ʌp tuː/ 91
get work 16
get-together n /'get təˌgeðə/ 91
get together v /ˌget tə'geðə/ 10
geyser /'giːzə/ 23
gift of the gab 48
gifted /'gɪftɪd/ 8
gig /gɪg/ 78
gigabyte /'gɪgəbaɪt/ 34
ginger-haired /'dʒɪndʒər heəd/ 7
give and take /ˌgɪvən'teɪk/ 77
give away /gɪvə'weɪ/ 57
give or take /gɪv ɔː teɪk/ 77
give out /gɪv aʊt/ 57
give rise to /gɪv raɪz tuː/ 63
give sb a talking to 69
glacier /'glæsiə/ 23
gladly /'glædli/ 45
glamorous /'glæmərəs/ 32
glance /glɑːnts/ 46
glare /gleə/ 59
glass /glɑːs/ 85, 88
glasses /glɑːsɪz 84, 85
glimpse /glɪmps/ 46
glitter /'glɪtə/ 56
global warming /'gləʊbəl 'wɔːmɪŋ/ 24
globalisation /ˌgləʊbəlaɪ'zeɪʃən/ 24
gloomily /'gluːmɪli/ 45
gloomy /'gluːmi/ 56
glow /gləʊ/ 56
GM /ˌdʒiː'em/ 33, 78
go amiss /gəʊ ə'mɪs/ 95
go bankrupt /gəʊ 'bæŋkrʌpt/ 93
go for /gəʊ fɔː/ 93
go off /gəʊ ɒf/ 22

go on /gəʊ ɒn 53, 93
go pear-shaped /gəʊ 'peəʃeɪpt/ 95
go through /gəʊ θruː/ 93
go under /gəʊ 'ʌndə/ 60
go wrong /gəʊ rɒŋ/ 60
go-ahead /'gəʊəhed/ 100
goal /gəʊl/ 60
goggles /'gɒgəlz/ 84
going forward /ˌgəʊɪŋ 'fɔːwəd/ 17
golf course /'gɒlf ˌkɔːs/ 25
good /gʊd/ 67
good as gold /gʊd əz gəʊld/ 9, 79, 97
good ear 21
good for 30
good friend 10
good-looking /ˌgʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ 7
goodness /'gʊdnɪs/ 70
goods /gʊdz/ 84
good-tempered /ˌgʊd'tempəd/ 74
google /'guːgəl/ 35
gorge /gɔːdʒ/ 23
govern /'gʌvən/ 38
government /'gʌvənmənt/ 38
GPS /ˌdʒiːpiː'es/ 33
grab /græb/ 46
graduate n /'grædjuət/ 15
graduate v /'grædjueɪt/ 15
grammar school /'græmə skuːl/ 14
grant /grɑːnt/ 14
graphics /'græfɪks/ 34
grasp /grɑːsp/ 46, 50
grass roots /ˌgrɑːs'ruːts/ 75
grate /greɪt/ 82
grateful /'greɪtfəl/ 43
grater /greɪtə/ 11, 70
graze /greɪz/ 12
great /greɪt/ 41, 82
Greek /griːk/ 5
green /griːn/ 24
green fingers 48
greenhouse effect /'griːnhaʊs ɪ'fekt/ 24
gregarious /grɪ'geəriəs/ 8
grey /greɪ/ 7
grin /grɪn/ 47
gripping /'grɪpɪŋ/ 3
groan /grəʊn/ 45, 81, 82
ground floor /'graʊnd ˌflɔː/ 101
group /gruːp/ 87
grow /grəʊ/ 26
grow out of /grəʊ aʊt ɒv/ 27
growl /graʊl/ 81
grub /grʌb/ 96
grumble /'grʌmbəl/ 45, 81
grumpy /'grʌmpi/ 81
guesthouse /'gesthaʊs/ 32
guilty /'gɪlti/ 39
guitar /gɪ'tɑː/ 2, 21
gulf /gʌlf/ 23
gymnast /'dʒɪmnæst/ 18
gymnastics /dʒɪm'næstɪks/ 18, 84
hair /heə/ 7, 85
half-witted /ˌhɑːf'wɪtɪd/ 8
hall /hɔːl/ 11, 15
hall of residence 15
hallway /'hɔːlweɪ/ 11
hand down /hænd 'daʊn/ 57
hand out /hænd 'aʊt/ 57
hand over /ˌhænd 'əʊvə/ 57
handcuffs /'hændkʌfs/ 84
handle /'hændəl/ 46
handmade /ˌhænd'meɪd/ 74
handsome /'hændsəm/ 7
hang on /hæŋ ɒn/ 67
hang-gliding /'hæŋˌglaɪdɪŋ/ 18
happy as Larry 'hæpi əz 'læri/ 49
happily /'hæpɪli/ 45
happiness /'hæpɪnɪs/ 70, 73
hard as nails /'hɑːd əz 'neɪlz/ 9
hard disk /'hɑːd dɪsk/ 34
harden /'hɑːdən/ 60
hardness /'hɑːdnɪs/ 60
hard-up /ˌhɑːd'ʌp/ 74
hardware /'hɑːdweə/ 34
harm /hɑːm/ 30
harmful /'hɑːmfəl/ 30
harmless /'hɑːmləs/ 70
hat /hæt/ 83
have an affair 10
have a go /hæv ə gəʊ/ 93
have a good head for figures 9
have a head for heights 9
have a head like a sieve 9
have trouble /hæv 'trʌbəl/ 60
have your cake and eat it / 48
have your head in the clouds 9
have your head screwed on 9
hay fever /'heɪ ˌfiːvə/ 75
hazardous /'hæzədəs/ 24
head /hed/ 38, 80, 100
head and shoulders above /hed ən 'ʃəʊldəz ə'bʌv/ 9, 48
headphones /'hedfəʊnz/ 75, 84
headquarters /ˌhed'kwɔːtəz/ 84
head spinning 49
health /helθ/ 85
health centre /'helθ 'sentə/ 25
health warning /'helθ ˌwɔːnɪŋ/ 99
heap /hiːp/ 87
heaps /hiːps/ 51
hearing /'hɪərɪŋ/ 46
hearing aid /'hɪərɪŋ ˌeɪd/ 29
heart /hɑːt/ 1, 50
heart attack /'hɑːt ə'tæk/ 28, 75
heart of gold 9
heartbreak /'hɑːtbreɪk/ 50
heart's in the right place 9
heatwave /'hiːtweɪv/ 6
heavy /'hevi/ 6, 22
heavy as lead 59
heel /hiːl/ 27
height /haɪt/ 54
heighten /'haɪtən/ 54
heir /eə/ 80, 82
heiress /'eəres/ 80
helmet /'helmət/ 27
help yourself 22
hem /hem/ 27
hemisphere /'hemɪsfɪə/ 52
herd /hɜːd/ 87
here and there 77
high /haɪ/ 6
high and dry 77
high jump /'haɪ dʒʌmp/ 18
high-definition /'haɪ ˌdefɪ'nɪʃən/ 33
higher education /'haɪər ˌedʒʊ'keɪʃən/ 14
highly /'haɪli/ 29, 48
high-tech /ˌhaɪ'tek/ 78
hip-hop /'hɪphɒp/ 21
hiss /hɪs/ 56
historic /hɪ'stɒrɪk/ 25
hit n, v /hɪt/ 35, 100
hoarse /hɔːs/ 82
hold /həʊld/ 42
hold a record 18
hold on /həʊld ɒn/ 67
hold your breath 47
holiday /'hɒlədeɪ/ 101
hollow /'hɒləʊ/ 59
home page /'həʊmpeɪdʒ/ 2, 35
homeless /'həʊmləs/ 70
homework /'həʊmwɜːk/ 89
honest /'ɒnɪst/ 8, 80
honour /'ɒnə/ 80
honourable /'ɒnərəbəl/ 80
hood /hʊd/ 27, 101
hoodie /hʊdi/ 27
hoof /huːf/ 26
hopeful /'həʊpfəl/ 70
hopefully /'həʊpfəli/ 45
horns /hɔːnz/ 26
host /həʊst/ 21
hostility /hɒs'tɪləti/ 73

hot /hɒt/ 22, 46
hotel /həʊ'tel/ 25
hour /aʊə/ 80, 82
hourly /aʊəli/ 80
house /haʊs/ 38
House of Commons /ˌhaʊs əv 'kɒmənz/ 38
House of Lords /ˌhaʊs əv lɔːdz/ 38
House of Representatives /ˌhaʊs əv ˌreprɪ'zentətɪvz/ 38
housemate /'haʊsmeɪt/ 10
housework /'haʊswɜːk 89
housing estate /ˌhaʊzɪŋ ɪ'steɪt/ 25, 57
however /haʊ'evə/ 62
hum /hʌm/ 56
human rights /'hjuːmən ˌraɪts/ 75
humid /'hjuːmɪd/ 6
humour /'hjuːmə/ 73
hurricane 'hʌrɪkən/ 6, 13
hurry /'hʌri/ 58
hurt /hɜːt/ 28
hurtful /'hɜːtfəl/ 3
hydroponics /ˌhaɪdrəʊ'pɒnɪks/ 33
I mean 67
Ice Age /'aɪs ˌeɪdʒ 53
ice field /'aɪs ˌfiːld/ 23
Icelandic /aɪs'lændɪk/ 5
icon /'aɪkɒn/ 34
ID /aɪ'diː/ 78
idea /aɪ'dɪə/ 73
identify /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/ 29
identity theft /aɪ'dentəti 'θeft/ 2
ideology /ˌaɪdi'ɒlədʒi/ 42
idolise /'aɪdəlaɪz/ 10
ill /ɪl/ 48
illegal /ɪ'liːgəl/ 71
illegible /ɪ'ledʒəbəl/ 71
illiterate /ɪ'lɪtərət/ 71
ill-mannered /ˌɪl'mænəd/ 8
image /'ɪmɪdʒ/ 19
immature /ˌɪmə'tʃʊə/ 71
immediate /ɪ'miːdiət/ 61
immediately /ɪ'miːdiətli/ 95
immoral /ɪ'mɒrəl/ 71
immune system /ɪ'mjuːn 'sɪstəm/ 30
impatient /ɪm'peɪʃənt/ 71
impolite /ˌɪmpəl'aɪt/ 8
import v /ɪm'pɔːt/ 71, 72, 80
important 48
impose /ɪm'pəʊz/ 66, 72
impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbəl/ 71
impress /ɪm'pres/ 72
impression /ɪm'preʃən/ 89
impressive /ɪm'presɪv/ 32
improbable /ɪm'prɒbəbəl/ 71
improvement /ɪm'pruːvmənt/ 73
in a bad mood 49
in addition /ɪn ə'dɪʃən/ 65
in case /ɪn 'keɪs/ 62
in conclusion /ˌɪn kən'kluːʒən/ 68
in contrast /ˌɪn 'kɒntrɑːst/ 64
in credit /ɪn 'kredɪt/ 40
in high spirits 49
in (his/her/your) thirties 7
in other words /ɪn 'ʌðə 'wɜːdz/ 68
in parenthesis /ɪn pə'renθəsɪs/ 68
in particular /ˌɪn pə'tɪkjələ/ 95
in season 22
in sum /ɪn 'sʌm/ 68
in summary /ɪn 'sʌməri/ 68
in the long run /ɪn ðə lɒŋ rʌn/ 94
in the meantime /ɪn ðə 'miːntaɪm/ 61
in the red 40, 79
incident /'ɪnsɪdənt/ 13
income /'ɪŋkʌm/ 40, 71
income tax /'ɪŋkʌm tæks/ 40, 75
inconvenient /ˌɪnkən'viːniənt/ 32
increase n /'ɪnkriːs/ 80
increase v /ɪn'kriːs/ 80
independence /ˌɪndɪ'pendənts/ 38
in-depth /ˌɪn'depθ/ 37
indigestion /ˌɪndɪ'dʒestʃən/ 28
industrial estate /ɪn'dʌstriəl ɪ'steɪt/ 25
industrialise /ɪn'dʌstriəlaɪz/ 70
inedible /ɪ'nedəbəl/ 71
inevitable /ɪ'nevɪtəbəl/ 55
inexperienced /ˌɪnɪk'spɪəriəntst/ 71
information /ˌɪnfə'meɪʃən/ 83
inherit /ɪn'herɪt/ 57
inheritance tax /ɪn'herɪtənts ˌtæks/ 40
injection /ɪn'dʒekʃən/ 28
injure /'ɪndʒə/ 13
injustice /ɪn'dʒʌstɪs/ 73
innocent /'ɪnəsənt/ 8, 39
input /'ɪnpʊt/ 76
inquisitive /ɪn'kwɪzətɪv/ 8
insert /ɪn'sɜːt/ 33, 71
inside out /'ɪnsaɪd 'aʊt/ 27
insist /ɪn'sɪst/ 45
inspect /ɪn'spekt/ 72
inspection /ɪn'spekʃən/ 72
inspector /ɪn'spektə/ 72
inspired /ɪn'spaɪəd/ 43
install /ɪn'stɔːl/ 33
insult v /ɪn'sʌlt/ 80
intellectual /ˌɪntəl'ektʃuəl/ 42
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/ 8
intensely (annoying) /ɪn'tentsli/ 50
intention /ɪn'tentʃən/ 73
interact /ˌɪntər'ækt/ 10, 33
interactive /ˌɪntər'æktɪv/ 35
interest /'ɪntrəst/ 40
interest rate /'ɪntrəst 'reɪt/ 40
interest-free /'ɪntrəst 'friː/ 74
internal /ɪn'tɜːnəl/ 71
Internet /'ɪntənet/ 35
interpret /ɪn'tɜːprɪt/ 33
interstate /ˌɪntə'steɪt/ 101
intestine /ɪn'testɪn/ 1
into the bargain / 65
introduce /ˌɪntrə'dʒuːs/ 72
introduction /ˌɪntrə'dʌkʃən/ 72
introverted /ˌɪntrəʊ'vɜːtɪd/ 8
intuition /ˌɪntʃu'ɪʃən/ 46
investigate /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ 37
investigation /ɪnˌvestɪ'geɪʃən/ 37
investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ 73
invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ 10
IOU /ˌaɪəʊ'juː/ 78
Irish /'aɪərɪʃ/ 5
iron /aɪən/ 85
ironing board /'aɪənɪŋ bɔːd/ 11
irregular /ɪ'regjələ/ 71
irritant /'ɪrɪtənt/ 50
irritation /ˌɪrɪ'teɪʃən/ 50
-ise 101
ISP /ˌaɪes'piː/ 35
issue /'ɪʃuː/ 66
Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ 5
itch /ɪtʃ/ 28
item /'aɪtəm/ 86
-ize 101
jagged /'dʒægɪd/ 59
jail /dʒeɪl/ 39
jar /dʒɑː/ 88
javelin /'dʒævəlɪn/ 18
jazz /dʒæz/ 21
jealous /'dʒeləs/ 8
jeans /dʒiːnz/ 84
jetlag /'dʒetlæg/ 31
jewellery 101
jewelry 101
job /dʒɒb 16, 2
job centre /'dʒɒb 'sentə/ 25
jockey /'dʒɒki/ 18
journalism /'dʒɜːnəlɪzəm/ 37, 70
journey /'dʒɜːni/ 31
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 16, 38
judgment /dʒʌdʒmənt/ 66
jug /dʒʌg/ 88
jump out of your skin 49

junk food /'dʒʌŋk ˌfuːd/ 22, 75
junk mail /'dʒʌŋk ˌmeɪl/ 2
jury /'dʒʊəri/ 39
justice /'dʒʌstɪs/ 73
keen on /kiːn ɒn/ 44
keep a cool head 49
keep your chin up 49
keep your head 9
key /kiː/ 9, 66, 100
key in /kiː ɪn/ 34
keyboard /'kiːbɔːd/ 21
keyhole surgery /'kiːhəʊl 'sɜːdʒəri/ 29
kidnap /'kɪdnæp/ 39
kidney /'kɪdni/ 1
kids /kɪdz/ 95
kilo /'kiːləʊ/ 78
kind of /kaɪnd əv/ 67
kindness /kaɪndnɪs/ 73
kingdom /'kɪŋdəm/ 73
knee /niː/ 80
knickers /'nɪkəz/ 84
knife /naɪf/ 80
knit /nɪt/ 80
knob /nɒb/ 80
knock out /ˌnɒk'aʊt/ 18
knot /nɒt/ 80
know /nəʊ/ 80
know-all /'nəʊɔːl/ 9
knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/ 83
lab /læb/ 96
labour force /'leɪbə ˌfɔːs/ 75
laces /'leɪsɪz/ 27
lack /læk/ 24, 50, 55
ladies and gentlemen 77
laid-back /ˌleɪd'bæk/ 8
lamb /læm/ 80
landing /'lændɪŋ/ 11, 31
landlady /'lænd ˌleɪdi/ 57
landlord /'lændlɔːd/ 57
landscape /'lændskeɪp/ 19, 23
landslide /'lændslaɪd/ 13
laptop /'læptɒp/ 34
large quantities 30
laser /'leɪzə/ 78
laser surgery /'leɪzə 'sɜːdʒəri/ 29
last /lɑːst/ 53, 80
lastly /'lɑːstli/ 68
last-minute /ˌlɑːst'mɪnɪt/ 74
late /leɪt/ 6, 80
Latin American /'lætɪn ə'merɪkən/ 5
laugh /lɑːf/ 3
launch /lɔːntʃ/ 17
law court /'lɔː ˌkɔːt/ 25
lay /leɪ/ 26
lay-by /'leɪbaɪ/ 76
laze /leɪz/ 82
laziness /'leɪzɪnɪs/ 73
lazy-bones /'leɪziˌbəʊnz/ 9
lead (pipe) /led/ 82
lead guitar /led gɪ'tɑːr/ 21
lead singer /'liːd 'sɪŋə/ 21, 82
lead to /liːd tuː/ 63
leaf /liːf/ 26
leak /liːk/ 12
leaps and bounds 77
leather /'leðə/ 83
leave /liːv/ 57
leave cold 10
lecture /'lektʃə/ 15
lecture hall 15
lecture theatre 15
lecturer /'lektʃərə/ 15, 16
left-handed /ˌleft'hændɪd/ 74
left-wing /ˌleft'wɪŋ/ 42
legal /'liːgəl/ 70
leggings /'legɪŋz/ 84
legislature /'ledʒɪslətʃə/ 38
length /leŋkθ/ 54, 73
lengthen /'leŋkθən/ 54
lengthy /'leŋkθi/ 54
let down /let 'daʊn/ 27, 94
let go of 57
let out /let aʊt/ 27
level /'levəl/ 30
lever /'liːvə/ 33
liable /'laɪəbəl/ 55
library /'laɪbrəri/ 25
lick /lɪk/ 47
lift /lɪft/ 101
light /laɪt/ 22, 33
light as a feather 59
light at the end of the tunnel 50
light bulb /'laɪt ˌbʌlb/ 75
like /laɪk/ 36, 44, 67, 97
like a bear with a sore head 49, 97
likewise /'laɪkwaɪz/ 65
limit /'lɪmɪt/ 40
limitation /ˌlɪmɪ'teɪʃən/ 73
line /laɪn/ 101
link lɪŋk/ 2, 35, 36, 100
list /lɪst/ 30, 35
listen /'lɪsən/ 67, 80
literary /'lɪtərəri/ 19
litter /'lɪtə/ 99
live /laɪv/ 82
lively /'laɪvli/ 25
liver /lɪvə/ 1
LMS /ˌelem'es/ 14
loads /ləʊdz/ 51
loaf /ləʊf/ 86
loathe /ləʊð/ 10, 44
location /ləʊ'keɪʃən/ 37
lock out /ˌlɒk'aʊt/ 12
lodgings /'lɒdʒɪŋz/ 84
loft /lɒft/ 11
log in /lɒg ɪn/ 35
log off /lɒg ɒf/ 35
log on /lɒg ɒn/ 35
log out /lɒg aʊt/ 35
long /lɒŋ/ 7, 54
long face 49
long for /lɒŋ fɔː/ 44
long jump /'lɒŋ ˌdʒʌmp/ 18
long-distance /ˌlɒŋ'dɪstənts/ 18, 54, 74
long-haired /lɒŋ 'heəd/ 74
long-legged /lɒŋ 'legɪd/ 74
long-sleeved /lɒŋ 'sliːvd/ 27
long-standing /ˌlɒŋ'stændɪŋ/ 74
long-term /ˌlɒŋ'tɜːm/ 30
long-winded /ˌlɒŋ'wɪndɪd/ 69
loo /luː/ 96
look /lʊk/ 46
look at /lʊk ət/ 94
look down on /lʊk daʊn ɒn/ 10
look for /lʊk fɔː/ 94
look forward to /lʊk 'fɔːwəd tuː/ 44, 94
look into /lʊk 'ɪntə/ 94
look up to /lʊk ʌp tuː/ 10, 94
looks /lʊks/ 84
lose appetite 28
lose voice 28
loss /lɒs/ 53, 89
lots /lɒt/ 51
loud /laʊd/ 46
love /lʌv/ 73, 80
loving /lʌvɪŋ/ 44
low /ləʊ/ 54
lower /ləʊə/ 30, 54
luck /lʌk/ 73
luggage /'lʌgɪdʒ/ 83, 101
lump /lʌmp/ 28, 86
lung /lʌŋ/ 1
luxurious /lʌg'ʒʊəriəs/ 32
luxury goods /'lʌkʃəri 'gʊdz/ 75
mag /mæg/ 96
magnificent /mæg'nɪfɪsənt/ 25
mail /meɪl/ 82
mail order /ˌmeɪl'ɔːdə/ 75
main bedroom 11
maintain /meɪn'teɪn/ 30, 42, 45
major /'meɪdʒə/ 13, 30
majority /mə'dʒɒrəti/ 38
make a living /meɪk ə 'lɪvɪŋ/ 16

make a reservation /meɪk ə ˌrezəˈveɪʃən/ 22
make friends /meɪk frendz/ 10
make head or tail of 69
make it /meɪk ɪt/ 18
make love /meɪk lʌv/ 89
make music 21
make off /meɪk ɒf/ 89
make out /meɪk aʊt/ 89
make up /meɪk ʌp/ 10, 89
malaria /məˈleəriə/ 13
male /meɪl/ 82
manage /ˈmænɪdʒ/ 60
mandatory /ˈmændətəri/ 55
mane /meɪn/ 26
manhood /ˈmænhʊd/ 73
manufacture /ˌmænjəˈfæktʃə/ 17, 29
marathon /ˈmærəθən/ 18
marginal /ˈmɑːdʒɪnəl/ 38
market /ˈmɑːkɪt/ 17
market research /ˈmɑːkɪt rɪˈsɜːtʃ/ 17
martyrdom /ˈmɑːtədəm/ 73
Marxist /ˈmɑːksɪst/ 70
mash /mæʃ/ 81
mask /mɑːsk/ 27
mass media /mæs ˈmiːdiə/ 37
master bedroom /ˈmɑːstə ˈbedrʊm/ 11
master's /ˈmɑːstəz/ 15
match /mætʃ/ 27
mate /meɪt/ 10
material /məˈtɪəriəl/ 85
maternity leave /məˈtɜːnəti ˈliːv/ 16
matter /ˈmætə/ 66
mean /miːn/ 8
means /miːnz/ 37, 84, 85
meanwhile /ˌmiːnˈhwaɪl/ 61
meat /miːt/ 82
medical 29
meet /miːt/ 82
melt /melt/ 6
membership /ˈmembəʃɪp/ 70, 73
memorable /ˈmemərəbəl/ 32
memory /ˈmeməri/ 34
memory stick /ˈmeməri ˌstɪk/ 34
mental /ˈmentəl/ 30
meow /miːˈaʊ/ 81
messy-looking 7
meter /ˈmiːtə/ 80
MI6 /ˌemaɪˈsɪks/ 78
microbiology /ˌmaɪkrəʊbaɪˈɒlədʒi/ 71
microchip /ˈmaɪkrəʊtʃɪp/ 34, 71
microscopic /ˌmaɪkrəˈskɒpɪk/ 71
microwave /ˈmaɪkrəʊweɪv/ 71
Middle Ages /ˈmɪdəl ˈeɪdʒɪz/ 53
middle-of-the-road /ˌmɪdələvðəˈrəʊd/ 9, 42
migrant /ˈmaɪgrənt/ 13
mild /maɪld/ 22, 46
mildly (irritating) /ˈmaɪldli/ 50
miles (better) /maɪlz/ 48
mineral water /ˈmɪnrəl ˈwɔːtə/ 75
minor /ˈmaɪnə/ 99
minute /maɪˈnjuːt/ 51
miserable /ˈmɪzrəbəl/ 43
miserably /ˈmɪzrəbli/ 45
miserly /ˈmaɪzəli/ 8
mislay /mɪˈsleɪ/ 3, 12
mislead /mɪˈsliːd/ 71
misplace /mɪˈspleɪs/ 3
mistake /mɪˈsteɪk/ 89
mistranslate /ˌmɪstrænˈsleɪt/ 71
misty /ˈmɪsti/ 6
misunderstand /ˌmɪsʌndəˈstænd/ 71
moan /məʊn/ 81
mobile /ˈməʊbaɪl/ 78, 96
moderate /ˈmɒdərət/ 42
modern ballet 20
modernise /ˈmɒdənaɪz/ 70
module /ˈmɒdjuːl/ 14, 15
molecular biology /məʊˈlekjələ baɪˈɒlədʒi/ 33
molecule /ˈmɒlɪkjuːl/ 33
momentary /ˈməʊməntəri/ 53
monarchy /ˈmɒnəki/ 38
money /ˈmʌni/ 40, 83
monitor /ˈmɒnɪtə/ 14
monogamous /məˈnɒgəməs/ 71
monolingual /ˌmɒnəʊˈlɪŋgwəl/ 5, 71
monologue /ˈmɒnəlɒg/ 71
moo /muː/ 81
moolah 96
moral /ˈmɒrəl/ 42
moreish /ˈmɔːrɪʃ/ 22
moreover /mɔːrˈəʊvə/ 65
mortgage /ˈmɔːgɪdʒ/ 40
mother /ˈmʌðə/ 80
mother tongue /ˈmʌðə tʌŋ/ 5, 75
motherhood /ˈmʌðəhʊd/ 70, 73
motive /ˈməʊtɪv/ 63
motor racing /ˈməʊtə ˈreɪsɪŋ/ 18
motorway /ˈməʊtəweɪ/ 101
mountain /ˈmaʊntɪn/ 23
mountaineer /ˌmaʊntɪˈnɪə/ 18
moustache /məˈstɑːʃ/ 7
mouth 23
move /muːv/ 58
MP /ˌemˈpiː/ 38
MP3 /ˌempiːˈθriː/ 21
muddle /ˈmʌdəl/ 50
mug /mʌg/ 88
muggy /ˈmʌgi/ 6
multilingual /ˌmʌltiˈlɪŋgwəl/ 5
multimedia /ˌmʌltiˈmiːdiə/ 71
multinational /ˌmʌltiˈnæʃənəl/ 71
multiplication /ˌmʌltɪplɪˈkeɪʃən/ 52
multiplied by 52
multipurpose /ˌmʌltiˈpɜːpəs/ 71
mumble /ˈmʌmbəl/ 45
murder /ˈmɜːdə/ 39
murmur /ˈmɜːmə/ 45
muscle /ˈmʌsəl/ 80
muscular /ˈmʌskjələ/ 7
museum /mjuːˈziːəm/ 25
musician /mjuːˈzɪʃən/ 21
Muslim /ˈmʊzlɪm/ 42
musty /ˈmʌsti/ 46
mutter /ˈmʌtə/ 45
naïve /naɪˈiːv/ 8
napkin /ˈnæpkɪn/ 21
nappy /ˈnæpi/ 101
narrow-minded /ˌnærəʊˈmaɪndɪd/ 54
nasty piece of work 9
national costume /ˈnæʃənəl ˈkɒstjuːm/ 27
native language /ˈneɪtɪv ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ/ 5
NATO /ˈneɪtəʊ/ 78
natural /ˈnætʃərəl/ 13, 41
natural disaster /ˈnætʃərəl dɪˈzɑːstə/ 13
navigate /ˈnævɪgeɪt/ 35
necessity /nəˈsesəti/ 55
need (for) /niːd/ 55
neighbourhood /ˈneɪbəhʊd/ 73
nerd /nɜːd/ 96
nervous /ˈnɜːvəs/ 43
nervously /ˈnɜːvəsli/ 45
nest /nest/ 26
net /net/ 35, 80
network /ˈnetwɜːk/ 34, 35
never-ending /ˌnevərˈendɪŋ/ 74
nevertheless /ˌnevəðəˈles/ 64
new leaf /njuː liːf/ 94
news /njuːz/ 37, 83, 84
newspaper /ˈnjuːzpeɪpə/ 37, 96
next /nekst/ 68
nice figure 7
nick /nɪk/ 96
noise /nɔɪz/ 56, 89

noiseless /ˈnɔɪzləs/ 46
noisy /ˈnɔɪzi/ 46
nominate /ˈnɒmɪneɪt/ 38
non-meat-eater 22
North Africa /nɔːθ ˈæfrɪkə/ 5
North /nɔːθ ˈæfrɪkən/ 5
North America /nɔːθ əˈmerɪkə/ 5
nosh /nɒʃ/ 96
nosy /ˈnəʊzi/ 8
not do anything for sb 10
not see eye to eye 10
note /nəʊt/ 101
notice /ˈnəʊtɪs/ 46
notification 36
novelist /ˈnɒvəlɪst/ 19
now /naʊ/ 67
numb /nʌm/ 80
number /ˈnʌmbə/ 51
nursery school /ˈnɜːsəri skuːl/ 14
nuts /nʌts/ 30
oar /ɔː/ 18
obese /əʊˈbiːs/ 7, 30
obesity /əʊˈbiːsəti/ 30
object v /əbˈdʒekt/ 45
obligation /ˌɒblɪˈgeɪʃən/ 55, 60
obligatory /əˈblɪgətəri/ 55
oblige /əˈblaɪdʒ/ 55
observe /əbˈzɜːv/ 46
obsessive /əbˈsesɪv/ 42
obstinate /ˈɒbstɪnət/ 8
octagon 52
octagonal /ɒkˈtægənəl/ 52
odd /ɒd/ 8, 42
odd-ball /ˈɒdbɔːl/ 9
odds and ends /ɒdz ən enz/ 77
offence /əˈfents/ 39
offender /əˈfendə/ 39
off-peak /ˌɒfˈpiːk/ 74
offspring /ˈɒfsprɪŋ/ 95
oil /ɔɪl/ 83
(the) old bill 96
on board /ɒnˈbɔːd/ 31
on campus 15
on cloud nine 49
on demand 37
on strike /ɒn ˈstraɪk/ 16
on the ball 48
on the other hand /ɒn ðiː ˈʌðə ˈhænd/ 64, 67
on time /ɒn ˈtaɪm/ 31
on top form 49
on top of the world 49
onion /ˈʌnjən/ 85
online banking /ˌɒnˈlaɪn ˈbæŋkɪŋ/ 40
online gaming ˌɒnˈlaɪn ˈgeɪmɪŋ/ 35
opaque /əʊˈpeɪk/ 41
open /ˈəʊpən/ 8, 40
open-necked /ˈəʊpən nekt/ 74
open-toed /ˈəʊpən təʊd/ 74
opera /ˈɒpərə/ 20
opera house /ˈɒpərə haʊs/ 25
operate on /ˈɒpəreɪt ɒn/ 28, 29
operation /ˌɒpərˈeɪʃən/ 28, 93
operator /ˈɒpəreɪtə/ 70
oppress /əˈpres/ 72
oppression /əˈpreʃən/ 72
oppressor /əˈpresə/ 72
optimistic /ˌɒptɪˈmɪstɪk/ 8
optional /ˈɒpʃənəl/ 55
ordeal /ɔːˈdiːl/ 100
order book /ˈɔːdə bʊk/ 17
organ /ˈɔːgən/ 33
organic /ɔːˈgænɪk/ 22, 24
original əˈrɪdʒənəl/ 8, 19
ought /ɔːt/ 80
our /aʊə/ 80, 82
oust /aʊst/ 100
out and about /aʊt ən əˈbaʊt/ 77
out of breath /aʊt əv breθ/ 47
out of this world /aʊt əv ðɪs wɜːld/ 48
out of touch /aʊt əv tʌtʃ/ 2
outbreak /ˈaʊtbreɪk/ 76
outcome /ˈaʊtkʌm/ 63, 76
outgoings /ˌaʊtˈgəʊɪŋz/ 40
outlet /ˈaʊtlet/ 76
outlook /ˈaʊtlʊk/ 76
outrageous /ˌaʊtˈreɪdʒəs/ 70
outset /ˈaʊtset/ 76
outskirts /ˈaʊtskɜːts/ 25, 84
oval /ˈəʊvəl/ 52
over the moon /ˈəʊvə ðə ˈmuːn/ 79
over the top /ˌəʊvəðəˈtɒp/ 9
overalls /ˈəʊvərɔːlz/ 84
overcast /ˈəʊvəkɑːst/ 6
overcooked /ˌəʊvəˈkʊkt/ 22
overcrowding /ˌəʊvəˈkraʊdɪŋ/ 24
overdo /ˌəʊvəˈduː/ 71
overdone /ˌəʊvəˈdʌn/ 22
overdraft /ˈəʊvədrɑːft/ 40
overdrawn /ˌəʊvəˈdrɔːn/ 40
overeat /ˌəʊvərˈiːt/ 71
overfishing /ˌəʊvəˈfɪʃɪŋ/ 24
overleaf /ˌəʊvəlˈiːf/ 68
overpopulated /ˌəʊvəˈpɒpjəleɪtɪd/ 24
overpopulation /ˌəʊvəˌpɒpjəˈleɪʃən/ 24
oversleep /ˌəʊvəˈsliːp/ 71
overtired /ˌəʊvəˈtaɪəd/ 71
overweight /ˌəʊvəˈweɪt/ 7
owing to (the fact that) /əʊɪŋ tuː/ 63
owl /aʊl/ 26
owner /əʊnə/ 57
ownership /ˈəʊnəʃɪp/ 73
ozone depletion /əʊzəʊn dɪˈpliːʃən/ 24
pace /peɪs/ 58
pacemaker /ˈpeɪsˌmeɪkə/ 29
pacifist /ˈpæsɪfɪst/ 42
pack /pæk/ 87, 88
package holiday /ˈpækɪdʒ ˈhɒlədeɪ/ 32, 75
packed /pækt/ 25
packet /ˈpækɪt/ 88
paddle /ˈpædəl/ 18
page /peɪdʒ/ 35
pail /peɪl/ 82
pain /peɪn/ 28, 82
pain in the neck 9, 79
pair /peə/ 27, 82, 87
pale /peɪl/ 82
palm /pɑːm/ 80
pan /pæn/ 88
pane /peɪn/ 82
pants /pænts/ 84, 101
pantyhose /ˈpæntihəʊz/ 101
paper /ˈpeɪpə/ 85, 96
pare /peə/ 82
parents-in-law ˈpeərənts ɪn lɔː/ 10
park /pɑːk/ 80
parking lot /ˈpɑːkɪŋ ˌlɒt/ 101
parking meter /ˈpɑːkɪŋˌmiːtə/ 25
Parliament /ˈpɑːləmənt/ 38
parliamentary /ˌpɑːləˈmentəri/ 38
part and parcel 77
partner /ˈpɑːtnə/ 10
partnership /ˈpɑːtnəʃɪp/ 70, 73
part-time /ˌpɑːtˈtaɪm/ 74
party /ˈpɑːti/ 38
pass (an exam) /pɑːs/ 14
pass (a verdict) 39
passage /ˈpæsɪdʒ/ 19
passionate /ˈpæʃənət/ 44
passive /ˈpæsɪv/ 70
password /ˈpɑːswɜːd/ 2, 35
pat /pæt/ 46
paternity leave /pəˈtɜːnəti ˌliːv/ 16
patio /ˈpætiəʊ/ 11
patter /ˈpætə/ 56
pavement /ˈpeɪvmənt/ 101
paw /pɔː/ 26
pay (a fine) /peɪ/ 39
pay (a subscription) 37

payee /peɪ'iː/ 70
payment /'peɪmənt/ 40
PC /ˌpiː'siː/ 34
peace and quiet 77
peacock /'piːkɒk/ 26
peak /piːk/ 23
peal /piːl/ 82
peculiar /pɪ'kjuːliə/ 8
pedestrian crossing /pɪ'destriən 'krɒsɪŋ/ 75
peel /piːl/ 82
peeler /'piːlə/ 11
peer /pɪə/ 46
penalty /'penəlti/ 99
peninsula /pə'nɪnsjələ/ 23
pentagon /'pentəgən/ 52
pentagonal /pen'tægənəl/ 52
people /'piːpəl/ 85
pepper /'pepə/ 85
per /pɜː/ 82
perfect /'pɜːfɪkt/ 41
perform /pə'fɔːm/ 2
performance /pə'fɔːməns/ 20
performing art /pə'fɔːmɪŋ ɑːt/ 19
perfumed /pə'fjuːmd/ 46
permissive /pə'mɪsɪv/ 8
permit n /'pɜːmɪt/ 80, 99
permit v /pə'mɪt/ 80
personal /'pɜːsənəl/ 42, 38
personal computer /'pɜːsənəl kəm'pjuːtə/ 34
personality /ˌpɜːsən'ælәti/ 7
personnel /ˌpɜːsən'el/ 99
perspiration /ˌpɜːspər'eɪʃən/ 47
perspire /pə'spaɪə/ 47
pessimistic /ˌpesɪ'mɪstɪk/ 8
petal /'petəl/ 26
petrol /'petrəl/ 101
phase /feɪz/ 53, 82
PhD /ˌpiːeɪtʃ'diː/ 15
philosophy /fɪ'lɒsəfi/ 42
phone /fəʊn/ 96
phone charger /'fəʊn 'tʃɑːdʒə/ 11
photo /'fəʊtəʊ/ 36
photo frame /'fəʊtəʊ ˌfreɪm/ 33
photograph /'fəʊtəgrɑːf/ 80
photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/ 80
physical /'fɪzɪkəl/ 30
physicist /'fɪzɪsɪst/ 70
physics /'fɪzɪks/ 84
physiotherapist /ˌfɪziəʊ'θerəpɪst/ 16
pianist /'piːənɪst/ 70
piano /'pjɑːnəʊ/ 2
pick /pɪk/ 26
pick and choose 77
pick holes 48
pick out /ˌpɪk 'aʊt/ 21
pick up 28
picturesque /ˌpɪktʃər'esk/ 25, 32
piece /piːs/ 86
pigeon /'pɪdʒən/ 26
pig-headed /ˌpɪg'hedɪd/ 8
pile /paɪl/ 87
PIN /pɪn/ 78
pinstriped /'pɪnstraɪpt/ 27
pitch /pɪtʃ/ 32
plaice /pleɪs/ 82
plain /pleɪn/ 23, 27
plaster /'plɑːstə/ 28
plastic /'plæstɪk/ 83
play by ear 21
playlist /'pleɪlɪst/ 21
plea /pliː/ 100
plead /pliːd/ 39
pledge /pledʒ/ 100
pliers /'plaɪəz/ 84
plod /plɒd/ 58
plot /plɒt/ 19
ploy /plɔɪ/ 100
plug /plʌg/ 34
plumber /'plʌmə/ 16
plump /plʌmp/ 7
plus /plʌs/ 65
pneumatic /njuː'mætɪk/ 80
pocket money /'pɒkɪt 'mʌni/ 75
podcast /'pɒdkɑːst/ 37
point /pɔɪnt/ 50, 66
point of view /ˌpɔɪnt əv 'vjuː/ 42
poke /pəʊk/ 46
poke your nose into 79
polar ice cap /ˌpəʊlər 'aɪs kæp/ 24
Pole /pəʊl/ 5
pole vault /'pəʊlvɔːlt/ 18
poles apart /pəʊlz ə'pɑːt/ 64
police station /pə'liːs 'steɪʃən/ 25
policy /'pɒləsi/ 38
polished /'pɒlɪʃt/ 59
politeness /pə'laɪtnɪs/ 73
politician /ˌpɒlɪ'tɪʃən/ 38
poll /pəʊl/ 100
pollen /'pɒlən/ 28
polling day 38
polling station /'pəʊlɪŋ 'steɪʃən/ 38
pollution /pə'luːʃən/ 24, 70
pool /puːl/ 18
popular /'pɒpjələ/ 37
popularity /ˌpɒpjə'lærəti/ 73
population /ˌpɒpjə'leɪʃən/ 23, 25
pop-up /'pɒpʌp/ 2
porch /pɔːtʃ/ 11
portrait /'pɔːtrət/ 19
position /pə'zɪʃən/ 66
possession /pə'zeʃən/ 57
possibility /ˌpɒsə'bɪlәti/ 55
post /pəʊst/ 2, 36
postgraduate /ˌpəʊst'grædʒuət/ 15, 71
post-impressionist /ˌpəʊstɪm'preʃənɪst/ 71
postpone /pəʊst'pəʊn/ 72
post-war /ˌpəʊst'wɔː/ 71
pot /pɒt/ 19, 88
potato /pə'teɪtəʊ/ 85
potential /pəʊ'tenʃəl/ 17
potter /'pɒtə/ 19
pottery /'pɒtəri/ 19
pour down /pɔː daʊn/ 6
pour oil on troubled waters 50
poverty /'pɒvəti/ 83, 86
power cut /'paʊə kʌt/ 12
practice /'præktɪs/ 2, 82
praise /preɪz/ 48
pray /preɪ/ 82
precise /prɪ'saɪs/ 41
preconceived /ˌpriːkən'siːvd/ 71
pre-judge /ˌpriː'dʒʌdʒ/ 71
premises /'premɪsəz/ 84
premonition /ˌpremə'nɪʃən/ 46
present (with) 57
presenter /prɪ'zentə/ 37
President 38
presidential /ˌprezɪ'denʃəl/ 38
press /pres/ 33, 46
pretty (thick) /'prɪti/ 41
pretty as a picture 32
previously /'priːviəsli/ 61
pre-war /ˌpriː'wɔː/ 71
prey /preɪ/ 82
prickly /'prɪkli/ 59
prim and proper /prɪm ən 'prɒpə/ 77
Prime Minister /praɪm 'mɪnɪstə/ 38
principle /'prɪnsəpəl/ 73
printout /'prɪntaʊt/ 76
prior to /praɪə tuː/ 61
priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/ 17
prison /'prɪzən/ 39
privacy settings 36
private /'praɪvət/ 36
probable /'prɒbəbəl/ 55
probe /prəʊb/ 100
problem /'prɒbləm/ 33, 66
proceeds /'prəʊsiːdz/ 84
process /'prəʊses/ 30
processed /'prəʊsest/ 22, 30
produce /prə'dʒuːs/ 2, 72

product /ˈprɒdʌkt/ 2
production /prəˈdʌkʃən/ 20
productive /prəˈdʌktɪv/ 2, 70
productivity /ˌprɒdʌkˈtɪvəti/ 70
profession /prəˈfeʃən/ 16
professor /prəˈfesə/ 14
profile /ˈprəʊfaɪl/ 36
profile picture 36
profit /ˈprɒfɪt/ 17, 89
programme /ˈprəʊgræm/ 15, 37
progress n /ˈprəʊgres/ 14, 80
progress v /prəˈgres/ 80
prohibited /prəʊˈhɪbɪtɪd/ 99
project /ˈprɒdʒekt/ 14
projector /prəˈdʒektə/ 70
promote /prəˈməʊt/ 20
promotion /prəˈməʊʃən/ 70
prompt /prɒmpt/ 63
proof /pruːf/ 39
proprietor /prəˈpraɪətə/ 57
prosecute /ˈprɒsɪkjuːt/ 39, 99
prospect /ˈprɒspekt/ 72
prosthetic 29
protect /prəˈtekt/ 24
protest /prəʊˈtest/ 80
proud /praʊd/ 49
proverb /ˈprɒvɜːb/ 98
provide /prəˈvaɪd/ 57
provide s.o. with sth /prəˈvaɪd sʌmwʌn wɪð sʌmθɪŋ/ 95
provided /prəʊˈvaɪdɪd/ 62
provoke /prəˈvəʊk/ 63
PS 78
pseudo-intellectual /ˈsjuːdəʊ ˌɪntəlˈektʃuəl/ 71
pseudonym /ˈsjuːdənɪm/ 80
psychiatry /saɪˈkaɪətri/ 80
psychic /ˈsaɪkɪk/ 80
psychology /saɪˈkɒlədʒi/ 80
PTO 78
public /ˈpʌblɪk/ 36, 87
public relations officer /ˈpʌblɪk rɪˈleɪʃənz ˈɒfɪsə/ 16
public school /ˈpʌblɪk ˈskuːl/ 14
publication /ˌpʌblɪˈkeɪʃən/ 19
publishing /ˈpʌblɪʃɪŋ/ 16
pudding /ˈpʊdɪŋ/ 22
puff /pʌf/ 86
pull /pʊl/ 33
pull a fast one /pʊl ə fɑːst wʌn/ 79
pungent /ˈpʌndʒənt/ 46
punishment /ˈpʌnɪʃmənt/ 37
purchase /ˈpɜːtʃəs/ 95
purify /ˈpjʊərɪfaɪ/ 70
purpose /ˈpɜːpəs/ 63
purr /pɜː/ 82
pushy /ˈpʊʃi/ 8
put across /pʊt əˈkrɒs/ 92
put away /pʊt əˈweɪ/ 92
put down /pʊt ˈdaʊn/ 92
put forward /pʊt ˈfɔːwəd/ 17, 92
put in /pʊt ˈɪn/ 92
put in a nutshell 69
put off /pʊt ˈɒf/ 92
put on /pʊt ˈɒn/ 92
put on standby 31
put out /pʊt ˈaʊt/ 92
put two and two together /pʊt tuː ən tuː təˈgeðə/ 92
put up /pʊt ˈʌp/ 31, 92
put up with /pʊt ˈʌp wɪð/ 92
put your foot down /pʊt jə fʊt daʊn/ 92
putrid /ˈpjuːtrɪd/ 46
put-up job /ˈpʊtʌp ˈdʒɒb/ 92
pyjamas /pɪˈdʒɑːməz/ 27
pyramid 52
pyramidal /pɪˈræmɪdəl/ 52
quack /kwæk/ 96
qualify /ˈkwɒlɪfaɪ/ 18
quality /ˈkwɒləti/ 37
quantity /ˈkwɒntəti/ 30
quarrelsome /ˈkwɒrəlsəm/ 8
queue /kjuː/ 101
quick-witted /ˌkwɪkˈwɪtɪd/ 74
quid /kwɪd/ 96
quiet /kwaɪət/ 46
quit /kwɪt/ 100
quite /kwaɪt/ 43, 44
R&B /ɑːrəndˈbiː/ 21
R and R /ˌɑːrəndˈɑː/ 77
rabies /ˈreɪbiːz/ 13
race relations /reɪs rɪˈleɪʃənz/ 75
rack and ruin 77
racket /ˈrækɪt/ 18, 56
radar /ˈreɪdɑː/ 78
radical /ˈrædɪkəl/ 42
radio station /ˈreɪdiəʊ ˈsteɪʃən/ 25
radius /ˈreɪdiəs/ 52
rage /reɪdʒ/ 73
rain /reɪn/ 6, 82
rainforest /ˈreɪnˌfɒrɪst/ 24
raise money 40
RAM /ræm/ 34
random access memory 34
range /reɪndʒ/ 87
rant and rave 77
rap /ræp/ 21
rapid /ˈræpɪd/ 29
rash /ræʃ/ 28
rate /reɪt/ 36, 58
rather /ˈræðə/ 43
rave /reɪv/ 20
rays /reɪz/ 82
reach /riːtʃ/ 18, 60
react /riˈækt/ 33, 80
reaction /riˈækʃən/ 66
read music 21
readable /ˈriːdəbəl/ 70
readies /ˈredi/ 96
readiness /ˈredɪnɪs/ 70
realise /ˈrɪəlaɪz/ 60
really /ˈrɪəli/ 43, 48
rearrange /ˌriːəˈreɪndʒ/ 71
reason /ˈriːzən/ 63, 72
reasonably (good) /ˈriːzənəbli/ 41
receding /rɪˈsiːdɪŋ/ 7
receipt /rɪˈsiːt/ 80
receive /rɪˈsiːv/ 37, 80
receptionist /rɪˈsepʃənɪst/ 16
recession /rɪˈseʃən/ 17, 72
recipe /ˈresɪpi/ 80
reckon /ˈrekən/ 42
recover /rɪˈkʌvə/ 27
rectangle /ˈrektæŋgəl/ 1, 52
rectangular /rekˈtæŋgjələ/ 52
recycling /ˌriˈsaɪklɪŋ/ 24
reddish /ˈredɪʃ/ 70
red-haired /redˈheəd/ 7, 74
reduce /rɪˈdʒuːs/ 24, 30, 99
reduction /rɪˈdʌkʃən/ 70, 72
refer (s.o. to sth) /rɪˈfɜː/ 68
referee /ˌrefərˈiː/ 18
re-fill /ˌriːˈfɪl/ 22
refrain /rɪˈfreɪn/ 99
refugee /ˌrefjʊˈdʒiː/ 13
refusal /rɪˈfjuːzəl/ 70
regain /rɪˈgeɪn/ 71
regional group 2
registry office /ˈredʒɪstri ˈɒfɪs/ 25
regret /rɪˈgret/ 95
reign /reɪn/ 80
rein /reɪn/ 80, 82
reinforce /ˌriːɪnˈfɔːs/ 80
reject /rɪˈdʒekt/ 80
relationship /rɪˈleɪʃənʃɪp/ 73
relaxed /rɪˈlækst/ 8
release /rɪˈliːs/ 2, 39
reliable /rɪˈlaɪəbəl/ 8
religious /rɪˈlɪdʒəs/ 42
remote /rɪˈməʊt/ 32
remote control /rɪˈməʊt kənˈtrəʊl/ 11
renew /rɪˈnjuː/ 71
repay /rɪˈpeɪ/ 71

repayment /rɪ'peɪmənt/ 38
repel /rɪ'pel/ 44
replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ 71
replacement /rɪ'pleɪsmənt/ 70, 73
representative /ˌreprɪ'zentətɪv/ 38
reproduction /ˌriːprə'dʌkʃən/ 19
republic /rɪ'pʌblɪk/ 38
requirement /rɪ'kwaɪəmənt/ 55, 62
research /rɪ'sɜːtʃ/ 15, 83
researcher /rɪ'sɜːtʃə/ 16
reserve /rɪ'zɜːv/ 24
residence /'rezɪdəns/ 95
residential /ˌrezɪ'denʧəl/ 25
resit /ˌriː'sɪt/ 14
resolution /ˌrezə'luːʃən/ 66
respect /rɪ'spekt/ 72
response /rɪ'spɒns/ 66
rest and recreation 77
rest room /'restrʊm/ 101
restaurant /'restrɒnt/ 25
result /rɪ'zʌlt/ 63
retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ 16, 73
revert /rɪ'vɜːt/ 72
review /rɪ'vjuː/ 19, 20
revolted /rɪ'vəʊltɪd/ 44
rewrite /ˌriː'raɪt/ 71
riddle /'rɪdəl/ 100
ridge /rɪdʒ/ 23
right /raɪt/ 67, 82
right angle /'raɪt ˌæŋgəl/ 52
right-wing /ˌraɪt'wɪŋ/ 42
ring /rɪŋ/ 56
RIP 78
rise /raɪz/ 30
risk /rɪsk/ 17, 30
rite /raɪt/ 82
riveting /'rɪvətɪŋ/ 3
roadworks /'rəʊdwɜːks/ 75
roar /rɔː/ 56, 81
rob /rɒb/ 39
robbery /'rɒbəri/ 39
robotic /rəʊ'bɒtɪk/ 29
rod /rɒd/ 18
roe /rəʊ/ 82
roll out /'rəʊlaʊt/ 17
root /ruːt/ 26
rosy-cheeked /'rəʊzi tʃiːkt/ 74
rotate /rəʊ'teɪt/ 33
rough /rʌf/ 31, 59
rough and ready /ˌrʌfənd'redi/ 77
round /raʊnd/ 18
round the bend 9
round trip /raʊnd trɪp/ 101
round-faced /raʊnd feɪst/ 7
round-neck /raʊnd nek/ 27
row /rəʊ/ 82, 87
row /raʊ/ 82
RSVP 78
rubber /'rʌbə/ 101
rude /ruːd/ 8
ruin /'ruːɪn/ 12
rule /ruːl/ 38
rumble /'rʌmbəl/ 47, 56, 86
run /rʌn/ 31, 34, 38, 53, 58
run down /ˌrʌn'daʊn/ 48
run out (of) /rʌn aʊt(əv)/ 12, 94
run over /rʌn 'əʊvə/ 94
run-down /ˌrʌn'daʊn/ 25, 74
rural /'rʊərəl/ 2
rush /rʌʃ/ 58
rustle /'rʌsəl/ 56
sack /sæk 16, 88
SAD 78
sadistic /sə'dɪstɪk/ 8
sadly /'sædli/ 45
sadness /'sædnɪs/ 70
sail /seɪl/ 31, 58, 82
salmon /'sæmən/ 80
salt /sɒlt/ 85
salty /'sɔːlti/ 22, 46
sarnie /'sɑːni/ 96
satellite /'sætəlaɪt/ 37
satnav /'sætnæv/ 33, 78
savings account /'seɪvɪŋz ə'kaʊnt/ 40
savoury /'seɪvəri/ 22
say when 22
scales /skeɪlz/ 84
scandal /'skændəl/ 37
Scandinavia /ˌskændɪ'neɪviə/ 5
Scandinavian /ˌskændɪ'neɪviən/ 5
scanner /'skænə/ 29, 34
scarcity /'skeəsəti/ 70
scared out of your wits 49
scared stiff 49
scene /siːn/ 20, 39, 82
scented /'sentɪd/ 46
scholarship 15
school /skuːl/ 25
school-leaving age /skuːl 'liːvɪŋ eɪdʒ/ 14
science /'saɪənts/ 80
science fiction /'saɪənts 'fɪkʃən/ 75
scientist /'saɪəntɪst/ 16
sci-fi /'saɪ ˌfaɪ/ 78
scissors /'sɪzəz/ 84
score /skɔː/ 20
scores 51
Scotch tape /skɒtʃ teɪp/ 101
scream /skriːm/ 45
screech /skriːtʃ/ 56
screenplay /'skriːnpleɪ/ 20
script /skrɪpt/ 20
scruffy /'skrʌfi/ 7
scuba /'skuːbə/ 78
scuba diving /'skuːbə ˌdaɪvɪŋ/ 18
sculptor /'skʌlptə/ 19
sculpture /'skʌlptʃə/ 19
seal /siːl/ 26
search engine /'sɜːtʃ ˌendʒɪn/ 35
seasick /'siːsɪk/ 31
seasickness /'siːsɪknəs/ 31
seat /siːt/ 31, 38
second floor /'sekənd flɔː/ 101
second language /'sekənd 'læŋgwɪdʒ/ 5
secondly /'sekəndli/ 68
seconds /'sekəndz/ 22
secure /sɪ'kjʊə/ 60
security /sɪ'kjʊərəti/ 2
see 46
see through /'siːθruː/ 94
seek /siːk/ 95
select 38
self-assured /ˌselfə'ʃʊəd/ 8
self-catering /ˌself'keɪtərɪŋ/ 32
self-centred /ˌself'sentəd/ 74
self-contained /ˌselfkən'teɪnd/ 11
self-control /ˌselfkən'trəʊl/ 75
self-important /ˌselfɪm'pɔːtənt/ 8
sell /sel/ 17
sellotape /'seləʊteɪp/ 101
semi-circle /'semiˌsɜːkəl/ 52
semi-circular /ˌsemi'sɜːkjələ/ 71
semi-detached /ˌsemidɪ'tætʃt/ 11, 71
semi-final /ˌsemi'faɪnəl/ 18, 71
seminar /'semɪnɑː/ 15
Senate /'senɪt/ 38
send /send/ 36
sender /'sendə/ 70
sensation /sen'seɪʃən/ 37
sense /sents/ 73
sensible /'sentsəbəl/ 8
sensitive /'sentsɪtɪv/ 8
sensitivity /ˌsentsɪ'tɪvəti/ 73
sentence /'sentənts/ 39
series /'sɪəriːz/ 19, 84
serve /sɜːv/ 39, 99
server /sɜːvə/ 35
set /set/ 20, 87
set a record /set ə rɪ'kɔːd/ 18, 92
set aside /set ə'saɪd/ 92
set fire to sth /set faɪə tə sʌmθɪŋ/ 92
set foot in /set fʊt ɪn/ 92
set free /set friː/ 92

set menu /'set 'menjuː/ 22
set off /set 'ɒf/ 92
set out /set 'aʊt/ 92
set up /set 'ʌp/ 92
setting /'setɪŋ/ 19
set-up /'setʌp/ 76
severe /sɪ'vɪə/ 6, 41
severely /sɪ'vɪəli/ 31
sew /səʊ/ 82
shady /'ʃeɪdi/ 59
shake /ʃeɪk/ 13, 47
shake in your boots/shoes 49
shake-up /'ʃeɪkʌp/ 76
shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 54
share /ʃeər/ 10, 36
shark /ʃɑːk/ 26
sharp /ʃɑːp/ 8, 30
shears /ʃɪəz/ 84
shed /ʃed/ 11
shiftwork /'ʃɪftwɜːk/ 16
shine /ʃaɪn/ 56
shiny /'ʃaɪni/ 59
shiver /'ʃɪvə/ 28, 47
shoal /ʃəʊl/ 87
shoot /ʃuːt/ 37
shoplift /'ʃɒplɪft/ 39
shore /ʃɔː/ 23
short story /ˌʃɔːt 'stɔːri/ 19
shortage /'ʃɔːtɪdʒ/ 55
shortcut /'ʃɔːtkʌt/ 54
shorten /'ʃɔːtən/ 54
shorts /ʃɔːts/ 84
short-term /ˌʃɔːt'tɜːm/ 30
should /ʃʊd/ 80
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə/ 28
shout /ʃaʊt/ 45
show /ʃəʊ/ 20, 37, 95
shower /'ʃaʊwə/ 6, 86
showjumping /'ʃəʊdʒʌmpɪŋ/ 19
shrewd /ʃruːd/ 8
shriek /ʃriːk/ 45
shrink n /ʃrɪŋk/ 96
sick and tired /sɪk ən taɪəd/ 43
sick leave /'sɪk ˌliːv/ 16
sickly /'sɪkli/ 22
sickness /'sɪknɪs/ 28
side /saɪd/ 52
side dish /'saɪddɪʃ/ 22
sidewalk /'saɪdwɔːk/ 101
sigh /saɪ/ 47
sight /saɪt/ 46, 73, 82, 93
sign up /saɪn ʌp/ 2
significant /sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ 51
silent /'saɪlənt/ 46
silky /'sɪlki/ 59
silly /'sɪli/ 8
simile /'sɪmɪli/ 97
simple /'sɪmpəl/ 8
simultaneously /ˌsɪməl'teɪniəsli/ 61
since /sɪnts/ 63
sincere /sɪn'sɪə/ 8
singer /'sɪŋə/ 21
single /'sɪŋgəl/ 101
sink or swim 77
sit an exam /ˌsɪt æn ɪg'zæm/ 14
sit up /sɪt ʌp/ 50
sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/ 37
site /saɪt/ 82
situation /ˌsɪtju'eɪʃən/ 66
sixth form college 14
skating rink /'skeɪtɪŋˌrɪŋk/ 25
skilled worker /'skɪld 'wɜːkə/ 16
skin /skɪn/ 7
skinny /'skɪni/ 7
skip /skɪp/ 14
sky-blue /ˌskaɪ'bluː/ 74
Skype /skaɪp/ 36
sleek /sliːk/ 59
sleeve /sliːv/ 27
sleeveless /'sliːvləs/ 27
slice /slaɪs/ 86
slim /slɪm/ 7
slippers /'slɪpəz/ 27
slippery /'slɪpəri/ 59
slow /sləʊ/ 12, 30
slowly but surely 77
slum /slʌm/ 24
sly /slaɪ/ 8
small talk /smɔːl tɔːk/ 69
smart /smɑːt/ 7
smartphone /'smɑːtfəʊn/ 33
smash /smæʃ/ 12, 81
smell /smel/ 46
smog /smɒg/ 24
smooth /smuːð/ 59
smoothly 31
smuggle /'smʌgəl/ 39
snail /sneɪl/ 26
snatch /snætʃ/ 46
sneeze /sniːz/ 47
snooker /'snuːkə/ 18
snore /snɔː/ 47
snowboarding /'snəʊbɔːdɪŋ/ 18
so /səʊ/ 82
so on /səʊ ɒn/ 65
soap /səʊp/ 37
so-called /ˌsəʊ'kɔːld/ 74
sociable /'səʊʃəbəl/ 8
social network /'səʊʃəl 'netwɜːk/ 2
social networking site /'səʊʃəl 'netwɜːkɪŋ ˌsaɪt/ 35
socialist /'səʊʃəlɪst/ 42
socket /'sɒkɪt/ 11
soften /'sɒfən/ 80
software /'sɒftweə/ 33, 83
soil /sɔɪl/ 33
sole /səʊl/ 27, 82
solid /'sɒlɪd/ 41, 59
solidify /sə'lɪdɪfaɪ/ 41
solution /sə'luːʃən/ 66
sombre /'sɒmbə/ 31, 56
sonar /'səʊnɑː/ 78
sooner or later 77
sophisticated /sə'fɪstɪkeɪtɪd/ 29
sore throat /ˌsɔː 'θrəʊt/ 28
sorry /'sɒri/ 80
sort of /'sɔːt ɒv/ 67
soul /səʊl/ 82
sound /saʊnd/ 46, 56
sound barrier /saʊnd 'bæriə/ 75
soundtrack /'saʊndtræk/ 21
sour /'saʊə/ 22, 46
source /sɔːs/ 23, 30
South America /saʊθ ə'merɪkə/ 5
Southern Africa /'sʌðən 'æfrɪkə/ 5
Southern African /'sʌðən 'æfrɪkən/ 5
sow /səʊ/ 82
spacious /'speɪʃəs/ 25
spaghetti /spə'geti/ 83, 84
spam /spæm/ 2
Spaniard /'spænjəd/ 5
spark off /spɑːk ɒf/ 63
sparkle /'spɑːkəl/ 56
sparse /spɑːs/ 59
speak your mind 69
special /'speʃəl/ 22
species /'spiːʃiːz/ 24
spectacles /'spektəkəlz/ 29, 84
spectator /spek'teɪtə/ 18
speed /spiːd/ 58, 73
spell /spel/ 53, 86
sphere /sfɪə/ 52
spherical /'sferɪkəl/ 52
spicy /'spaɪsi/ 22, 46
spill /spɪl/ 12
spiral /'spaɪrəl/ 52
spit out /spɪt aʊt/ 81
splash /splæʃ/ 81
sponsor /'spɒntsə/ 57
sports /spɔːts/ 18, 37
sports centre /spɔːts 'sentə/ 25
spot /spɒt/ 28, 86

spotted /spɒtɪd/ 27
sprain /spreɪn/ 28
spray /spreɪ/ 81
spread /spred/ 13, 54
spreadsheet /'spredʃiːt/ 34
sprinkle /'sprɪŋkəl/ 81
sprinter /'sprɪntə/ 18
spud /spʌd/ 96
spurt /spɜːt/ 81
squaddie /'skwɒdi/ 96
square /skweə/ 52
squash player 18
stack /stæk/ 87
staff /stɑːf/ 15, 87
stage /steɪdʒ/ 20, 53
stain /steɪn/ 12
stairs /steəz/ 84
stake /steɪk/ 82
stammer /'stæmə/ 45
stand /stænd/ 38
standstill /'stændstɪl/ 93
stapler /'steɪplə/ 70
stardom /'stɑːdəm/ 73
stare /steə/ 46
start /stɑːt/ 12
start the ball rolling 69
starter /stɑːtə/ 22
starve /stɑːv/ 13
state /steɪt/ 86
stationary /'steɪʃənəri/ 95
statue /'stætʃuː/ 19
status /'steɪtəs/ 36
steady /'stedi/ 10, 40
steak /steɪk/ 82
steal /stiːl/ 37
steering wheel /'stɪərɪŋ ˌwiːl/ 75
stem /stem/ 26
stem cell research /'stem ˌsel rɪ'sɜːtʃ/ 33
stem from /stem frɒm/ 63
stick /stɪk/ 18
stiff /stɪf/ 17, 41
stifling /'staɪflɪŋ/ 6
still /stɪl/ 67
still life /stɪl laɪf/ 19
stingy /'stɪndʒi/ 8
stinking /'stɪŋkɪŋ/ 46
stir /stɜː/ 58
stir things up 50
stocky /'stɒki/ 7
stodgy /'stɒdʒi/ 22
stomach /'stʌmək/ 1
stone /stəʊn/ 83
Stone Age /'stəʊn ˌeɪdʒ/ 53
stop /stɒp/ 12, 93
store /stɔː/ 34
storm /stɔːm/ 80
stout /staʊt/ 7
straight /streɪt/ 7
stream /striːm/ 21, 23, 37
streets ahead 48
strength /streŋkθ/ 73
stress /stres/ 29
stressed /strest/ 28
stressed out /strest aʊt/ 8
stressful /'stresfʊl/ 29
stretch /stretʃ/ 54
strife /straɪf/ 100
striped /straɪpt/ 27
stroke /strəʊk/ 28, 46, 86
strong /strɒŋ/ 6, 41, 42
structure /'strʌktʃə/ 33
strum /strʌm/ 2
stubborn /'stʌbən/ 8
stuck /stʌk/ 31
stuck-up /ˌstʌk'ʌp/ 74
student loan 15
student society 15
student union 15
studio /'stjuːdiəʊ/ 11
studio flat /'stjuːdiəʊ flæt/ 11
stuff /stʌf/ 85
stunning /stʌnɪŋ/ 7, 32
stupid /'stjuːpɪd/ 8
sturdy /'stɜːdi/ 41
stutter /'stʌtə/ 45
subdivision /ˌsʌbdɪ'vɪʒən/ 71
submarine /ˌsʌbmər'iːn/ 71
submit /səb'mɪt/ 14, 15
subscribe /səb'skraɪb/ 35, 36, 37
subsequently /'sʌbsɪkwəntli/ 61
substance /'sʌbstənts/ 23
substantial /səb'stæntʃəl/ 51
subtitles /'sʌbˌtaɪtəlz/ 37
subtle /'sʌtəl/ 80
subtraction /səb'trækʃən/ 52
suburbs /'sʌbɜːbz/ 25
subway /'sʌbweɪ/ 71, 101
succeed /sək'siːd/ 60
success /sək'ses/ 60, 89
successful /sək'sesfəl/ 60
successfully /sək'sesfəli/ 60
suck /sʌk/ 47
suede /sweɪd/ 27
suffer /'sʌfə/ 13, 28, 31
sugar-free /'ʃʊgə friː/ 74
sugary /'ʃʊgəri/ 22
suggest /sə'dʒest/ 3
suggestion /sə'dʒestʃən/ 89
suit /suːt/ 27
sum /sʌm/ 82
sum up /sʌm ʌp/ 68
summit /'sʌmɪt/ 23
sunburn /'sʌnbɜːn/ 28
sunburnt /'sʌn.bɜːnd/ 7
sunglasses /'sʌnˌglɑːsɪz/ 75
suntanned /'sʌntænd/ 74
superfood /'suːpəfuːd/ 30
supervisor /'suːpəvaɪzə/ 16, 70
supply /sʌ'plaɪ/ 3, 57
support /sə'pɔːt/ 57, 72
supposing /sə'pəʊz/ 62
surf the Internet /sɜːf ðiː 'ɪntənet/ 2, 35
surface /'sɜːfɪs/ 59
surrounding /sə'raʊndɪŋ/ 32
survivor /sə'vaɪvə/ 13
suspect n /'sʌspekt/ 39, 80
suspect v /sə'spekt/ 39, 42, 80
swallow /'swɒləʊ/ 47
swarm /swɔːm/ 87
sway /sweɪ/ 58
sweat /swet/ 47
Swede /swiːd/ 5
sweep /swiːp/ 13
sweep under the carpet 50
sweet /swiːt/ 22, 46
sweets /swiːts/ 101
sweet-smelling /'swiːt 'smelɪŋ/ 46
swell with pride 49
swerve /swɜːv/ 58
swimmer /'swɪmə/ 18
swimming pool /'swɪmɪŋ ˌpuːl/ 25
swimming trunks /'swɪmɪŋ ˌtrʌŋks/ 84
Swiss /swɪs/ 5
sword /sɔːd/ 80
sync /sɪŋk/ 21
synchronise /'sɪŋkrənaɪz/ 21
table mat /'teɪbəlmæt/ 11
tablet /'tæblət/ 28
tablet (computer) /'tæblət/ 33, 34
tabloid /'tæblɔɪd/ 37
tag /tæg/ 10, 36
tail /teɪl/ 26
take a back seat 50
take a deep breath /teɪk ə diːp breθ/ 47
take a risk /teɪk ə rɪsk/ 90
take advantage of /teɪk əd'vɑːntɪdʒ ɒv/ 90
take after /teɪk 'ɑːftə/ 90
take an exam /teɪk 'æn ɪg'zæm/ 14
take back /teɪk bæk/ 90
take control /teɪk kən'trəʊl/ 90

take everything as it comes 49
take in /teɪk ɪn/ 27, 90
take it or leave it /ˌteɪkɪtɔːˈliːvɪt/ 77
take notice 50
take off /teɪk ˈɒf/ 90
take on /teɪk ˈɒn/ 16, 90
take over /ˌteɪk ˈəʊvə/ 90
take place /teɪk pleɪs/ 90
take s.o./sth for granted /teɪk sʌmwʌn/sʌmθɪŋ fɔː grɑːntɪd/ 90
take the biscuit 48, 79
take the bull by the horns 50
take up /teɪk ˈʌp/ 27, 90
take-away /ˈteɪkəweɪ/ 25
takeover /ˈteɪkˌəʊvə/ 76
talented /ˈtæləntɪd/ 8, 21
talk /tɔːk/ 80
talk at cross-purposes 69
talk behind sb's back 69
talk down to s.o. /ˌtɔːk ˈdaʊn tə ˈsʌmwʌn/ 69
talk rubbish 69
talk sense 69
talk shop 69
talk show /tɔːk ʃəʊ/ 37
talking point /ˈtɔːkɪŋ ˌpɔɪnt/ 69
talks /tɔːks/ 100
tallish /ˈtɔːlɪʃ/ 7
tan /tæn/ 7
tap /tæp/ 46
target /ˈtɑːgɪt/ 60, 92
tart /tɑːt/ 80
tartan /ˈtɑːtən/ 27
taste /teɪst/ 21, 46
tasteful /ˈteɪstfəl/ 46
tasteless /ˈteɪstləs/ 22, 46
tasty /ˈteɪsti/ 22, 46
taxi rank /ˈtæksi ræŋk/ 25
tea /tiː/ 85
tea bag /ˈtiː bæg/ 75
teacher /ˈtiːtʃə/ 80
teacher's pet /ˈtiːtʃəz pet/ 9
teacher-training college /ˈtiːtʃə ˈtreɪnɪŋ ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ 14
team /tiːm/ 80, 87
teaspoonful /ˈtiːspuːnfʊl/ 28
tech /tek/ 96
tee /tiː/ 82
telepathy /tɪˈlepəθi/ 46
telephone /ˈtelɪfəʊn/ 80
telephony /tɪˈlefəni/ 80
televise /ˈtelɪvaɪz/ 37
telly /ˈteli/ 96
temperature /ˈtemprətʃə/ 28
temptation /tempˈteɪʃən/ 73
tenant /ˈtenənt/ 57
tennis courts /ˈtenɪs kɔːts/ 25
tennis player /ˈtenɪs ˈpleɪə/ 18
ten-pin bowling /ˈten pɪn ˈbəʊlɪŋ/ 18
tense /tents/ 8
tension /ˈtentʃən/ 86
tent /tent/ 31
term /tɜːm/ 38
terminal /ˈtɜːmɪnəl/ 30
terrace /ˈterɪs/ 11
terraced /ˈterɪst/ 11
terrify /ˈterəfaɪ/ 70
terrifying /ˈterəfaɪɪŋ/ 32
terrorism /ˈterərɪzəm/ 39
terrorist /ˈterərɪst/ 70
texture /ˈtekstʃə/ 59
Thai /taɪ/ 5
thankful /ˈθæŋkfəl/ 43
thaw /θɔː/ 6
The Antarctic /ðiː ænˈtɑːktɪk/ 5
The Arctic /ðiː ˈɑːktɪk/ 5
The Atlantic /ðiː ətˈlæntɪk/ 5
the BBC /ðə ˌbiːbiːˈsiː/ 78
The Caribbean /ðə ˌkærɪˈbiːən/ 5
the CIA /ðə ˌsiːaɪˈeɪ/ 78
The Commonwealth /ðə ˈkɒmənwelθ/ 5
The EU /ðiː ˌiːˈjuː/ 5, 78
The European Union /ðə ˌjʊərəˈpiːən ˈjuːnjən/ 5
The Far East /ðə fɑːr iːst/ 5
the FBI 78
The Indian Ocean /ðiː ˈɪndiən ˈəʊʃən/ 5
the media 37
The Mediterranean /ðə ˌmedɪtərˈeɪniən/ 5
The Middle East /ðə ˈmɪdəl iːst/ 5
The Netherlands /ðə ˈneðələndz/ 5
The Pacific /ðə pəˈsɪfɪk/ 5
The Philippines /ðə ˈfɪlɪpiːnz/ 5
The UAE /ðə ˌjuːeɪˈiː/ 5
The UK /ðə ˌjuːˈkeɪ/ 5
The United Arab Emirates /ðə juːˈnaɪtɪd ˈærəb ˈemɪrəts/ 5
The United Kingdom /ðə juːˈnaɪtɪd ˈkɪŋdəm/ 5
The United States /ðə juːˈnaɪtɪd steɪts/ 5
The US(A) /ðə ˈjuːes(eɪ)/ 5
theatre /ˈθɪətə/ 20, 25
theft /θeft/ 37
their /ðeə/ 82
theory /ˈθɪəri/ 33
there /ðeə/ 82
thereafter /ˌðeəˈrɑːftə/ 61
thermal /ˈθɜːməl/ 23
thermometer /θəˈmɒmɪtə/ 29
thesis /ˈθiːsɪs/ 15
they're /ðeə/ 82
thick /θɪk/ 8, 59
thin /θɪn/ 59
thin-faced /θɪn feɪst/ 7
thin-lipped /θɪn lɪpt/ 74
things are looking up 49
third language 5
thirdly /ˈθɜːdli/ 68
thirtyish /ˈθɜːtiɪʃ/ 7
thorn /θɔːn/ 26
thought /θɔːt/ 73
threat /θret/ 100
threaten /ˈθretən/ 45
threw /θruː/ 82
thrifty /ˈθrɪfti/ 8
thrilled /θrɪld/ 43
through /θruː/ 82
throughout /θruˈaʊt/ 61
throw (a pot) /θrəʊ/ 19
throw a wobbly 49
thud /θʌd/ 56
tide /taɪd/ 50
tight corner 50
tight-fisted /ˌtaɪtˈfɪstɪd/ 8
tight-fitting /ˌtaɪt ˈfɪtɪŋ/ 74
tights /taɪts/ 84, 101
time /taɪm/ 53, 85
time off /taɪm ɒf/ 39
time-consuming /ˈtaɪmkənˌsjuːmɪŋ/ 74
timeless /ˈtaɪmləs/ 53
timeline 36
times /taɪmz/ 52
tin /tɪn/ 88
tin opener /ˈtɪn ˈəʊpənə/ 75
tiny /ˈtaɪni/ 51
tire /taɪə/ 82
to and fro /ˌtuːənd ˈfrəʊ/ 2, 77
to boot 65
toe /təʊ/ 82
toilet /ˈtɔɪlət/ 101
toilet roll /ˈtɔɪlət ˌrəʊl/ 11
tomb /tuːm/ 80
tongs /tɒŋz/ 84
tons /tʌns/ 51
tool /tuːl/ 29
top of the class 9
topic /ˈtɒpɪk/ 66
top-notch /ˌtɒpˈnɒtʃ/ 46
top-secret /ˌtɒp ˈsiːkrət/ 74

torch /tɔːtʃ/ 101
tornado /tɔː'neɪdəʊ/ 13
torrential rain /tə'rentʃəl 'reɪn/ 6
total /'təʊtəl/ 51
totally /'təʊtəli/ 51
touch /tʌtʃ/ 46
tough /tʌf/ 41
tow /təʊ/ 82
town /taʊn/ 25
Town Hall 25
track /træk/ 2, 21
trade /treɪd/ 16
trademark /'treɪdmɑːk/ 75
traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/ 33, 42
traffic jam /'træfɪk ˌdʒæm/ 24
traffic lights /'træfɪk ˌlaɪts/ 75, 84
traffic system /'træfɪk 'sɪstəm/ 25
trained /treɪnd/ 21
transfer n /'trænsfɜː/ 80
transfer v /træn'sfɜː/ 40
transparent /trænt'spærənt/ 41
transport n /'trænspɔːt/ 83, 80
transport v /træn'spɔːt/ 72, 80
trash /træʃ/ 101
travel /'trævəl/ 31, 58
treat /triːt/ 29
tremble /'trembəl/ 28, 47
trespasser /'trespəsə/ 99
trial /'traɪəl/ 39
triangle 52
triangular /traɪ'æŋgjələ/ 52
tributary /'trɪbjətəri/ 23
trip /trɪp/ 12, 31
trivial /'trɪviəl/ 41
trivialise /'trɪviəlaɪz/ 41
trophy /'trəʊfi/ 18
tropical ?trɒp?kəl 6
tropical storm /'trɒpɪkəl 'stɔːm/ 13
trousers /'traʊzəz/ 84, 101
truck /trʌk/ 101
trunk /trʌŋk/ 26, 101
trunks /trʌŋks/ 84
trustworthy /'trʌstˌwɜːði/ 8
try /traɪ/ 39
try on /traɪ 'ɒn/ 27
tub /tʌb/ 88
tube /tʃuːb/ 86, 88, 96
tuition fee 15
tune /tʃuːn/ 21
turbulence 31
Turk /tɜːk/ 5
turn down /tɜːn 'daʊn/ 94
turn out /tɜːn 'aʊt/ 94
turn up /tɜːn 'ʌp/ 94
turning point 50
turnover /'tɜːnˌəʊvə/ 76
tutor /'tʃuːtə/ 15
tutorial /tʃuː'tɔːriəl/ 15
tweet /twiːt/ 37, 81
tweezers /'twiːzəz/ 84
twig /twɪg/ 26
twinkle /'twɪŋkəl/ 56
twist /twɪst/ 12
two-faced /ˌtuː'feɪst/ 74
typhoid /'taɪfɔɪd/ 13
typhoon /taɪ'fuːn/ 13
typist /'taɪpɪst/ 70
tyre /'taɪə/ 82
unaccompanied /ˌʌnə'kʌmpənid/ 99
unattractive /ˌʌnə'træktɪv/ 7
unauthorised /ʌn'ɔːθəraɪzd/ 99
unbend /ʌn'bend/ 71
uncertainty /ʌn'sɜːtənti/ 86
unconventional /ˌʌnkən'venʃənəl/ 8
under the weather 49
undercooked /ˌʌndə'kʊkt/ 22, 71
underdone /ˌʌndə'dʌn/ 22
underfoot /ˌʌndə'fʊt/ 59
undergraduate 15
underground /'ʌndəgraʊnd/ 101
underpants /'ʌndəpænts/ 84, 101
undershirt /'ʌndəʃɜːt/ 101
underused /ˌʌndə'juːzd/ 71
underworked /ˌʌndə'wɜːkt/ 71
undo /ʌn'duː/ 34, 71
undress /ʌn'dres/ 71
unfair /ʌn'feə/ 71
unfold /ʌn'fəʊld/ 71
unfriend /ˌʌn'frend/ 2, 10
uni /'juːni/ 78
union representative /'juːnjən ˌreprɪ'zentətɪv/ 16
unique /juː'niːk/ 32
university /ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsəti/ 14, 25
unless /ən'les/ 62
unload /ʌn'ləʊd/ 71
unlock /ʌn'lɒk/ 71
unnatural /ʌn'nætʃərəl/ 71
unprincipled /ʌn'prɪntsəpəld/ 8
unripe /ʌn'raɪp/ 22
unskilled worker /ʌn'skɪld 'wɜːkə/ 16
unspoilt /ʌn'spɔɪlt/ 32
untidy-looking /ʌn'taɪdi 'lʊkɪŋ/ 7
untie /ʌn'taɪ/ 71
until /ən'tɪl/ 95
unusually (strong) /ʌn'juːʒəli/ 41
unveil /ʌn'veɪl/ 71
unwrap /ʌn'ræp/ 71
unzip /ʌn'zɪp/ 71
up and down /ˌʌpənd'daʊn/ 77
update n, v /ʌp'deɪt/ 36
upgrade /ʌp'greɪd/ 34
upload /ʌp'ləʊd/ 2, 36
upset adj, v /ʌp'set/ 8, 43, 80
upset n /'ʌpset/ 80
upshot /'ʌpʃɒt/ 63
urban /'ɜːbən/ 2
urge /ɜːdʒ/ 45
use /juːz/ 82, 95
use /juːs/ 82
used to have 7
useful /'juːsfəl/ 70
useless /'juːsləs/ 70
username /'juːzəneɪm/ 35
utilise /'juːtɪlaɪz/ 33, 95
utility room /juː'tɪləti ˌruːm/ 11
utter /'ʌtə/ 51
utterly /'ʌtəli/ 51
vacation /və'keɪʃən/ 101
valley /'væli/ 23
vast /vɑːst/ 29, 51
VAT /ˌviː eɪ 'tiː/ 40
vegan /'viːgən/ 22
vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/ 80
vegetarian /ˌvedʒɪ'teəriən/ 42
vehicle /'vɪəkəl/ 99
velocity /vɪ'lɒsəti/ 58
venue /'venjuː/ 20
verdict /'vɜːdɪkt/ 39
very (time/moment) 61
vest /vest/ 101
vet /vet/ 96
victim /'vɪktɪm/ 13, 39
view /vjuː/ 36, 42, 66, 93
viewer /'vjuːə/ 20
villa /'vɪlə/ 11
violinist /vaɪə'lɪnɪst/ 70
virtual reality /'vɜːtʃuəl ri'æləti/ 35
virus /'vaɪərəs/ 28, 34
vision /'vɪʒən/ 29
vitamin /'vɪtəmɪn/ 30
vivid /'vɪvɪd/ 41, 59
VLE 14
V-neck /'viːnek/ 27
voice mail /'vɔɪsmeɪl/ 75
voice technology /'vɔɪs tek'nɒlədʒi/ 33
volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 13, 23
vote /vəʊt/ 38
vow /vaʊ/ 100
voyage /'vɔɪjɪdʒ/ 31
waist /weɪst/ 82
waistcoat /'weɪstkəʊt/ 101
wait /weɪt/ 82
walkout /'wɔːkaʊt/ 76

wander /ˈwɒndə/ 80
war /wɔː 13, 89
wardrobe /ˈwɔːdrəʊb/ 101
warm-hearted /ˌwɔːmˈhɑːtɪd/ 74
warmth /wɔːmpθ/ 73
wash /ˈwɒʃ/ 101
wash up /ˌwɒʃ ˈʌp/ 101
washable /wɒʃəbəl/ 70
waste /weɪst/ 24, 82
water /ˈwɔːtə/ 80
water pollution /ˈwɔːtə pəˈluːʃən/ 24
waterfall /ˈwɔːtəfɔːl/ 23
wavy /ˈweɪvi/ 7
wavy-haired /ˈweɪvi ˈheəd/ 74
way out /ˌweɪˈaʊt/ 66
(a) way with 48
WC /ˌdʌbəljuːˈsiː/ 101
weak /wiːk/ 41, 82
weakness /ˈwiːknəs/ 70, 73
wealth /welθ/ 83
weather /ˈweðə/ 82, 83
weather forecast /ˈweðə ˈfɔːkɑːst/ 37
(the) Web 35
webcam /ˈwebkæm/ 35
website /ˈwebsaɪt/ 35
wed /wed/ 100
week /wiːk/ 82
weight /weɪt/ 59, 82
weird /wɪəd/ 8, 42
welfare state /ˈwelfeə ˈsteɪt/ 75
well /wel/ 67
well-built /ˌwelˈbɪlt/ 7
well-dressed /wel ˈdrest/ 7, 74
well-off /ˌwelˈɒf/ 74
whale /weɪl/ 26
what if 62
what's more 65
what's on (at) 20
wheel /wiːl/ 33
wheelchair /ˈwiːltʃeə/ 28
wheeze /wiːz/ 81
When! /wen/ 22
whereabouts /ˌweərəˈbaʊts/ 84
wherever /weəˈrevə/ 62
whether /ˈweðə/ 82
whichever /wɪˈtʃevə/ 62
whine /waɪn/ 82
whiskers /ˈwɪskəz/ 26
whisper /ˈwɪspə/ 45
whistle /ˈwɪsəl/ 80, 81
white /waɪt/ 7
whizz /wɪz/ 81
WHO /ˌdʌbəljuːˌeɪtʃˈəʊ/ 78
whoever /huːˈevə/ 62
wholemeal /ˈhəʊlmiːl/ 30
wholly /ˈhəʊli/ 51
wide /waɪd/ 54
widen /ˈwaɪdən/ 54
width /wɪtθ/ 54, 73
wi-fi /ˈwaɪfaɪ/ 35
wiki /ˈwɪki/ 35
win 2
wind /waɪnd/ 82
wind /wɪnd/ 6, 82
winding /ˈwaɪndɪŋ/ 32
windscreen /ˈwɪndskriːn/ 75
windscreen wiper /ˈwɪndskriːn ˌwaɪpə/ 75
windsurfing /ˈwɪndsɜːfɪŋ/ 18
wine /waɪn/ 82
wine and dine 77
wing /wɪŋ/ 26
wink /wɪŋk/ 47
wireless /ˈwaɪələs/ 35
wisdom /ˈwɪzdəm/ 73
witness /ˈwɪtnəs/ 39, 46
womanhood /ˈwʊmənhʊd/ 73
womb /wuːm/ 80
wood /wʊd/ 83
woollen /ˈwʊlən/ 27
(a) word in edgeways 69
word-processing /ˈwɜːdˌprəʊsesɪŋ/ 34
work /wɜːk/ 12, 16, 85
work nine-to-five 16
work of art /ˌwɜːk əv ˈɑːt/ 19
work shifts 16
workaholic /ˌwɜːkəˈhɒlɪk/ 16
worked-up /wɜːkt ʌp/ 8
workout /ˈwɜːkaʊt/ 76
workshop /ˈwɜːkʃɒp/ 14
world /wɜːld/ 2
world's worst 48
World Wide Web /ˈwɜːldwaɪd web/ 35
world-famous /ˌwɜːldˈfeɪməs/ 74
worldwide /ˌwɜːldˈwaɪd/ 24
worm /wɜːm/ 26
worn-out /ˌwɔːnˈaʊt/ 74
would /wʊd/ 80, 82
wound /wuːnd/ 82
wounded /wuːndɪd/ 13
wound up /ˈwaʊnd ʌp/ 8
wrap up (the discussion) /ræp ʌp/ 69
wrinkles /ˈrɪŋkəlz/ 7
wrist 28
wrong end of the stick 69, 79
X-ray /ˈeksreɪ/ 29
yacht /jɒt/ 30
yard /jɑːd/ 101
yawn /jɔːn/ 47
yawning (gap) /jɔːnɪŋ/ 64
yearn for /jɜːn fɔː/ 44
you know /jəˈnəʊ/ 67
you see /jəˈsiː/ 67
youth hostel /ˈjuːθ ˈhɒstəl/ 25, 32, 75
zebra crossing /ˈzebrə ˈkrɒsɪŋ/ 101
zip /zɪp/ 27

Acknowledgements

The authors & publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material & are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting & in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

The publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright photographs & material.

Key: B = Below, BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, BC = Below Centre, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, L = Left, R = Right, T = Top, TR = Top Right, TL = Top Left.

Photographs

All the photographs are sourced from GettyImages.

p. 15: M G Therin Weise/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 18 (TL): Anton Petrus/Moment; p. 18 (TR): Adam Burton/AWL Images; p. 18 (BL): Dave Reede/All Canada Photos; p. 18 (BR): Luca OrsiniEyeEm/EyeEm; p. 18 (Ex 6.b): Marco Simoni/AWL Images; p. 19 (Ex 6.2.1): Gary Williams/Hulton Archive; p. 19 (Ex 6.2.2): Jeff J Mitchell/Getty Images News; p. 19 (Ex 6.2.3): Martin Barraud/Caiaimage; p. 19 (Ex 6.2.4): Claver Carroll/Photolibrary; p. 20 (photo 1): Mike Harrington/Stone; p. 20 (photo 2): Dougal Waters/DigitalVision; p. 20 (photo 3), p. 152 & p. 184 (B): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images; p. 20 (photo 4): PhotoAlto/Frederic Cirou/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections; p. 20 (photo 5): Nick Dolding/Stone; p. 20 (photo 6): J Shepherd/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 20 (photo 7): Glowimages; p. 20 (photo 8): PhotoAlto/Odilon Dimier/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections; p. 28 (photo 1) & p. 61 (Ex 27.4.5): Image Source; p. 28 (photo 2): Ralph125/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 28 (photo 3): georgeclerk/E+; p. 28 (photo 4): pamspix/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 30 (photo 1): Rubberball/Mike Kemp/Brand X Pictures; p. 30 (photo 2): photo division/Radius Images; p. 30 (photo 3): Jupiterimages/PHOTOS.com/Getty Images Plus; p. 30 (photo 4): OutSaider/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 32 (earthquake): VCGStringer/Getty Images News; p. 32 (flood): Christopher Furlong/Getty Images News; p. 32 (drought): Chris SternEyeEm/EyeEm; p. 32 (volcano): Sebastián Crespo Photography/Moment; p. 34 (T), p. 116 (T) & p. 168 (BC): Chris Ryan/OJO+; p. 34 (B): Echo/Juice Images; p. 36 (BL): asiseeit/E+; p. 36 (BC), p. 44 (BR), p. 60 (badge), p. 60 (slippers) & p. 63 (Ex 28.4.c): Peter Dazeley/Photographer's Choice; p. 36 (BR): Compassionate Eye Foundation/Martin Barraud/Taxi; p. 36 (TL): Tony Shi Photography/Moment; p. 36 (T) & p. 100 (T): ullstein bild; p. 36 (TR) & p. 130: monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.4.1): Cultura RM Exclusive/Tim MacPherson/Cultura Exclusive; p. 39 (Ex 16.4.2): Michael Kelley/Stone; p. 39 (Ex 16.4.3): Wavebreakmedia Ltd/Wavebreak MediaGetty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.4.4): simazoran/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.4.5): gzorgz/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 39 (Ex 16.4.6): Erik Dreyer/Stone; p. 40: Caiaimage/Chris Cross; p. 44 (T): pagadesign/E+; p. 44 (BL): James Darell/DigitalVision; p. 45 (Ex 19.2.1): DEAA. DAGLI ORTI/De Agostini Picture Library; p. 45 (Ex 19.2.2): mitza/E+; p. 45 (Ex 19.2.3): Don Farrall/DigitalVision; p. 45 (Ex 19.2.4): akaplummer/E+; p. 46: Jupiterimages/Photolibrary; p. 48 (T): fmajor/E+; p. 48 (B): PeopleImages/E+; p. 49: Yuri Arcurs; p. 50: Bloomberg/Bloomberg; p. 54: Marcaux/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 56: Richard Cumminsrobertharding/robertharding; p. 57: Ruth Tomlinson/robertharding/robertharding; p. 58 (frog): Gerhard Schulz/Photographer's Choice; p. 58 (owl): Les Stocker/Oxford Scientific; p. 58 (whale): Fleetham Dave/Perspectives; p. 58 (fox): Life On White/Photographer's Choice; p. 58 (snail): Iride PierettiEyeEm/EyeEm; p. 58 (shark): DEAC. RIVES/De Agostini; p. 58 (crab): David Bishop Inc./Photolibrary; p. 58 (bat): Panoramic Images/Panoramic Images; p. 58 (pigeon): Life On White/Stockbyte; p. 58 (worm) & p. 209 (torch): Dorling Kindersley; p. 58 (peacock): cynoclub/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 58 (deer): Per-Gunnar Ostby/Oxford Scientific; p. 58 (seal), p. 168 (cow), p. 168 (bird) & p. 169 (goat): GlobalP/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 59 (tulip): Cora Niele/Photolibrary; p. 59 (maple leaf): mihalec/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 59 (pyjama): madtwinsis/E+; p. 60 (bikini): Creative Crop/Photodisc; p. 60 (bra): Kai_Wong/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 60 (belt) & p. 177 (paper): Andy Crawford/Dorling Kindersley; p. 60 (shoe): Sjo/E+; p. 60 (zip): prmustafa/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 60 (helmet): Vincenzo Lombardo/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 60 (hoodie): Jitalia17/E+; p. 60 (pinstriped): ClaudioVentrella/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 60 (spotted): Howard Shooter/Dorling Kindersley; p. 60 (plain): NaokiKim/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 60 (striped): Malsveta/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 60 (checked): hudiemm/E+; p. 60 (flowery): monaMonash/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 60 (tartan): Steve Gorton/Dorling Kindersley; p. 61 (Ex 27.4.1): Michael Blann/Stone; p. 61 (Ex 27.4.2): BJIBlue Jean Images; p. 61 (Ex 27.4.3): PhotoGraphyKM/E+; p. 61 (Ex 27.4.4): Creativeye99/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 63 (Ex 28.4.a): PetarSet/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 63 (Ex 28.4.b): Richard Ross/The Image Bank; p. 63 (Ex 28.4.d): robeo/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 63 (Ex 28.4.e): Pedro antonio Salaverría calahorra/HemeraGetty Images Plus; p. 63 (Ex 28.4.f): ironstealth/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 64 (photo 1): thumb/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 64 (photo 2): albert mollon/Moment; p. 64 (photo 3): RichLegg/E+; p. 64 (photo 4): David S. Holloway/Getty Images News; p. 64 (photo 5): Ociacia/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 65 (Ex 29.3.1): AndreyPopov/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 65 (Ex 29.3.2): Tetra Images; p. 65 (Ex 29.3.3): Marcin Smirnow/HemeraGetty Images Plus; p. 65 (Ex 29.3.4): deepblue4you/E+; p. 65 (Ex 29.3.6): stevedangers/E+; p. 66: Daniel Hurst Photography/Moment; p. 70 (T): wweagle/E+; p. 70 (B): Rickson Liebano/Moment; p. 72 (smartphone): UmbertoPantalone/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 72 (tablet): Jeffrey Coolidge/DigitalVision; p. 72 (television): AndrewJohnson/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 72 (camcorder): lleerogers/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 72 (satnav): Tony Cordoza/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 72 (photo frame): petekarici/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 74: NKS_Imagery/E+; p. 75 (scanner): JackF/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 75 (spreadsheet): jasantiso/E+; p. 75 (laptop): scanrail/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 75 (memory stick): Krasyuk/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 75 (computer): f9photos/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 75 (delete icon): ARNICAart/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 75 (cursor): srdjan111/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 75 (tablet): Oleksiy Maksymenko/All Canada Photos; p. 75 (microchip): grafvision/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 76 (T): apostol_8/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 76 (B): Datacraft Co Ltd; p. 78 (T): xavierarnau/E+; p. 78 (B): Patricia Doyle/Photographer's Choice; p. 82 (T): kropic/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 82 (B): Laurie Noble/The Image Bank; p. 88 (TL): SKrow/E+; p. 88 (TR): nabihariahi/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 88 (BL): Tim Ridley/Dorling Kindersley; p. 88 (BR): habrda/iStockGetty Images Plus; p. 94: Westend61; p. 100 (TL): Nico Hermann; p. 100 (TR): shorrocks/E+; p. 100 (wink): Purestock; p. 100 (grin): John Harrelson/Getty Images Sport; p. 100 (sweat): JEWEL SAMAD/AFP; p. 100 (frown): Rainer Holz/Westend61; p. 100 (shiver): PhotoObjects.net/PhotoObjects.net/Getty Images Plus; p. 101 (blushing): Tuan Tran/Moment; p. 101 (snoring): Rubberball/Mike Kemp; p. 101 (sneezing): Bernhard Lang/The Image Bank; p. 101 (yawning): Terry Vine/Blend Images; p. 101 (winking): Fabrice LEROUGE/ONOKY; p. 103 (Ex 48.1.1): Bambu Productions/Iconica; p. 103 (Ex 48.1.2): Durkin Photography/Moment; p. 103 (Ex 48.1.3): Sergey_Peterman/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 103 (Ex 48.1.4): Carl Pendle/Photographer's Choice; p. 103 (Ex 48.1.5): Jamie Grill/The Image Bank; p. 104 (T): Colin Hawkins/Cultura; p. 104 (C): K-King Photography Media Co. Ltd/DigitalVision; p. 104 (B): Kevin Mackintosh/The Image Bank; p. 116 (B): DNY59/E+; p. 118: ansonsaw/E+; p. 120 (T): Johan Mrd/Folio; p. 120 (B): Ikonoklast_Fotografie/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 124 (TL): Klaus Tiedge/Blend Images; p. 124 (TR): Herve Gyssels/Photononstop; p. 124 (BL): Sjo/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 124 (BR): Gary John Norman/The Image Bank; p. 136: Atsushi Yamada/Taxi Japan; p. 137 (Ex 65.4.1): Paolo_Toffanin/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 137 (Ex 65.4.2): Michele Constantini/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections; p. 137 (Ex 65.4.3): Dave King/Dorling Kindersley; p. 137 (Ex 65.4.4): ZenShui/Michele Constantini/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections; p. 138: asiseeit/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 141: RuslanDashinsky/E+; p. 143: g-stockstudio/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 147 (stapler): Ryan McVay/Photodisc; p. 147 (hanger): Spiderstock/E+; p. 147 (sharpner) & p. 209 (sellotape): stockcam/E+; p. 147 (projector): elfinima/E+; p. 147 (tin opener): joakimbkk/E+; p. 168 (cat): DEA/D. ROBOTTI/De Agostini; p. 168 (lion): Michael Duva/The Image Bank; p. 168 (bee): Geoff Brightling/Dorling Kindersley; p. 168 (BL): DreamPictures/The Image Bank; p. 168 (BR): Joff Lee/Photolibrary; p. 169 (chicken): Burazin/Photographer's Choice; p. 169 (snake): Simon Murrell/Cultura; p. 172 (luggage): Howard Kingsnorth/The Image Bank; p. 172 (accommodation): Tobias Titz; p. 172 (money): SEBASTIAN KAULITZKI/SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY/Science Photo Library; p. 172 (information): goldhafen/E+; p. 172 (transport): John Snelling/Photolibrary; p. 177 (cake): mvp64/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 177 (iron): indigolotos/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 177 (pepper): Floortje/E+; p. 177 (chocolates): Ian O'Leary/Dorling Kindersley; p. 177 (rubber): kemie/E+; p. 177 (glass): Steve Wisbauer/Stockbyte; p. 184 (T): Blend Images - KidStock/Brand X Pictures; p. 189: Nick David/Taxi; p. 195: Emma Innocenti/Photodisc; p. 199: kadmy/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 200 (bat): Ewen Charlton/Moment; p. 200 (rake): ZargonDesign/E+; p. 200 (hay): Nigel Pavitt/AWL Images; p. 200 (mouse): Andreas Von Einsiedel/Dorling Kindersley; p. 209 (wardrobe): photobac/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 209 (curtains): Ben Richardson/Photonica; p. 209 (lorry): vitpho/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 209 (lift): Bernard Jaubert/Photographer's Choice RF; p. 209 (vest): SanneBerg/iStock/Getty Images Plus; p. 209 (baby): dml5050/iStock/Getty Images Plus.

Illustrations

Pablo Gallego (Beehive Illustration), John Goodwin (Eye Candy Illustration), John Lund (Beehive Illustration), Katie Mac (NB Illustration), Martina (KJA Artists), Miguel Diaz Rivas (Advocate Art), Norbert Sipos (Beehive Illustration), Kate Charlesworth, Amanda MacPhail and Vicky Woodgate.

Designed and typeset by QBS.